

# Signs and symbols



Indicates a reference to a section with important information and safety warnings  that should always be heeded.



Arrow indicating that the section continues on the next page.



Arrow marking the end of a section.



The symbol indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.



The symbol indicates registered trademarks. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with intellectual property.



Cross-reference to a red, orange, or yellow warning in the same section or on the stated page, pointing out possible risks that can cause serious personal injuries and how to help prevent them.



Cross reference to a Notice about possible property damage, in the same section or on the stated page.



Used on vehicle labels and indicates the availability of additional important information and warnings in this Owner's Manual.

## DANGER!

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which will cause death or severe injuries if not avoided.

## WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause death or severe injuries if not avoided.

## CAUTION

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause minor or moderate injuries if not avoided.

## NOTE

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding situations which could cause vehicle damage if not avoided.

 Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.



Texts with this symbol contain supplementary information.

# Thank you for your confidence

This Volkswagen vehicle provides advanced technology incorporating many convenience features for you to enjoy in your daily driving.

**Please carefully read and follow the information in this Owner's Manual. It will help you both to become more familiar with your vehicle and to recognize and avoid situations that could endanger you and others.**

If you have questions about your vehicle or if you believe that this Manual is not complete, please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or your authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities always welcome your questions, suggestions, and constructive criticism.

We hope you enjoy your vehicle and we wish you many years of safe and enjoyable driving.

**Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V.**

## Via this Owner's Manual

- At the end of this Manual, you will find an [alphabetical index](#).
- The list of [Abbreviations](#) at the end of the Manual explains the technical abbreviations and designations.
- [Directions](#) (left, right, front, back) refer to the driving direction unless noted otherwise.
- [Illustrations](#) are only for orientation and are merely used to help explain the text descriptions and instructions.
- Some values in this Owner's Manual may be given in both metric and imperial units, like km/h and mph. These values refer to certain country-specific equipment, such as instrument clusters, and to country-specific regulations, such as speed limits.
- Any technical modifications to the vehicle that were introduced after the editorial deadline can be found in a [supplement](#) to this Manual.

All options and models are described without identification as optional equipment or model versions. Some of the described equipment may not be installed on your vehicle or may be available at a later time or only in certain markets. Please consult the sales documents regarding your vehicle's equipment and options and contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information.

All information in this Manual corresponds to information available as of the editorial deadline. Due to ongoing vehicle development, there may be differences between your vehicle and the information in this Manual. No legal obligations or commitments can be derived from the information, illustrations, or descriptions in this Manual.

If you sell or lend your vehicle, please make sure that the complete Manual set is in the vehicle.

### Standard Manual set includes:

- Warranty and Maintenance booklet
- Owner's Manual

### The Manual set may also include:

- Supplement
- Infotainment System
- *Other inserts*

# Owner's Manual

## Vehicle overview

### Exterior views

#### Front view

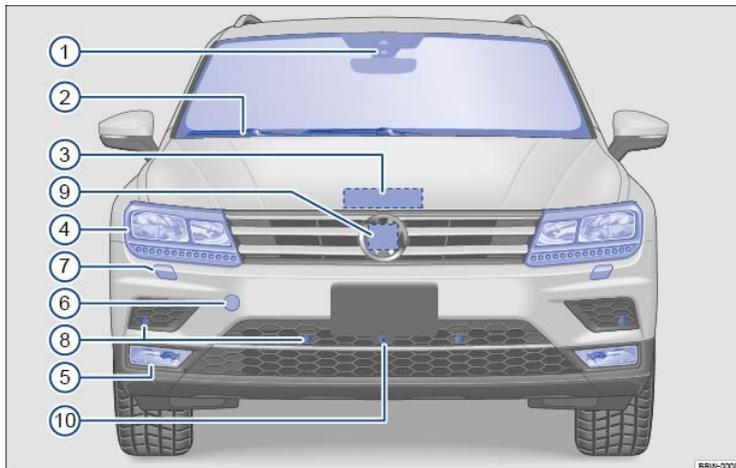


Fig. 1 Vehicle front overview.

#### Key to ⇒ Fig. 1 :

- ① Inside mirror with sensor or camera on the mirror base for:
  - Rain sensor (if equipped) ⇒ *Rain sensor*
  - Low-light sensor (if equipped) ⇒ *Lights*
  - Lane Assist (if equipped) ⇒ *Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)*
  - Light Assist (if equipped) ⇒ *Lights*
- ② Windshield wipers ⇒ *Windshield wipers and washer*
- ③ Engine hood release ⇒ *In the engine compartment*
- ④ Headlights (on left and right) ⇒ *Lights*
- ⑤ Fog lights/static cornering lights (on left and right, if equipped) ⇒ *Lights*
- ⑥ Threaded hole for the front towing eye (behind cover) ⇒ *Towing*
- ⑦ Headlight washers (on left and right, if equipped) ⇒ *Windshield wipers and washer*
- ⑧ Sensors for Park Distance Control (PDC) (if equipped) ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*
- ⑨ Sensor for:
  - Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (if equipped) ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*
  - Front Assist (if equipped) ⇒ *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)*
- ⑩ Area View system camera ⇒ *Area View*

#### Side view

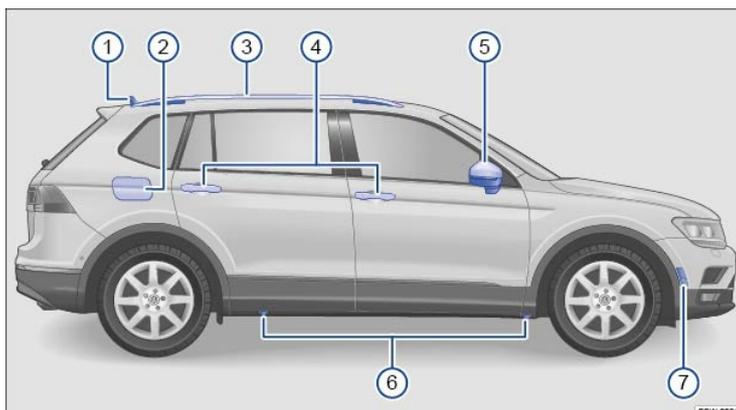
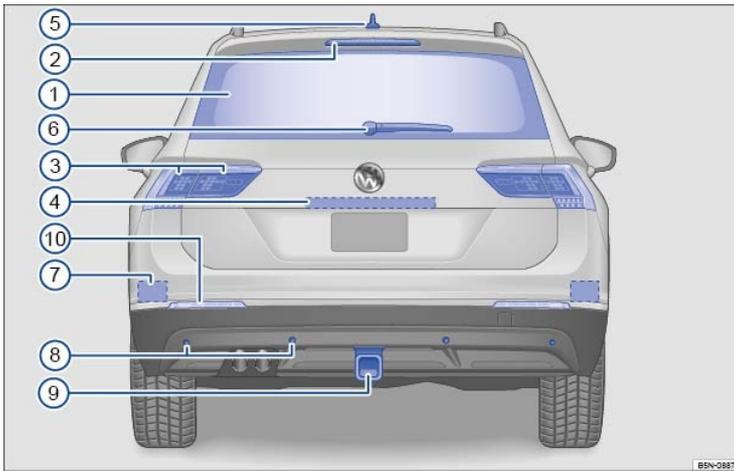


Fig. 2 Vehicle side overview.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 2 :**

- ① Roof antenna ⇒ *Consumer information*
- ② Fuel filler flap ⇒ *Refueling*
- ③ Roof rails ⇒ *Roof rack*
- ④ Outside door handles ⇒ *Doors*
- ⑤ Outside mirror ⇒ *Mirrors*:
  - Additional turn signal light ⇒ *Lights*
  - Blind Spot Monitor indicator light (if equipped) ⇒ *Blind Spot Monitor*
  - Area View system camera ⇒ *Area View*
- ⑥ Lift points for the jack ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack*
- ⑦ Side marker light

**Rear view**



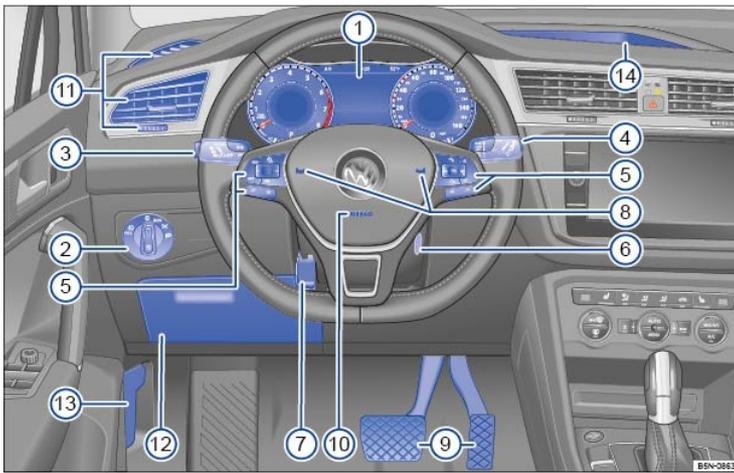
**Fig. 3 Vehicle rear overview.**

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 3**

- ① Rear window:
  - Rear window defroster ⇒ *Climate control*
- ② High-mounted brake light ⇒ *Lights*
- ③ Taillights (on left and right) and back-up lights ⇒ *Lights*, ⇒ *Replacing light bulbs*
- ④ Area in the trunk lid:
  - Button for opening the trunk lid ⇒ *Opening the trunk lid manually*
  - Rear View Camera system and Area View camera (if equipped) ⇒ *Rear View Camera system*, ⇒ *Area View*
  - License plate lighting ⇒ *Replacing light bulbs*
- ⑤ Roof antenna ⇒ *Consumer information*
- ⑥ Rear windshield wiper ⇒ *Windshield wipers and washer*
- ⑦ Sensors for the Blind Spot Monitor and Rear Traffic Alert (approximate location on left and right, if equipped) ⇒ *Blind Spot Monitor*, ⇒ *Rear Traffic Alert*
- ⑧ Sensors for Park Distance Control (PDC) (if equipped) ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*
- ⑨ Trailer hitch preparation (if equipped) ⇒ *Trailer towing*
- ⑩ Taillights and reflectors (on left and right)

**Passenger compartment**

**Driver side overview**



**Fig. 4 Driver side overview.**

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 4 :**

① Instrument cluster or Volkswagen Digital Cockpit, equipment varies:

- Instruments ⇒ *Instrument cluster*
- Display ⇒ *Instrument cluster*
- Warning and indicator lights ⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

② Headlight switch ⇒ *Lights* :

- Off position **0**
- Automatic headlights **AUTO** (if equipped)
- Parking lights (if equipped)
- Low beams
- Fog lights **PULL** (if equipped)

③ Lever for ⇒ *Lights* :

- Turning high beams on or off –
- Headlight flasher
- Turn signals

④ Windshield wiper and washer lever ⇒ *Windshield wipers and washer* :

- Windshield wiper **HIGH – LOW**
- Intermittent operation for the front windshield wipers **INT**
- Interval settings for the wipers or sensitivity for the rain sensor (if equipped)
- Windshield wiper **OFF**
- One-tap wiping
- Windshield wiper
- Automatic wipe/wash for windshield
- Rear window wiper
- Rear window automatic wipe/wash

⑤ Multi-function steering wheel controls ⇒ *Instrument cluster*, ⇒ *Cruise control*, ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* :

- Volume setting for radio, navigation system notifications (if applicable), or telephone calls –
- Voice control activation
- Display Phone main menu or accept telephone calls
- Audio, navigation –
- Control buttons for the Volkswagen Information System – **OK** – , ,
- Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control buttons , **SET**, **CNL**, **RES**, **+** – **-** ,

- ⑥ Ignition switch (vehicles without Keyless Access) or location for the emergency start feature for the Keyless Access system ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- ⑦ Lever for the adjustable steering wheel ⇒ *Adjusting the steering wheel position*
- ⑧ Horn
- ⑨ Pedals ⇒ *Pedals*
- ⑩ Driver front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ⑪ Air vents ◀-▶ ⇒ *Climate control*
- ⑫ Storage compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ⑬ Lever for releasing the engine hood ⇒ *In the engine compartment*
- ⑭ Storage compartment in the dash panel ⇒ *Storage compartment in the dash panel*

## Front passenger side overview

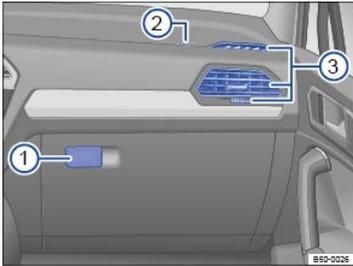


Fig. 5 Overview of the front passenger side.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 5 :

- ① Opening handle for the glove compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ② Passenger front airbag location in the instrument panel (approximate) ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ③ Air vent ◀-▶ ⇒ *Climate control*

## Driver door overview

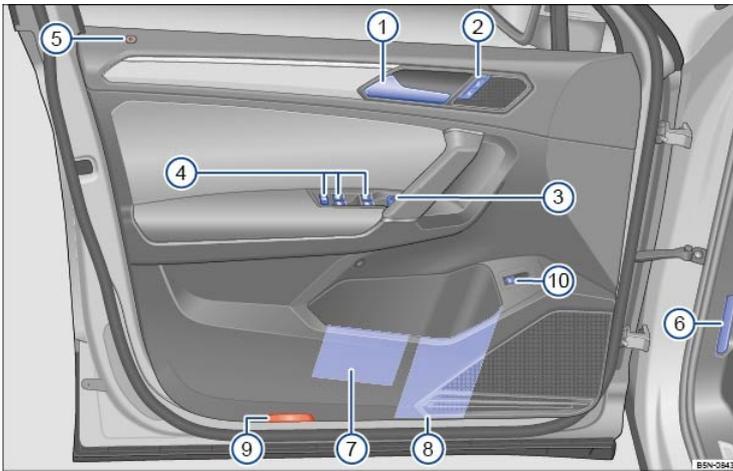


Fig. 6 Overview of the driver door.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 6 :

- ① Door handle ⇒ *Doors*
- ② Power locking button for locking and unlocking the vehicle - ⇒ *Power locking system*
- ③ Knob for adjusting the outside mirrors ⇒ *Mirrors*:
  - Adjusting outside mirrors - -
  - Outside mirror heating
  - Electrically folding outside mirrors (if equipped)
- ④ Switches for operating the power windows ⇒ *Power windows*:
  - Power windows
  - Safety switch for rear power windows
- ⑤ Indicator light for the power locking system ⇒ *Power locking system*

- ⑥ Lever for releasing the engine hood ⇒ *In the engine compartment*
- ⑦ Storage compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ⑧ Bottle holder ⇒ *Cup holders*
- ⑨ Reflector
- ⑩ Switch for the trunk lid ⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside*

## Roof console

Symbol	Meaning
	Interior and reading lights ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	Power sunroof ⇒ <i>Power sunroof</i> .
	Power sunshade ⇒ <i>Power sunshade in the sunroof</i> .
	3-button module for vehicles with Car-Net® ⇒ <i>VW Car-Net®</i> .

## Upper center console

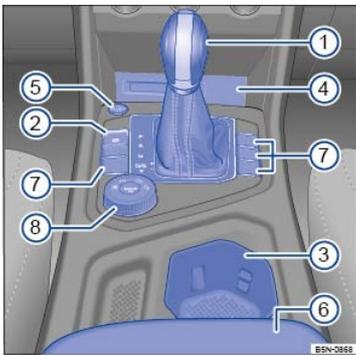


**Fig. 7 Overview of the upper center console.**

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 7 :**

- ① Button for the emergency flashers  ⇒ *In an emergency*
- ② PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light (front airbag for front seat passenger) ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ③ Infotainment system ⇒ *Booklet Infotainment System,, ⇒ Infotainment system operation and displays*
  - User information display ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*
  - Radio ⇒ *Booklet Infotainment System,*
  - Navigation system ⇒ *Booklet Infotainment System,*
- ④ Controls for:
  - Manual air conditioning ⇒ *Climate control*
  - Climatronic ⇒ *Climate control*
- ⑤ Air vents  ⇒ *Climate control*
- ⑥ Passenger seat heating button  ⇒ *Climate control*
- ⑦ Driver seat heating button  or  ⇒ *Climate control*

## Lower center console



**Fig. 8 Overview of the lower center console.**

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 8 :**

- ① Automatic transmission selector lever ⇒ *Automatic transmission*
- ② Electronic parking brake (P) ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*
- ③ Storage compartment with cup holders ⇒ *Cup holders*
- ④ Storage compartment ⇒ *Storage and equipment*
  - With AUX-in jack (AUX), one or two USB ports (USB), and 12 Volt socket ⇒ *Booklet Infotainment System,, ⇒ Power outlets*
- ⑤ Starter button (for vehicles with Keyless Access) **START – ENGINE – STOP** ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- ⑥ Center armrest ⇒ *Center armrests*
  - With storage compartment ⇒ *Storage and equipment*
- ⑦ Buttons for:
  - Anti-slip regulation (ASR) (if equipped) (ASR) ⇒ *Braking assistance systems*
  - Start-stop (A) ⇒ *Start-stop system*
  - Park Distance Control (if equipped) (PDC) ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*
- ⑧ Rotary knob for Active Control on-road and off-road driving mode selection (4MOTION all-wheel drive vehicles only) ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*

## Volkswagen Information System

### Warning and indicator lights

Warning and indicator lights notify you of warnings ⇒ ⚠ and malfunctions ⇒ ⓘ, or tell you about certain functions. Some warning and indicator lights come on when the ignition is switched on and should go out when the engine is running or when the vehicle is moving.

Additional text messages appear in the instrument cluster of appropriately equipped vehicles to give more information or prompt you to take certain actions ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.

Depending on the vehicle options, a symbol may appear in the instrument cluster instead of a warning light.

In addition, a warning chime or other acoustic warning sounds when certain warning and indicator lights go on.

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ ⚠, ⇒ ⓘ
⚠	Central warning light: Read and follow the text messages in the instrument cluster display.
(P)	<p>⛔ <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Electronic parking brake engaged ⇒ <i>Electronic parking brake</i>.</p>
ⓘ	<p>⛔ <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Brake fluid level too low ⇒ <i>Brake fluid</i>.</p>

Symbol	Meaning ⇒  , ⇒ 
	<p><b>OR:</b> Brake system malfunction ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i></p> <p><b>OR:</b> Together with the ABS indicator light  or <b>ABS:</b> ABS failure ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>.</p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Engine coolant level too low, engine coolant temperature too high, or engine coolant system malfunction ⇒ <i>Engine coolant</i>, ⇒ <i>Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge</i>.</p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Engine oil pressure too low ⇒ <i>Engine oil</i>.</p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Lights up: Steering system malfunction ⇒ <i>Steering</i>.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Flashes: Electronic steering column lock malfunction ⇒ <i>Steering</i>.</p>
	<p>Driver and/or passenger safety belts not buckled ⇒ <i>Safety belts</i>.</p>
	<p><b>Brake or take action to avoid the vehicle ahead!</b> Front Assist Forward Collision Warning (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)</i>.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> Pedestrian Monitoring system warning.</p>
	<p><b>Brake!</b> Depress brake pedal. ACC driver intervention warning ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i>.</p>
	<p>Alternator malfunction ⇒ <i>Vehicle battery</i>.</p>
	<p>Central caution light: Read and follow the text messages in the instrument cluster display.</p>
<p><b>BRAKEWEAR</b></p>	<p>Brake pads worn. Immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced ⇒ <i>About the brakes</i>.</p>

Symbol	Meaning ⇒  , ⇒ 
	<p>Lights up: ESC malfunction or ESC switched off by the system ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> Together with  or <b>ABS:</b> ABS malfunction.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> The vehicle battery has been reconnected.</p> <hr/> <p>Flashes: ESC or ASR is active ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>.</p>
	<p>ASR manually deactivated ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> ESC Sport mode manually activated ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> Off-road mode activated ⇒ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i>.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> Together with <b>ESCOFF:</b> ESC manually switched off (only possible in Off-road or Custom off-road mode) ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>, ⇒ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i>.</p>
	ABS malfunction ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i> .
	Electronic parking brake malfunction ⇒ <i>Electronic parking brake</i> .
	<p>One or more driving lights burned out ⇒ <i>Replacing light bulbs</i>.</p> <hr/> <p>Light malfunction, excluding AFS<sup>a</sup>) ⇒ <i>Lights</i>.</p>
	<p>Lights up: Engine control malfunction ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i>.</p> <hr/> <p>Flashes: Misfire ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i>.</p>
<b>EPC</b>	Engine control malfunction ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i> .
	Engine speed (rpm) limited (if equipped, to help prevent overheating) ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i> .
	<p>Lights up: Problem with the steering ⇒ <i>Steering</i>.</p> <hr/> <p>Flashes: Steering column not locked/unlocked ⇒ <i>Steering</i>.</p>
	<p>Lights up: Tire pressure too low ⇒ <i>Tires and wheels</i>.</p> <hr/> <p>Flashes: Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction ⇒ <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</i>.</p>
	Rain and light sensor malfunction ⇒ <i>Windshield wipers and washer</i> .
	Windshield wiper malfunction ⇒ <i>Windshield wipers and washer</i> .
	Not enough windshield washer fluid ⇒ <i>Windshield wipers and washer</i> .

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ ⚠, ⇒ ⓘ
	Fuel tank almost empty ⇒ <i>Refueling</i> , ⇒ <i>Indicator lights and fuel gauge</i> .
	Fuel filler cap not properly closed ⇒ <i>Refueling</i> , ⇒ <i>Indicator lights and fuel gauge</i> .
	Lights up: Engine oil level too low ⇒ <i>Engine oil</i> .
	Flashes: Engine oil system malfunction ⇒ <i>Engine oil</i> .
	Airbag and safety belt pretensioner system malfunction ⇒ <i>Airbag system</i> .
<b>OFF</b> 	Passenger front airbag turned off (PASSENGER AIR BAG <b>OFF</b>  light) ⇒ <i>Airbag system</i> .
	Transmission malfunction or transmission overheating ⇒ <i>Automatic transmission</i> .
	Lane Assist switched on, not active ⇒ <i>Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)</i> .
	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) currently not available ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	Front Assist switched off (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)</i> .
	Blind Spot Monitor malfunction ⇒ <i>Blind Spot Monitor</i> .
	Turn signals, left or right ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	Emergency flashers switched on ⇒ <i>In an emergency</i> .
	Lights up: Brake pedal not depressed ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> , ⇒ <i>Automatic transmission</i> , ⇒ <i>Parking and maneuvering</i> .
	Flashes: The release button in the selector lever is not engaged ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> , ⇒ <i>Automatic transmission</i> , ⇒ <i>Parking and maneuvering</i> .
	Cruise control is regulating the vehicle speed ⇒ <i>Cruise control</i> .
<b>OR:</b> Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) switched on ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .	
	Lane Assist is switched on and active ⇒ <i>Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)</i> .
	High beams switched on or headlight flashers in use ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	<b>Increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.</b> Front Assist Distance Warning (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)</i> .
	Light Assist high beam control switched on (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	When displayed in white: Hill Descent Control active ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .

Symbol	Meaning ⇒  , ⇒ 
	When displayed in gray: Hill Descent Control not active. System is turned on, but not regulating ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .
	The <b>Off-road</b> driving mode is active (if equipped) ⇒ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i> .
	ACC is active. No vehicle has been detected ahead. The system is regulating vehicle speed ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	When displayed in white: ACC active. Vehicle detected ahead. ACC regulates the speed and the distance from the vehicle ahead ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	When displayed in green (vehicles with Volkswagen Digital Cockpit): ACC active. Vehicle detected ahead. ACC regulates the speed and the distance from the vehicle ahead.
	When displayed in gray: ACC not active. System switched on, does not regulate.
	Cruise control malfunction ⇒ <i>Cruise control</i>
	Service reminder display ⇒ <i>Service reminder display</i> .
	Charge level of the mobile phone battery. Applies only to models with a factory-installed mobile phone package ⇒ <i>Booklet/Infotainment System</i> .
	Outside temperature colder than +39 °F (+4 °C) ⇒ <i>Displays</i> .
	Start-stop available. Automatic engine stop is active ⇒ <i>Start-stop system</i> .
	Start-stop not available.
	<b>OR:</b> Start-stop has automatically restarted the engine ⇒ <i>Start-stop system</i> .
	Fuel-efficient driving display ⇒ <i>Displays</i> .
	Refer to the Owner's Manual.

## WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.
- Before opening the engine hood, always switch off the engine and let the engine cool down.
- Always be very careful when working in the engine compartment, which is a potentially dangerous area in any motor vehicle and can cause serious personal injury ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

a) A separate display appears in the instrument cluster if there is an AFS malfunction.

## Instrument cluster

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Instrument overview](#)

⇒ [Volkswagen Digital Cockpit](#)

⇒ [Displays](#)

⇒ [Warning and information texts](#)

⇒ [Instrument cluster menus](#)

⇒ [Driving data \(Multi-Function Display\)](#)

⇒ [Main menu](#)

⇒ [Setting the clock](#)

⇒ [Indicator lights and fuel gauge](#)

⇒ [Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge](#)

⇒ [Service reminder display](#)

The vehicle is equipped either with an analog ⇒ [Instrument overview](#) or a digital instrument cluster (Volkswagen Digital Cockpit) ⇒ [Volkswagen Digital Cockpit](#).

### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never use the buttons in the instrument cluster while driving.
- Adjust the settings in the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is standing still.

## Instrument overview



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster in the instrument panel.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Instrument explanations ⇒ [Fig. 9](#) :

- ① **Speedometer.**
- ② **Tachometer** (thousands of revolutions per minute when the engine is running).  
The beginning of the red zone at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine rpm (revolutions per minute) for all gears after the break-in period. Before reaching the red zone, select the next higher gear or selector lever position **D/S**, or ease your foot off the accelerator ⇒ .
- ③ **Displays** ⇒ [Displays](#).
- ④ **Reset, set, and display button** ⇒ [Displays](#), ⇒ [Driving data \(Multi-Function Display\)](#).
- ⑤ **Fuel gauge** ⇒ [Indicator lights and fuel gauge](#), ⇒ [Refueling](#).
- ⑥ **Engine coolant temperature gauge**  ⇒ [Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge](#), ⇒ [Engine coolant](#).

### NOTE

- To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- To help prevent engine damage, the tachometer needle should only enter the red zone (warning zone) briefly, for example, when accelerating rapidly.

🌸 Upshifting early into the next higher gear saves fuel and reduces engine noise.

## Volkswagen Digital Cockpit



Fig. 10 Digital instrument cluster (Volkswagen Digital Cockpit) in the instrument panel.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Volkswagen Digital Cockpit is a digital instrument cluster with a high-resolution TFT color display. In addition to standard gauges such as the tachometer and speedometer, you can choose from various information profiles to view additional data.

**Instrument explanations** ⇒ Fig. 10 :

- 1 **Tachometer** (thousands of revolutions per minute when the engine is running).  
The beginning of the red zone at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine rpm (revolutions per minute) for all gears after the break-in period. Before reaching the red zone, select the next higher gear or selector lever position **D/S**, or ease your foot off the accelerator ⇒ 1.
- 2 **Information profile displays.** The information shown depends on the selected information profile. The example above ⇒ Fig. 10 shows the Classic profile with no additional information shown.
- 3 **Displays** ⇒ *Displays*.
- 4 **Reset, set, and display button** ⇒ *Displays*, ⇒ *Driving data (Multi-Function Display)*.
- 5 **Speedometer**
- 6 **Digital speed display.**
- 7 **Fuel gauge** ⇒ *Indicator lights and fuel gauge*, ⇒ *Refueling*.
- 8 **Engine coolant temperature gauge** ⇒ *Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge*, ⇒ *Engine coolant*.
- 9 **Current selector lever position** ⇒ *Automatic transmission*.

### Information profiles

You can choose between several information profiles in the **Views** menu in the Volkswagen Information System ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#). The Volkswagen Digital Cockpit shows additional information in the center of the tachometer and the speedometer ⇒ Fig. 10② depending on the information profile you have selected. The following information profiles are available:

- **Classic:** No additional information shown.
- **Speed and gear:** The current selector lever position is shown in the tachometer, or, if in Tiptronic mode, the current gear is shown. Current vehicle speed is shown digitally in the middle of the speedometer.
- **Economy and range:** Current fuel economy is shown graphically and average fuel economy is shown digitally in the tachometer. The remaining range before refueling is necessary is shown digitally in the speedometer.
- **Economy:** Average fuel economy is shown digitally and current fuel economy is shown graphically in the tachometer. In the speedometer, the symbol is shown if the current driving style is fuel-efficient, and a graphic display helps the driver drive more efficiently<sup>1)</sup> ⇒ [Think Blue. Trainer.](#)
- **Navigation:** If route guidance is *active*: the remaining distance to the set destination and an estimated time of arrival are shown in the tachometer, and arrows to aid navigation are shown in the speedometer. If route guidance is *inactive*: the current altitude is shown in the tachometer, and a compass is shown in the speedometer.
- **Driver assist systems:** Graphic displays relating to various driver assistance systems are shown ⇒ [Driver assistance systems](#), or the travel time is shown digitally in the tachometer. The speedometer shows arrow navigation or a compass.
- **Off-road (if equipped):** Digital display of the steering angle in the tachometer and compass display in the speedometer. When Hill Descent Control is *active*: a graphic display of Hill Descent Control is shown together with the current vehicle speed in the speedometer ⇒ [Hill Descent Control](#).

### Navigation map in the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit

On appropriately equipped vehicles, you can select the **Navigation** menu item in the Volkswagen Information System to select a detailed map. Press the or the arrow button on the multi-function steering wheel to display options, then select **Display map** to display the map in the instrument cluster display.

The map has two possible sizes. If you select the larger version, the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit dials will be smaller. To select the map size:

- Press the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel to switch between map sizes.
- **OR:** Press the **▲** or the **▼** arrow button on the multi-function steering wheel to switch the **Enlarged map display** on or off.

Navigation can only be shown on one display at a time. When you select the map display in the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit, the map in the Infotainment system is not visible.

### **⚠ WARNING**

If the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit stops working properly or will not come on, you will not be able to see important information such as vehicle speed, engine performance, warning lights, and text warnings. Failure to see this information may result in the vehicle breaking down in traffic or result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit is working before driving.
- If you believe it is safe to do so, immediately take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

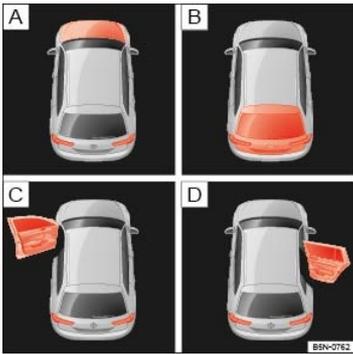
### **! NOTE**

- To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- To help prevent engine damage, the tachometer needle should only enter the red zone (warning zone) briefly, for example, when accelerating rapidly.

**🌿** Upshifting early into the next higher gear saves fuel and reduces engine noise.

<sup>1)</sup> The specific content of the Economy profile depends on the driving mode.

## Displays



**Fig. 11** In the instrument cluster display (may vary, depending on equipment).

**📖** Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ **⚠ Introduction to the subject**

Depending on vehicle equipment, different information may be shown in the instrument cluster display.

- Open doors, engine hood, or trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 11](#)
- Warning and information texts ⇒ [Warning and information texts](#)
- Odometer displays
- Time ⇒ [Setting the clock](#)
- Radio and navigation information ⇒ [Booklet Infotainment System](#),
- Telephone information ⇒ [Booklet Infotainment System](#),
- Outside temperature
- Compass display
- Selector lever position ⇒ [Automatic transmission](#)
- Gear recommendation ⇒ [Gear recommendation](#)
- Driving data and menus for different settings ⇒ [Driving data \(Multi-Function Display\)](#), ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#)
- Service reminder display ⇒ [Service reminder display](#)
- Speed warning
- Start-stop system status information ⇒ [Start-stop system](#)
- Fuel-efficient driving display 

- Engine identification code
- Driver personalization: User selection ⇒ [Driver personalization](#)

### Open doors, hood, or trunk lid

The instrument cluster display indicates if any doors, the engine hood, or trunk lid are open once the vehicle has been unlocked, and while the vehicle is moving. There may also be an audible warning chime. Different models and equipment versions may have different displays.

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 11](#) :

 **Stop!** The engine hood is open or not properly closed ⇒ [In the engine compartment](#).

 **Stop!** The trunk lid is open or not properly closed ⇒ [Trunk lid](#).

 **Stop!** One or more vehicle doors open or not properly closed ⇒ [Doors](#).

### Driver personalization

The instrument cluster display indicates which user profile is currently active for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on. During this time, you can switch from one user profile to another with the arrow up and down buttons  or  on the multi-function steering wheel.

For vehicles equipped with the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit, the user profile affects which information profile is shown ⇒ [Volkswagen Digital Cockpit](#), and also affects other vehicle settings ⇒ [Driver personalization](#).

You can adjust more settings for driver personalization by pressing the **MENU** function key followed by the , and Personalization function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

### Odometer displays

The *odometer* at the bottom of the instrument cluster display indicates the total distance driven by the vehicle.

The *trip odometer (trip)* shows the distance driven since the last time the trip odometer was reset. The last digit indicates 1/10 mile (or 100 meters, depending on the units selected).

Press the **0,0** button in the instrument cluster briefly ⇒ [Instrument overview](#) or ⇒ [Volkswagen Digital Cockpit](#), to reset the trip odometer to 0.

### Outside temperature display

At outside temperatures below about +39 °F (+4 °C), a snowflake symbol  appears in the display. The symbol remains on until the outside temperature rises above +43 °F (+6 °C) ⇒ .

When the vehicle is not moving or when you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature.

The measurement range is from -49 °F (-45 °C) to +169 °F (+76 °C).

### Compass display

On vehicles equipped with a compass display, the current compass direction is indicated in the instrument cluster display when the ignition (or the navigation system, if equipped) is switched on.

On vehicles equipped with a navigation system and the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit, you can view the compass display in the **Navigation** or **Driver Assist Systems** information profiles.

### Selector lever position

The selector lever position is shown both on the side of the selector lever and in the instrument cluster. The respective gear may be shown in the instrument cluster display in Tiptronic® mode ⇒ [Automatic transmission](#).

### Gear recommendation

When the vehicle is moving, a fuel economy gear recommendation may appear in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Automatic transmission](#).

### Speed warning

A display in the instrument cluster indicates when the set maximum speed has been exceeded ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#).

The speed warning can also be set and changed in the Infotainment system when the ignition is switched on by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the , and Tires function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

### Start-stop status display

The current status of the Start-stop system is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Start-stop system](#).

### Fuel-efficient driving display

The instrument cluster display shows the symbol  when the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner ⇒ [Think Blue. Trainer.](#)

### Engine identification code

Press and hold the **0,0** button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Instrument overview*, or ⇒ *Volkswagen Digital Cockpit*, for about 15 seconds to display the vehicle's engine identification code. You must do this when the doors are closed, the ignition is on, but the engine is not running.

## WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

## WARNING

Roads and bridges may be dangerously icy even if the outside air temperature is above freezing.

- If you use the outside temperature display to tell you about frost conditions, remember that roads can even ice over at temperatures above +39 °F (+4 °C). Always remember: even if the snowflake symbol is not displayed, there could still be black ice on the road.
- Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



The instrument cluster displays and their arrangement may vary depending on the vehicle model and engine. For displays without warning and information messages, malfunctions are only signaled with indicator lights.



Depending on vehicle equipment, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system.

## Warning and information texts

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The status of various vehicle functions and components is monitored when the ignition is switched on and while driving. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with text messages in the instrument cluster display (⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*). In some cases, they may also be signaled acoustically. The display can vary depending on the instrument cluster model.

Additionally, current malfunctions may be displayed in the **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** menu.

### Priority 1 warning message (red)<sup>1)</sup>

A symbol flashes or lights up – sometimes with acoustic warnings.  **Stop!** ⇒ .

Check the malfunction and take corrective action. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

Menus cannot be accessed when a priority 1 warning message is displayed. The warning message will turn off automatically after a few seconds. You can confirm and turn off some warning messages by pressing the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel.

### Priority 2 warning message (yellow)

A symbol flashes or lights up continuously – sometimes with acoustic warnings.

Malfunctions or low operating fluid levels may cause vehicle damage and vehicle breakdown ⇒ .

Check the malfunction as soon as possible. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

### Information texts

Information text provide information about various vehicle situations.

## WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, turn on the emergency flashers, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, oil, or other material that can catch fire.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



If there are multiple warning messages, the symbols are displayed for several seconds in order of importance. The symbols are displayed until the cause has been corrected.



If warning messages are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this happens, take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

<sup>1)</sup> Displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display.

## Instrument cluster menus

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The following list shows how the Volkswagen Information System menus in the instrument cluster display are structured. The size and layout of the Volkswagen Information System menu depends on vehicle equipment.

Certain menus may only be displayed while the vehicle is completely stopped.

- **Driving data** ⇒ *Driving data (Multi-Function Display)*
  - Economy (fuel consumption)
  - Average economy (Ø economy, average fuel consumption)
  - Range
  - Conv. consumers (Energy consumers)
  - Travel time
  - Distance
  - Average speed (Ø speed)
  - Speed (digital)
  - Speed warning (Warning at)
  - Oil temperature
- **Assist systems** ⇒ *Driver assistance systems*
  - ACC (display only)
  - Lane Assist
  - Blind Spot Monitor
  - Rear Traffic Alert
  - Front Assist
  - Back
- **Navigation** ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment System,*
- **Views**<sup>1)</sup> ⇒ *Volkswagen Digital Cockpit*
- **Audio** ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment System,*
- **Telephone** ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment System,*
- **Vehicle status** ⇒ *Main menu*

<sup>1)</sup> Only for vehicles equipped with the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit.

## Driving data (Multi-Function Display)

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When the ignition is on, the **Driving data** menu provides a variety of travel and fuel consumption data. Navigate through the data as described on ⇒ [Using the instrument cluster menus](#).

### Switching between the displays

Use the arrow up and down buttons (  and  ) on the right side of the steering wheel ⇒ [Fig. 18](#).

### Trip memories

The display has 3 automatic memories:

- **Since start**
- **Since refuel**
- **Extend. period**

The currently selected memory is shown in the display.

The trip memories are in addition to the trip odometer, which is displayed in the bottom part of the instrument cluster and controlled using the **0.0** button ⇒ [Fig. 9④](#) ⇒ [Fig. 9④](#), or ⇒ [Fig. 10④](#).

Press the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel to toggle between the 3 memories when the ignition is on.

The driving data for the trip memories can also be viewed in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle and Selection function keys ⇒ [Vehicle settings menu](#).

### Since start trip memory

The memory accumulates and stores information about distance driven and fuel used from the time the ignition was switched on until the time it was switched off.

If the ignition stays off for 2 hours or more, stored information is automatically deleted. If the trip is continued within 2 hours after the ignition was switched off, the memory continues to accumulate and store information after the ignition is switched on again.

### Extend. period trip memory

Depending on the instrument cluster version, the memory displays and stores the accumulated driving and fuel consumption data of any number of single trips up to a total driving time of either 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes, and up to a total distance of either 1,999 km or 9,999 km. If one of the maximum values<sup>1)</sup> is exceeded, then the memory is automatically cleared and starts again from 0.

### Since refuel trip memory

The memory accumulates and stores information about distance driven and fuel used from the time the vehicle is refueled. The memory is deleted automatically during refueling.

### Manually erasing a trip memory

- Select either the **Since start** or the **Extended period** memory to be erased. The **Since refuel** memory cannot be manually erased.
- Press and hold the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel for about 2 seconds.

### Enabling and disabling displays

You can set which displays should appear in the instrument cluster by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Instrument cluster function keys in the Infotainment system ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#). The units in which data is displayed can also be changed.

### Possible driving data menu displays

Display	Function
Travel time	Driving time in hours (h) and minutes (min) corresponding to trip memories 1, 2, and 3 (toggle).
Distance --- mi	Distance driven in miles (km) per trip memories 1, 2, and 3 (toggle).
Distance --- km	

Display	Function
Average speed or Ø speed  -- mph	Average speed on trips per trip memories 1, 2, and 3 (toggle). For the since start trip memory, the value is displayed once the vehicle has been driven about 300 feet (100 m). The value displayed is updated every 5 seconds.
Average speed or Ø speed  -- km/h	
Speed  --- mph	Digital display of the current vehicle speed.
Speed  --- km/h	
Speed warning or Warning at  --- mph	When the set speed (from 20–160 mph or 30–250 km/h) is exceeded, an acoustic warning sounds and a visual message may also appear in the instrument cluster display.
Speed warning or Warning at  --- km/h	
Oil temperature --- °F	Digital display of the current engine oil temperature.
Oil temperature --- °C	
Economy  --.- mpg	Current fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) while driving.  <i>When units are set to miles, dashes appear instead of a number when the engine is running and the vehicle is standing still.</i>
Economy  --.- l/100km	
Average economy or Ø economy  --.- mpg	Average fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) on trips per trip memories 1, 2, and 3 (toggle). For the since start trip memory, the value is displayed once the vehicle has been driven about 330 feet (100 m). Until then,

Display	Function
Average economy or $\emptyset$ economy  --.- l/100km	dashes appear instead of a number. The value displayed is updated every second.
Eco tips	Displays tips for better fuel economy.
Range  -- mi	Estimated distance in miles (km) that the vehicle can go with the fuel left in the tank the way you are currently driving. Takes account of the current fuel consumption, among other things.
Range  -- km	
Conv. consumers or Energy consumers	Displays any convenience equipment in the vehicle that is currently affecting fuel consumption in gallons per hour (or liters per hour).

### Storing speed for the speed warning

- Select the **Speed warning** or **Warning at** display.
- Press the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel to save the current speed and to activate the warning.
- If necessary, set the desired speed within about 5 seconds with the  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$  buttons on the multi-function steering wheel. Then press the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel a second time or just wait a few seconds. The speed is saved and the warning is activated.
- To deactivate, press the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel. The set speed is deleted.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature  $\Rightarrow$  [Driver personalization](#).

<sup>1)</sup> May differ depending on the instrument cluster version.

## Main menu

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first  $\Rightarrow$  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Main menu	Function
Driving data	Multi-function Display (MFD) information and settings $\Rightarrow$ <a href="#">Driving data (Multi-Function Display)</a> .
	Display of current warning or information messages and other system components, depending on the equipment level $\Rightarrow$ <a href="#">Driving data (Multi-Function Display)</a> .
Assist systems	Turn selected driver assistance systems on or off, or view current status for active driver assistance systems $\Rightarrow$ <a href="#">Infotainment system operation and displays</a> .
Compass	Current driving direction (vehicles without navigation system) $\Rightarrow$ <a href="#">Displays</a> .
Navigation	Information displays for the navigation system (if equipped).
	When route guidance is active, turn arrows and proximity bars similar to the symbols shown in the navigation system are displayed.
	If route guidance is turned off, the direction of travel (compass) and the current street name are displayed $\Rightarrow$ <a href="#">Booklet Infotainment System</a> .

Main menu	Function
Views	Only for vehicles equipped with the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit:  Choose from different information profiles ⇒ <i>Volkswagen Digital Cockpit</i>
Audio	Station display or station list in radio mode.
	Track display in media mode ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment System</i> .
Telephone	Information about the connected telephone.
	Settings and information when using the telephone ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment System</i> .
Vehicle status	Current warning and information messages.
	This menu item only appears when warning or information messages are available ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i> .

## Setting the clock

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

You can set the time in the Infotainment system when the ignition is switched on by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Time and date func keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

- If a vehicle status message or the vehicle icon is displayed, push the **OK** button on the right side of the multi-function steering wheel.
- To set the time, press and hold the **0,0** button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Instrument overview*, or ⇒ *Volkswagen Digital Cockpit*, until the word **Time** appears in the display. If the ignition is switched off, the doors must be closed.
- Release the button. The time is shown in the instrument cluster display and the hour setting is highlighted.
- Press the **0,0** button repeatedly until the correct hour is displayed. Press and hold the button to scroll through quickly.
- Once you have set the hour, release the button and wait a few seconds until the minutes display is highlighted.
- Press the **0,0** button repeatedly until the correct minutes are displayed. Press and hold the button to scroll through quickly.
- Release the button to finish setting the clock.

## Indicator lights and fuel gauge



Fig. 12 In the instrument cluster: Fuel gauge.

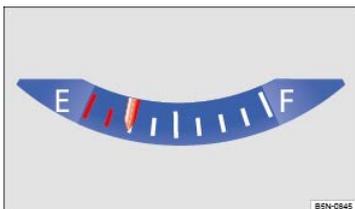


Fig. 13 Volkswagen Digital Cockpit: Fuel gauge

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up

Possible cause and proper response ⇒ 

	<p>Fuel tank almost empty. Running on reserve (red area indicated in ⇒ Fig. 13, or ⇒ Fig. 13) ⇒ <i>Fuel and emission control system</i>, ⇒ <i>Fuel capacities</i> .</p>
	<p>Time to refuel ⇒ ⌚ .</p> <p>Fuel filler cap not properly closed.</p> <p>Stop and close the fuel filler cap properly.</p>

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### Fuel filler cap not properly closed

If the indicator light  comes on or you see a text message in the instrument cluster display indicating that the fuel filler cap is not properly closed, stop the vehicle in a safe place and switch off the engine and the ignition.

Open the fuel filler flap and take the fuel filler cap off the filler neck. Then put the fuel filler cap back on the filler neck and screw it on clockwise until you clearly hear a clicking sound. Close the fuel filler flap.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator light  may stay on or the text message may still appear in the instrument cluster display, even if the fuel filler cap is now properly closed. This is normal and no reason to take your vehicle in for service.

If, however, the malfunction indicator light  also comes on, drive to your nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the fuel system and the engine checked.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### ⚠ WARNING

Driving with a fuel tank that is almost empty can lead to stalling in traffic, a collision, and serious personal injuries.

- When the fuel tank is almost empty, fuel supply to the engine can be interrupted, especially when driving over bumps, across slopes, and up and down hills.
- Steering and braking assistance as well as ESC and related systems will not work if the engine sputters or stalls due to lack of fuel.
- Always refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel and stalling in traffic.

### ⓘ NOTE

- Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular fuel supply can cause the engine to misfire. This allows unburned fuel to get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.



The small arrow next to the gas pump symbol in the fuel gauge ⇒ Fig. 12 shows the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler flap.

## Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge

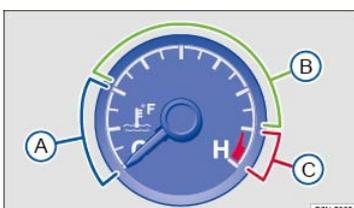


Fig. 14 Engine coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster: Ⓐ Engine cold; Ⓑ Normal temperature range; Ⓒ Warning zone.

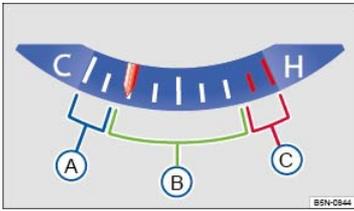


Fig. 15 Engine coolant temperature gauge in the Volkswagen Digital Cockpit: (A) Engine cold; (B) Normal temperature range; (C) Warning zone.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

If the indicator in the engine coolant temperature gauge is located in the cold range (A), the engine has not reached operating temperature. High engine speeds and heavy engine loads should be avoided.

Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may go higher when the engine is working hard, especially in hot weather.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

The following table explains what to do if the engine coolant temperature warning light does not go out a few seconds after the engine is started or starts flashing while driving.

Flashes	Temperature gauge needle ⇒ Fig. 14, ⇒ Fig. 15	Possible cause	Proper response
---------	--	----------------	-----------------

**Stop!**

Pull off the road and stop as soon as you can do so safely. Stop the engine and let it cool down until the temperature needle is in the normal range again. Check the engine coolant level and add engine coolant if needed ⇒ *Engine coolant*.

©

Engine coolant temperature too high.

If the engine coolant level is correct or the problem continues after adding coolant and driving a short distance, **do not drive any farther**. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Warning zone

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a radiator fan fault. Check the fuses and replace as necessary ⇒ *Replacing fuses*.



Flashes	Temperature gauge needle ⇒ Fig. 14, ⇒ Fig. 15	Possible cause	Proper response
	<p>Normal range</p>	Engine coolant level too low.	<p>Check the engine coolant level after the engine has cooled down and add engine coolant if low ⇒ <i>Engine coolant</i>.</p> <p>If the engine coolant level is correct or the problem continues after adding coolant, <b>do not drive any farther</b>. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.</p> <p>These instructions apply only when the coolant temperature stays in the normal range. Stop immediately in a safe place if the needle goes into the red warning zone ©.</p> <p> <b>Stop!</b></p>
	<p>Cold range</p>	The engine has not yet warmed up.	Do not drive at high engine speeds or with heavy engine loads until the engine warms up.
		Engine coolant system malfunction.	Pull off the road and stop as soon as you can do so safely. Get assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Service reminder display

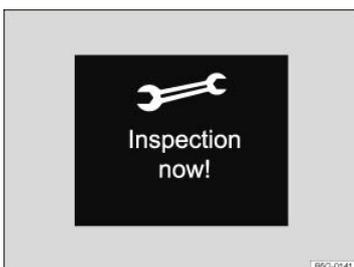
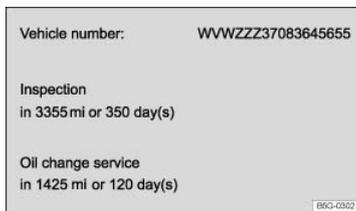


Fig. 16 In the instrument cluster display: Example of the service reminder when a service is due.



**Fig. 17 In the Infotainment system display: Example of the service reminder.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

The maintenance service reminder is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Fig. 16](#) and in the Infotainment system ⇒ [Fig. 17](#). Versions and displays can vary depending on the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system version equipped with the vehicle.

For information on maintenance intervals, please see the ⇒ [Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#).

For vehicles with **time- or distance driven-dependent service**, only fixed service intervals are displayed.

### Service reminder

If service is due in the near future, a **service reminder** is displayed when the ignition is switched on.

The number of miles (km) and amount of time shown correspond to the maximum number of miles (km) or maximum time that can still be driven before the next service.

### Service event

For a **scheduled oil service** or a **scheduled inspection** there is an audible chime when the ignition is switched on. The wrench symbol also appears for several seconds in the instrument cluster display along with one of the following messages ⇒ [Fig. 16](#):

Oil service now!

Inspection now!

Oil service and inspection now!

### Viewing service message

You can view service information ⇒ [Fig. 17](#) in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the **Vehicle**, and **Service** function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

The current service message can also be accessed in the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is stopped:

- Press and hold the **0.0** button in the instrument cluster ⇒ [Instrument overview](#) or ⇒ [Volkswagen Digital Cockpit](#) until the word **Service** appears in the display.
- Release the button. The current service message appears in the display for a few seconds.

### Resetting the service reminder display

If the service was not performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, the service reminder can be reset as follows:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the **0.0** button in the instrument cluster ⇒ [Instrument overview](#), or ⇒ [Volkswagen Digital Cockpit](#).
- Switch on the ignition.
- Release the **0.0** button.
- One after the other, the following messages appear in the display:

Reset oil service?

Do you really want to reset

inspection?

- When you see the message for the interval you want to reset (either oil change or inspection), confirm the request by pressing the **0.0** button in the instrument cluster. A confirmation message appears in the display when the service reminder has been reset.



Do **not** reset the service reminder between service intervals; otherwise, incorrect information will be displayed.

## Using the instrument cluster menus

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Operation with the multi-function steering wheel*

⇒ *Driver assistance systems button*

⇒ *Assist systems menu*

The number of menus and information in the instrument cluster display depends on the electronics and equipment on the vehicle.

An authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility may be able to add or modify functions depending on your vehicle's equipment.

As long as a priority 1 warning message is displayed, no menus can be accessed. To display menus, acknowledge the warning by pressing the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 18*.

#### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never access menus when the vehicle is moving.



Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

### Operation with the multi-function steering wheel



**Fig. 18** Right side of the multi-function steering wheel: Controls for the menus and information in the instrument cluster display.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

#### Accessing the instrument cluster menus and information displays

- Switch on the ignition.
- Driver personalization: Select user.
- If a message or the vehicle icon is displayed, push the **OK** button (⇒ *Fig. 18*) on the right side of the multi-function steering wheel until a main menu appears in the instrument cluster display. For a list of main menus, see ⇒ *Instrument cluster menus*.
- Push buttons  or  to move to another main menu, and push the arrow up and down buttons  and  to navigate within the current main menu.

To open the menu or information display shown in the selection menu, press the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel, or wait until the menu or information display opens automatically after a few seconds.

#### Selecting a setting

Use the arrow up and down buttons  or  on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 18* to navigate through the available options. A frame may appear around the selected option. Push the **OK** button to select a setting.

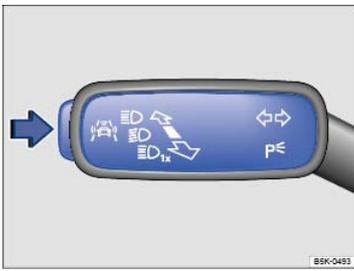
#### Returning to the main menu

Press the  or  button ⇒ *Fig. 18*.



If warning messages are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

### Driver assistance systems button



**Fig. 19 On the turn signal and high beam lever: Driver assistance systems button.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle may have a driver assistance systems button on the turn signal lever, which lets you switch some driver assistance systems on or off in the **Assist systems** menu ⇒ [Driver assistance systems](#).

### Switching individual driver assistance systems on or off

- Press the button ⇒ [Fig. 19](#) (arrow) to open the **Assist systems** menu.
- Using the arrow up and down buttons  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$  on the multi-function steering wheel, select the driver assistance system (for example, Lane Assist, if equipped). A check mark indicates if the selected driver assistance system is switched on.
- Confirm the selection by pressing the **OK** button on the multi-function steering wheel.

You can also switch driver assistance systems on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Assistance systems function keys ⇒ [Vehicle settings menu](#).

## Assist systems menu

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Assist systems menu	Function
Lane Assist	Switch the Lane Assist system on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <a href="#">Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)</a> .
Blind Spot Monitor	Switch the Blind Spot Monitor on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <a href="#">Blind Spot Monitor</a> .
Rear Traffic Alert	Switch the Rear Traffic Alert on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <a href="#">Blind Spot Monitor</a> .
Front Assist	Switch the Front Assist system on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <a href="#">Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)</a> .

You can also switch driver assistance systems on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Assistance systems function keys ⇒ [Vehicle settings menu](#).

## Infotainment system operation and displays

### Introduction to the subject

**In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:**

⇒ [Vehicle settings menu](#)

⇒ [Driver personalization](#)

### General information on operating the unit

The following section contains information on the settings that can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu. You can find information on operating the Infotainment system as well as warning and safety instructions in a separate manual. See ⇒ [Booklet/Infotainment System](#).

Some Infotainment features can only be accessed and operated when the vehicle is standing still and the automatic transmission selector lever is in Park (**P**).

### Vehicle settings and information

After pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle function key, you can tap the corresponding function key on the Infotainment screen to display information or adjust the following settings:

- Selection (Vehicle information)
  - Offroad View the off-road display (if equipped) ⇒ [Off-road display](#)

- Energy consumers ⇒ *Driving data (Multi-Function Display)*
- Driving data (Since start, extend. period, since refuel) ⇒ *Driving data (Multi-Function Display)*
- Think Blue. Trainer. ⇒ *Think Blue. Trainer.*
- Vehicle status (Current warning and information messages) ⇒ *Main menu*
- Radio or Media (Radio station or media selection) ⇒ *Booklet Infotainment System,*
- Settings or Setup ⇒ *Vehicle settings menu*

## ⚠ WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when setting, adjusting, or using the Infotainment system.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use the Infotainment system only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.



Starting the engine with a very weak 12 Volt vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

## Vehicle settings menu

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### Opening the Vehicle settings menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
- Press the **MENU** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Vehicle function key.
- Tap the function key to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
- Tap the corresponding function key to open additional menus in the **Vehicle settings** menu, or to adjust settings in the menu points.

If the box in the function key is checked , the respective function is switched on.

Changes made in settings menus are automatically applied immediately after entry.

Tapping the function key takes you back to the previous menu.

### Menu overview

The following menu overview is an example of the Infotainment system menu structure. The size and layout of the Volkswagen information system menu depends on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

Menu	Submenu	Setting options
ESC system	–	Turn the following systems on or off:  – Anti-slip regulation (ASR)  – ESC sport mode (ESC Sport) ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems</i>  – ESC (only possible in Off-road or Custom off-road mode) ⇒ <i>Braking assistance systems, ⇒ 4MOTION Active Control</i>
Tires	Tire Pressure Monitoring System	Store the tire pressures (SET) ⇒ <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</i>
		Turn the speed warning on or off

Menu	Winter tires Submenu	Setting options
		Set the speed warning ⇒ <i>Tires and wheels</i>
Personalization	Personalization	Turn driver personalization on or off
	Select account	– Select a user profile, rename or reset the user profile, or copy settings to another user profile
	Settings	Adjust the following settings:  – Select manual or automatic key assignment  – Assign key to current account  – Reset all ⇒ <i>Driver personalization</i>
Lights	Light Assist	Turn the following systems on or off (if equipped):  – Adaptive front lighting (AFS)  – Automatic headlights during rain (headlights turn on with the rain sensor when the headlight switch is in <b>AUTO</b> position)  – Convenience indicating (3-blink turn signal) ⇒ <i>Lights</i>
		Adjust the following feature (if equipped):  – Turn-on time for automatic headlights ( <b>AUTO</b> )
	Interior lighting	Adjust the following features:  – Instrument cluster/panel lighting ⇒ <i>Lights</i>
	Coming/Leaving home function	Set the following (if equipped):  – Duration that the Coming Home feature is switched on or switch the feature off.  – Duration that the Leaving Home feature is switched on or switch the feature off ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
		Adjust the distance or save last distance selected (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i>

Menu	ACC (adaptive cruise control) Sub-menu	Setting options
Assistance systems		Adjust the drive program (Eco, Comfort, Normal, Sport, if equipped) ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i>
	Front Assist (Forward Collision Warning)	Turn the following features on or off (if equipped): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Front Assist</li> <li>– Advance warning</li> <li>– Display distance warning</li> </ul> Adjust the warning period for the advance warning (Early, Medium, Late) ⇒ <i>Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)</i>
	Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist)	Turn Lane Assist on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)</i>
	Blind Spot Monitor	Turn the Blind Spot Monitor on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Blind Spot Monitor</i>
	Parking and maneuvering	ParkPilot
Maneuver braking		Turn on maneuver braking for Park Distance Control (PDC) ⇒ <i>Park Distance Control (PDC)</i> .
Rear Traffic Alert		Turn the Rear Traffic Alert on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Blind Spot Monitor</i>

Menu	Submenu	Setting options
Ambient lighting	–	Set the following features (if equipped): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Total brightness of the ambient lighting</li> <li>– Brightness of individual areas (roof, doors, and footwell) ⇒ <i>Lights</i></li> </ul>
Mirrors and wipers	Mirrors	Turn the following features on or off: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Passenger side mirror lowering in reverse gear (if equipped)</li> <li>– Fold away after parking (electrically folding outside mirrors, if equipped)</li> <li>– Synchronous mirror adjustment (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Mirrors</i></li> </ul>
	Windshield wipers	Turn the following features on or off: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Automatic wiping during rain (rain sensor)</li> <li>– Wipe rear window in reverse gear ⇒ <i>Windshield wipers and washer</i></li> </ul>
Opening and closing	Window operation	Turn the convenience opening feature for the power windows on or off (if equipped) ⇒ <i>Power windows</i>
	Central locking	Set door unlocking  Turn the following features on or off: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Easy Open (power opening feature for the trunk lid) ⇒ <i>Trunk lid</i></li> <li>– Acoustic confirmation (horn beep after the vehicle is locked from outside)                ⇒ <i>Power locking system</i></li> </ul>

Menu	Submenu	Setting options
Instrument cluster	-	<p>Display or hide the following data in the Multi-Function display:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Current economy (fuel consumption)</li> <li>- Average economy (fuel consumption)</li> <li>- Energy consumers</li> <li>- Eco tips</li> <li>- Travel time</li> <li>- Distance traveled</li> <li>- Average speed</li> <li>- Digital speed display</li> <li>- Speed warning</li> <li>- Oil temperature ⇒ <i>Volkswagen Information System</i></li> </ul>
	-	<p>Reset the following data in the Multi-Function display:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Driving data for Since start trip memory</li> <li>- Driving data for Extended period trip memory ⇒ <i>Volkswagen Information System</i></li> </ul>

Menu	Submenu	Setting options
Time and date	-	<p>Select and set the following data:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Clock time source (manual, GPS)</li> <li>- Time</li> <li>- Daylight saving time</li> <li>- Time zone</li> <li>- Time format (12 hour, 24 hour)</li> <li>- Date</li> <li>- Date format</li> </ul>
Units	-	<p>Set the units for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Distance</li> <li>- Speed</li> <li>- Temperature</li> <li>- Volume</li> <li>- Economy (fuel consumption)</li> <li>- Pressure</li> </ul>

Menu	Submenu	Setting options
Service	-	Display the following data:  - Vehicle identification number (VIN)  - Number of miles (km) and days until next inspection service is due  - Number of miles (km) and days until next oil change service is due ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i>
Factory settings	-	Reset the following features:  - All settings  - Personalization  - Lights  - Assistance systems  - Parking and maneuvering  - Ambient lighting  - Mirrors and wipers  - Opening and closing  - Instrument cluster

## Driver personalization

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a personalization feature that allows you to save certain vehicle settings for different user profiles, for example, some climate control, instrument cluster, or vehicle lighting settings. There are four user profiles, which the vehicle can identify by the key that is used to unlock the vehicle. Each vehicle key is assigned to a user profile.

Changes to the settings are applied to the active user profile and are saved after the vehicle is locked or when the user profile is changed.

### Identifying and selecting the user profile

When personalization is active, the name of the current user profile appears in the instrument cluster display for about 10 seconds after switching on the ignition.

During this time, you can select a user profile using the  and  buttons on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ [Operation with the multi-function steering wheel](#).

The saved vehicle settings will be activated after selecting the user profile.

### Managing user profiles and applying settings

You can manage user profiles and select settings via the Infotainment system in the **Personalization** menu when the ignition is switched on.

- Press the **MENU** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Vehicle and  function keys and select **Personalization**.

If the box in the function key is checked , the feature is switched on.

Menu	Submenu	Settings
Personalization	Active	Switch personalization on or off.
Select account	Driver 1 Driver 2 Driver 3 Guest	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Select a user profile.</li> <li>– Assign a name to (or rename) a user profile (except for Guest profile).</li> <li>– Copy settings from the active user profile to another profile.</li> <li>– Reset the saved settings for the selected user profile to factory settings. The user name and vehicle key assignment remain the same.</li> </ul>
Settings	Key assignment	<b>Manual</b>  The vehicle key is not automatically assigned to the most recently selected user profile.  Tap Assign key to current account to assign the key to the current profile.
		<b>Automatic</b>  The vehicle key in use is automatically assigned to the most recently selected user profile.
	Assign key to current account	Assign a vehicle key to the currently selected user profile.
	Reset all	The saved settings for all user profiles, the profile names, and all vehicle key assignments are reset to factory settings.

### Switching user profiles

You can select the user profile either in the **Personalization** menu or in the **Vehicle status** menu.

- Press the **MENU** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Vehicle function key.
- Tap the  function key and select **Personalization**. Then select the desired user profile.

### Manually assigning a vehicle key to a user profile

By selecting **Manual** key assignment, you can assign a vehicle key to the user profile that is currently active.

- Tap the  function key and select **Personalization**.
- Under **Settings**, select **Manual** key assignment.
- Tap the Assign key to current account function key.
- Press the  button on the remote control vehicle key within about 5 seconds ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.

#### Automatically assigning a vehicle key to a user profile

- Select **Automatic** key assignment.
- *Vehicles with Keyless Access*: When the user profile is switched, the new user profile will be automatically assigned to the vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.
- *Vehicles without Keyless Access*: When the user profile is switched, the new user profile is automatically assigned to the first key detected.

#### Personalizing vehicle settings

The following settings can be personalized, depending on vehicle equipment:

- Opening and closing (single door opening, convenience opening, etc.).
- Vehicle lighting (3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating), etc.).
- Mirror adjustment settings
- Climate control system (temperature settings, ventilation, etc.).
- Driver assistance systems (PDC, ACC, etc.).
- On-road driving mode selection (current driving mode, custom settings, etc.).
- MFD and instrument cluster (display selection).
- Seat settings (seat position).

#### Personalizing Infotainment system settings

The following features can be personalized:

- Radio (station sorting)
- Voice operation
- System settings (brightness levels)
- Navigation
- Media
- Audio management

For more information on Infotainment system operation, see ⇒Booklet *Infotainment system*.



A new vehicle key is assigned to the current user profile if automatic key assignment is selected. To assign the vehicle key to a different user profile, select the desired user profile and assign it to the vehicle key manually.

## Safety

### General information

#### Checklist

**Observe the following points before and during every drive for your own safety, the safety of all passengers and others** ⇒  :

- ✓ Check proper function of lights and turn signals.
- ✓ Check tire pressure Tires and wheels and fuel level Refueling.
- ✓ Make sure that all windows are clean.
- ✓ Check the windshield washer fluid level Windshield washer fluid.
- ✓ Make sure that the engine is not covered by blankets or other materials and that the engine air intake is not blocked.
- ✓ Store items and all luggage safely in the storage compartments, in the luggage compartment and, where applicable, on the roof Storage areas, Transporting
- ✓ Always make sure that nothing keeps the pedals from moving freely.
- ✓ Make sure that children are properly secured by a restraint system appropriate for their size and weight Child safety and child restraints.
- ✓ Properly adjust front seats, all head restraints, and mirrors Sitting properly and safely, Seats and head restraints.

- ✓ Wear shoes that give your feet a good grip and that give you a feel for the pedals.
- ✓ Make sure that the floormat on the driver side is properly fastened and cannot interfere with the pedals.
- ✓ Assume a proper seating position before the vehicle starts to move and keep this position while driving. Make sure that all passengers do the same Sitting properly and safely.
- ✓ Properly fasten your safety belt before driving the vehicle and wear your safety belt properly at all times while driving. Make sure that all passengers do the same Safety belts.
- ✓ Only transport as many passengers as there are seats and safety belts available.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability has been impaired, for example, by medication, alcohol, or illegal drugs.
- ✓ Never let passengers or phone calls distract you while driving and never take your attention off the road while using vehicle software or adjusting vehicle equipment or accessories.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Always obey traffic laws and speed limits.
- ✓ On long trips make frequent rest stops – at least once every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle with a system that corresponds to their weight and size.

## Checklist

**Some countries have special safety standards and emissions requirements that your vehicle may not meet. Before taking your vehicle to another country, Volkswagen therefore recommends that you ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the following issues with regard to the country to which you would like to travel:**

- ✓ Should the vehicle be technically prepared for the trip abroad, such as masking or adjusting headlights?
- ✓ Are maintenance, repair facilities, necessary tools, and testing equipment as well as spare parts readily available for your vehicle?
- ✓ Are there authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities in the countries where you will be driving?
- ✓ Is fuel with the appropriate rating for your vehicle's engine requirements readily available Fuel and emission control system?
- ✓ Are engine oil (Engine oil) and other operating fluids that meet Volkswagen quality and performance requirements available where you will be driving? For more information, please see Warranty and Maintenance.
- ✓ Does the factory-installed navigation system work in the countries where you will be driving, and is navigation data available?
- ✓ Are special or heavy-duty tires necessary for the kind of driving expected?

## Checklist

**If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work. Make sure that you check the following items regularly. The best thing is to check them every time you refuel:**

- ✓ Windshield washer fluid level Windshield washer fluid
- ✓ Engine oil level Engine oil
- ✓ Engine coolant level Engine coolant
- ✓ Brake fluid level Brake fluid
- ✓ Tire pressure Tires and wheels

Vehicle lighting necessary for driving safety Lights:

- Turn signals
- Low beams and high beams
- Taillights
- Brake lights
- License plate lights

Information about replacing light bulbs ⇒ [Replacing light bulbs](#).

### WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, illegal drugs, narcotics and some medications may cause collisions and other accidents, severe personal injuries and even death.

- Alcohol, illegal drugs, narcotics and some medications may severely affect perception, reaction times and safe driving, which may result in the loss of vehicle control.

## ⚠ WARNING

Always observe traffic rules and posted speed limits and use common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your destination and being seriously injured in a crash or other kind of accident.

## ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and injuries.

- Please note and follow the points listed in the checklist.

## 📌 NOTE

Volkswagen is not responsible for mechanical damage that may result from substandard fuel or service or the unavailability of Genuine Volkswagen parts.



Regular service and maintenance of your vehicle is important both for operational and driving safety and to help prolong your vehicle's service life. Always follow the scheduled maintenance intervals in the *⇒Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*, especially for changing the brake fluid. Hard use, frequent stop-and-go driving, driving in very dusty areas, trailer towing, and other factors may make it necessary to have the vehicle serviced more frequently. Ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information.

## Sitting properly and safely

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

*⇒ Examples of improper seating positions*

*⇒ Proper seating position*

### Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **5** or **7** seating positions. No one taller than 5 feet 3 inches (1.6 m) may sit in the third row. Each seating position has a safety belt.

	5 seating positions	7 seating positions
Front seating positions	2	2
Second row seating positions	3	3
Third row seating positions	-	2

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries in a crash or other accidents, especially when the airbag deploys.

- All occupants must sit properly and be properly restrained at all times.
- Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are seating positions with safety belts available.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with an approved and suitable restraint system appropriate for their age, weight, and height *⇒ Child safety and child restraints, ⇒ Airbag system*.
- Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## ⚠ WARNING

Passengers taller than 5 feet 3 inches (1.6 m) must never sit in the third row of seats. Taller people can be seriously injured in an accident or while closing the trunk lid.

- Never close the trunk lid when someone or something is in the way.
- Always close the trunk lid carefully.

## ⚠ WARNING

Always adjust seat, safety belts, and head restraints properly before driving and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible. Always be sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.

- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent. The distance to the instrument panel in the knee area must be at least 4 inches (10 cm).
- If these requirements cannot be met for physical reasons, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to see whether adaptive equipment is available.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Never drive with backrests reclined or tilted back farther than necessary to drive comfortably. The farther back the backrests are tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect positioning of the safety belts and improper seating position.
- Never drive with the front seat passenger backrest tilted forward. If the front airbag deploys, the front backrest can be forced backward and injure passengers on the rear seat.
- Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Rear seat passengers who are not properly seated and restrained are more likely to be seriously injured in a crash.

### WARNING

Improper adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle. In addition, you will not be in the correct seating position while adjusting the seats.
- Adjust the front seat height, angle and longitudinal direction only if the seat adjustment area is clear.
- The adjustment of the front seats must not be restricted by things in the footwell in front or behind the seats.

### WARNING

Improper use of seat covers can lead to an accidental activation of the electrical seat controls and can cause the front seats to move unexpectedly while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others. Furthermore, the electrical components of the front seats could be damaged.

- Never put seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been approved by Volkswagen for your specific vehicle.
- Never attach seat covers to the electrical seat controls.

### WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

## Examples of improper seating positions

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Not wearing or improperly fastening safety belts increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Safety belts can work only when they are properly positioned on the body. An improper seating position significantly impairs the protection provided by safety belts. This can cause severe or even fatal injuries. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury or death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. The driver is responsible for all passengers and especially children riding in the vehicle.

The following are only some examples of seating positions that will increase the risk of serious injury or death.

### Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.

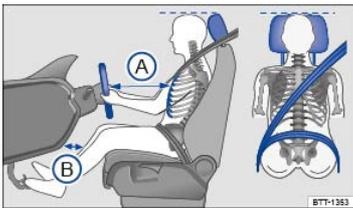
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never ride with the seat backrest reclined.
- Never lean up against the instrument panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the edge of the seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out the window.
- Never put your feet out the window.
- Never put feet on the instrument panel.
- Never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit or stand on an armrest.
- Never ride without your safety belt properly fastened.
- Never ride in the luggage compartment.

## ⚠ WARNING

Contact with parts of the vehicle interior can cause serious personal injury in a crash.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious and fatal injury, especially when an airbag deploys and strikes a passenger in an improper seating position.

## Proper seating position



**Fig. 20 Proper safety belt positioning and head restraint adjustment. The driver should never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The following describes the proper seating positions for the driver and passengers.

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. Only the proper seating position ensures optimum protection by the safety belt and airbag.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

For your own safety and to reduce injuries in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, Volkswagen recommends the following seating positions:

### Applies to all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of your head as close as possible to the head restraint ⇒ *Fig. 20* (dotted line).
- Push the head restraint completely down for short people, even if the top of the head is then below the upper edge of the head restraint.
- Tall people should pull the head restraint all the way up.
- Adjust the seat backrest angle to an upright position so that your back is in full contact with it when the vehicle is moving.
- Always keep both feet on the floor and in the footwell whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Always adjust and fasten safety belts properly ⇒ *Safety belts*.

### Driver - seat and steering wheel adjustment:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇒ *Fig. 20A*, ⇒ *Steering wheel*. When adjusting the proper distance to the steering wheel, grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbows slightly bent.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of

personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.

- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel cover points at your chest and not at your face. Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent. The distance to the instrument panel in the knee area must be at least 4 inches (10 cm) ⇒ *Fig. 20B*.
- Adjust the seat height so that the top point of the steering wheel can be reached.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

#### **Passenger - front seat adjustment:**

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible in order to ensure optimum protection if the airbag is deployed.

## Safety belts

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light*

⇒ *Frontal collisions and laws of physics*

⇒ *What happens to passengers not wearing a safety belt*

⇒ *Safety belts protect*

⇒ *Using safety belts*

⇒ *Fastening and unfastening safety belts*

⇒ *Safety belt position*

⇒ *Safety belt height adjusters*

⇒ *Safety belt extender*

⇒ *Safety belt retractor, pretensioner, load limiter*

⇒ *Service and disposal of belt pretensioners*

Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death in a collision or other accident.

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

Check the condition of all safety belts regularly.

If a safety belt shows damage to webbing, bindings, retractors or buckles, have the safety belt replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ .

### WARNING

Not wearing a safety belt or wearing an improperly positioned safety belt increases the risk of severe personal injury or death. Safety belts offer optimum protection only when they are used properly.

- Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death in a collision or other accident. For this reason, always wear your safety belt properly and make sure all passengers wear their safety belts properly as well whenever the vehicle is moving.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with a restraint system appropriate for their age, weight and height ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*.
- Always fasten safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle of another seat. Attaching the safety belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- Never let any objects or liquids get into the safety belt latch and prevent it from working properly.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any single safety belt.
- Never let children or babies ride sitting on your lap, and never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eyeglasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Several layers of heavy clothing (such as a coat worn over top of a sports jacket) may interfere with proper positioning of the safety belt and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the correct use of some child restraint systems.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.

## ⚠ WARNING

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

- Never let safety belts become damaged by being caught in the door or seat hardware.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged safety belt hardware can break in an accident.
- Inspect belts regularly for damage. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have the belts replaced immediately with the correct replacement belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle, model, and model year.
- Safety belts that were subject to stress in an accident and stretched must be replaced with a correct, new safety belt, preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt shows no visible damage. Anchorages that have been loaded must also be inspected.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Never try to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.
- Have safety belts, bindings, retractors and buckles replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work correctly and can impair the function of the inertia reel.

## Warning light



Fig. 21 Warning light in the instrument cluster.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause and proper response
	Driver and/or front passenger have not fastened their safety belts, if front passenger seat is occupied.  Fasten safety belts.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

A warning chime also sounds.

The safety belt warning light  comes on for 6 seconds when the ignition is switched on. A warning chime also sounds for up to 6 seconds if the driver's safety belt is not buckled. The chime stops sooner if the driver buckles his or her safety belt. The warning light and the chime go out when both driver and front passenger have buckled their safety belts.

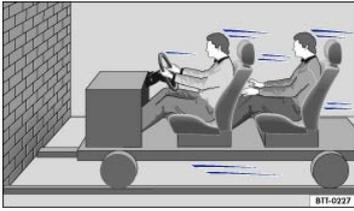
If the driver and front seat passenger do not both fasten their safety belts within about 24 seconds after the chime stops and the vehicle is moving at a speed of more than about 15 mph (25 km/h), the chime will again sound for about 6 seconds, then go off for about 24 seconds, then sound again for about another 6 seconds. The same thing happens if one of the safety belts is fastened and then unfastened while the vehicle is moving. The safety belt warning light  also flashes. The warning chime continues to sound at 24 second intervals for up to 2 minutes. No chime sounds at speeds of less than about 5 mph (8 km/h).

If the ignition is switched on, the safety belt warning light  stays on until the driver and front passenger have both buckled their safety belts.

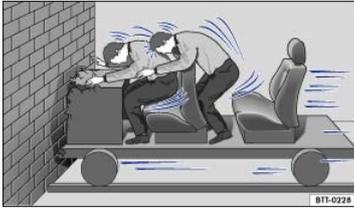
## ⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a safety belt or wearing an improperly positioned safety belt increases the risk of severe personal injury or death. Safety belts offer optimum protection only when used correctly.

## Frontal collisions and laws of physics



**Fig. 22 A vehicle with passengers not wearing safety belts approaches a wall.**



**Fig. 23 A vehicle with passengers not wearing safety belts hits a wall.**

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The physical principles of a frontal collision are simple. Both the moving vehicle and the passenger possess energy ⇒ Fig. 22, which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy kinetic energy.

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy has to be absorbed in a crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If your speed doubles (for example, from 15 mph to 30 mph – 25 km/h to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the occupants of the vehicle in the above example are not using safety belts, they are not attached to the vehicle. In a frontal collision, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the inside of the passenger compartment. Because the occupants of the vehicle in the example are not wearing safety belts, their entire kinetic energy will be absorbed by impact with the wall ⇒ Fig. 23.

The same principles apply to people in a vehicle that is in a frontal collision on the highway. Even at city speeds of 20–30 mph (30–50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

Of course, the laws of physics don't apply just to frontal collisions; they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

## What happens to passengers not wearing a safety belt



**Fig. 24 The unbelted driver is thrown forward.**



**Fig. 25 Unbelted passengers in the rear seats are thrown forward on top of the belted driver.**

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Many people believe that it is possible to resist the forces of an impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. That is simply not true!

Even at low collision speeds, the forces acting on the body are too much for the body to be held in the seat with the arms and hands. In a frontal collision,

unrestrained occupants will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield or anything else in the way ⇒ Fig. 24.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Even if your vehicle is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash, regardless of whether a seating position has an airbag or not.

An airbag will deploy only once. Safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle, causing even more severe injuries or death.

It is also important for occupants in the rear seats to wear their safety belts properly since they can be thrown violently forward through the vehicle in the event of an accident. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers in the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 25.

## Safety belts protect



Fig. 26 Belted driver secured by the correctly worn safety belt in the event of a sudden braking maneuver.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Used properly, safety belts can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in a collision, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 26.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or softly through the give in the safety belts, crumple zones, and other safety features (such as airbags) engineered into today's vehicles. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb kinetic energy. By absorbing the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more tolerable and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure that others do, too.

Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving a collision. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is required by law in most countries including the United States and Canada.

Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers, or in cases when the conditions for deployment stored in the electronic control unit are not met. The same goes for the other airbag systems on your Volkswagen.

So always wear your safety belt and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

## Using safety belts

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Checklist

#### Using safety belts ⇒

- ✓ Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.
- ✓ Check the condition of all safety belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep safety belts clean.
- ✓ Keep objects and liquids away from safety belt webbing, the safety belt buckle tongue, and the safety belt buckle latch and opening.
- ✓ Do not pinch or damage the safety belt or buckle tongue (for instance, when closing a door).
- ✓ Never modify, disassemble or try to repair safety belts and safety belt anchorages.
- ✓ Always fasten your safety belt properly before driving and keep it fastened whenever the vehicle is moving.

### Twisted safety belt

If it is difficult to pull the safety belt out of the belt guide, the belt may be twisted inside the side trim because the belt retracted too quickly when it was taken off.

- Hold the safety belt tongue, slowly and carefully pull safety belt all the way out.
- Untwist the safety belt and slowly return the belt by hand.

If you cannot untwist the safety belt, wear it anyway. Make sure that the safety belt is twisted in a spot where it does not come in direct contact with your body. Have the safety belt untwisted immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Lockable safety belt

The retractors for the rear seat safety belts and the front passenger safety belt have a switchable locking feature for child restraints in addition to the emergency locking feature. Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it can't tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints* .

To see whether a safety belt is lockable, pull the safety belt *all the way* out of the safety belt retractor. You should then hear a clicking sound as the belt winds back into the retractor reel. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. When the switchable locking feature is active, you should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor.

The locking feature must be deactivated when a vehicle occupant uses the safety belt.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use and care of safety belts increases the risk of severe personal injury or death.

- Regularly check safety belts and related parts for damage.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Always keep safety belts clean.
- Never catch, damage or chafe safety belt webbing on sharp edges.
- Always keep objects and liquids away from the belt buckle and buckle opening.

### Fastening and unfastening safety belts

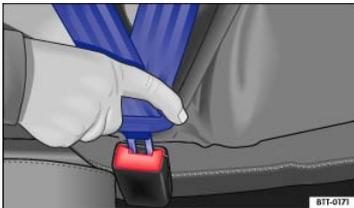


Fig. 27 Inserting the buckle tongue into the belt buckle.



Fig. 28 Releasing the buckle tongue from the belt buckle.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Properly worn safety belts help to hold occupants in their seats and provide optimum protection during braking or in a collision or other accident ⇒ ⚠.

The switchable locking feature makes a clicking sound when the safety belt is winding back onto the safety belt retractor wheel after being pulled *all the way* out. Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*. If active, deactivate the locking feature before using the safety belt to restrain a person without a child restraint system.

### Fastening safety belts

Always buckle your safety belt before driving.

- Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ *Seats and head restraints*.
- Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the safety belt ⇒ ⚠.
- Hold the safety belt by the tongue and pull it slowly and evenly across the chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the safety belt webbing ⇒ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue into the correct buckle for your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ Fig. 27.

- Pull on the safety belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

### Unfastening safety belts

Unfasten safety belts only when the vehicle is not moving ⇒ ▲.

- Press the red button on the buckle ⇒ Fig. 28. The buckle tongue is ejected.
- Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position to help prevent the safety belt from twisting and to help avoid damage to the interior trim.

### ▲ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- A person who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself if it slips from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Unfastening safety belts while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe personal injury or death in the event of an accident or braking maneuver!

### Safety belt position

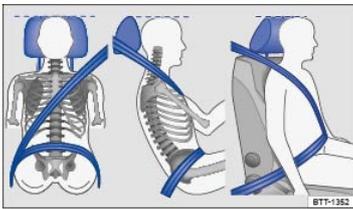


Fig. 29 Proper safety belt positioning and head restraint adjustment.

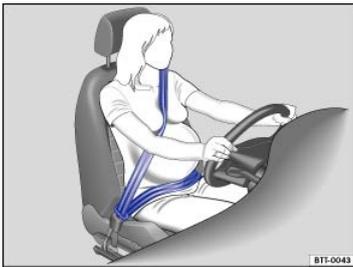


Fig. 30 Proper safety belt positioning for expectant mothers.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. A properly worn safety belt also helps to position the occupant so that an airbag can provide maximum protection when deployed. Therefore, always fasten your safety belt and make sure that it is properly positioned over your body.

Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and even increase the risk of injury or death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of severe injury or death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not seated properly ⇒ *Sitting properly and safely*.

### Proper safety belt position

- The shoulder portion of the safety belt must always run over the center of the shoulder and never over the throat, over the arm, under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap portion of the safety belt must always run as low as possible over the pelvis and never over the abdomen.
- Always wear the safety belt flat and snug against the body. Pull on the safety belt to tighten if necessary.

**Expectant mothers** must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen – throughout the pregnancy. The safety belt must lie flat against the body to avoid pressure against the abdomen ⇒ Fig. 30.

### Adjusting safety belt height

The safety belt position can be adjusted using the following features:

- Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Front seats with height adjustment.

### ▲ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident or a sudden braking maneuver.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.
- The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body.
- Never wear the shoulder part of the safety belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- The lap portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug against the pelvis. Pull on the safety belt to tighten if necessary.
- Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
- Do not twist the belt when attaching it. If you cannot untwist a twisted safety belt, wear it anyway, but make sure the twisted part is not in contact with your body. Have the problem corrected right away by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never hold the safety belt away from your body with your hand.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects, such as eyeglasses, pens or keys.
- Never modify the position of the belt using comfort clips, loops or similar devices.



If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the seat with the safety belt properly fastened, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

## Safety belt height adjusters

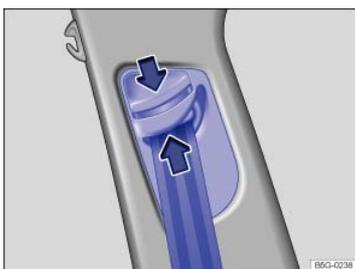


Fig. 31 Next to the front seats: Safety belt height adjuster.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt so that it is positioned correctly:

- Pinch the safety belt attachment together as indicated by the arrows and hold → [Fig. 31](#).
- Slide the belt and upper attachment up or down until the safety belt is positioned over the center of the shoulder → [Safety belts](#).
- Release the safety belt attachment.
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure that the upper attachment is securely locked in place.

### WARNING

Never adjust the height of the safety belt while driving.

## Safety belt extender

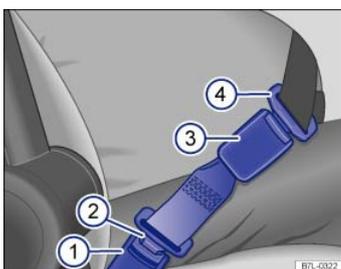
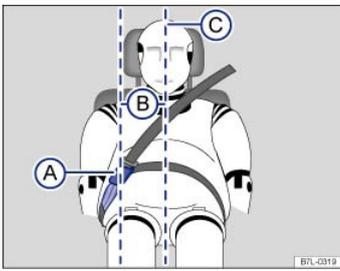


Fig. 32 A safety belt extender properly attached to the factory-installed safety belt.



**Fig. 33 Positioning of the safety belt extender.**

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If a safety belt is too short to correctly fit you or one of your passengers, even when the safety belt is pulled out all the way, you can use a safety belt extender.

Never use the safety belt extender for any other purpose – including the attachment of a child restraint.

The extender adds about 8 inches (20 cm) to the safety belt. Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if you believe you may need an extender.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 32 :**

- ① Vehicle safety belt buckle.
- ② Buckle tongue on the safety belt extender.
- ③ Safety belt buckle on the safety belt extender.
- ④ Safety belt buckle tongue on the factory-installed safety belt.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 33 :**

- A Safety belt buckle on the safety belt extender.
- B Distance between the safety belt buckle on the safety belt extender and the centerline of the person using the safety belt extender. **The distance must be more than 6 inches (15 cm)!**
- C Centerline of the person using the safety belt extender.

#### Using a safety belt extender

- Adjust both the seat and the head restraint properly ⇒ [Seats and head restraints](#).
- Insert the buckle tongue on the safety belt extender ⇒ [Fig. 32②](#) into the vehicle belt buckle for the seat where the safety belt extender is being used ⇒ [Fig. 32①](#).
- Fastening or unfastening the vehicle safety belt ⇒ [Safety belts](#).
- Pull the belt to make sure that the tongues are securely locked in the buckles.
- Make sure that the safety belt is positioned properly ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

#### Properly using safety belt extenders:

- Use a safety belt extender only when the factory installed safety belt is too short when worn properly by a person in proper seating position.
- Only use one safety belt extender per seat and vehicle safety belt.
- Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed.
- Never leave a safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt buckle when the extender is not needed and being used with the safety belt. Otherwise, the airbag control module will receive an incorrect signal from the safety belt buckle and this will prevent the airbag from working properly for a person who is not using the safety belt. Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal the airbag control unit during a collision that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily and the front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions that would normally trigger the front airbag earlier in the collision to help protect an unrestrained front seat occupant. The airbag will not be able to provide enough protection for an occupant not wearing a safety belt.
- Only use the safety belt extender approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.

#### WARNING

Improper use or positioning of a safety belt extender increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- A driver or passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself, which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Safety belt extenders offer optimum protection only when they are properly used.
- Only use the extender when the belt is not long enough to be worn low and snug and the person is in the correct seating position. Remove and stow extender safely when not needed.

- Always make sure the safety belt tongue of the safety belt extender is securely inserted into the buckle for the seating position that belongs to the seat where the safety belt extender is being used. Attaching the safety belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- Never use the safety belt extender if you can properly attach the safety belt without it. Using a safety belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury, especially in a collision.
- Never use a safety belt extender if the distance (B) between the front edge of the safety belt extender buckle (A) and the centerline of the person using the safety belt extender ⇒ *Fig. 33* is less than 6 inches (15 cm).
- Never leave a safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt buckle when the extender is not needed and being used with the safety belt. Otherwise, the airbag control module will receive an incorrect signal from the safety belt buckle and this will prevent the airbag from working properly for a person who is not using the safety belt.
- Never use more than one extender with a safety belt. Using more than one extender can change the way the safety belt passes over the body and can cause serious injury.
- Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.
- Never use a safety belt extender on your Volkswagen that you got from another automobile manufacturer or from an automotive parts store.
- Never use the safety belt extender you got for your vehicle for any other vehicle, regardless of make, model, or model year.

#### ! NOTE

- Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal to the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will
  - **cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily in collisions.**
  - **cause the front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions in which the front airbag would otherwise be triggered earlier to help protect an unrestrained front seat passenger.**
- A pretensioner that has deployed cannot be repaired. The entire safety belt must be replaced.

#### ! NOTE

If the safety belt extender is left attached to the safety belt buckle, the safety belt warning system will sense that the safety belt for that seat is being used. The warning light will not come on and the warning chime will not sound even though the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used.

## Safety belt retractor, pretensioner, load limiter

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The safety belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle's safety concept ⇒ *Airbags and how they work* and consist of the following important features:

### Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic safety belt retractor on the shoulder belt. As long as the safety belt is pulled out slowly, the shoulder belt will extend to let you move freely under normal driving conditions. The automatic safety belt retractor locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in a collision. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve.

### Safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt retractors for the driver and front seat passenger have a pretensioner that helps take the slack out of the safety belt and tighten it when the pretensioner is activated.

The pretensioners are activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system in front, side, and rear collisions. By tightening the safety belt, the pretensioner helps to reduce the occupant's forward movement. The belt pretensioner works together with the airbag system; its function is monitored by the airbag system indicator light. The belt pretensioner will not deploy in a rollover if the side airbags are not activated.

A fine dust may be released upon activation. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.

### Safety belt load limiter

The front and rear outboard safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.



Heed all safety regulations if the vehicle or individual components of the system have to be scrapped. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility are familiar with these regulations ⇒ *Service and disposal of belt pretensioners*.

## Service and disposal of belt pretensioners

## Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The pretensioners are part of the safety belts installed at the front seats in your vehicle. Installing, removing, servicing, or repairing of safety belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision. The pretensioners themselves may then also not work in the event of an accident or not work properly.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment. Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules contain explosive materials that can cause serious injuries to the general public and to people who work at dealerships and workshops, scrap yards, and recycling facilities. For this reason, the systems must be properly handled when they or the vehicles they are installed in are scrapped.

Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules can also pollute the environment. Never abandon vehicles or vehicle parts. If your vehicle must be scrapped, please make sure that it is done safely, responsibly, and in compliance with all applicable environmental regulations. Take it to a licensed facility that has the knowledge and experience to properly dispose of the vehicle and its safety belt system. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility are familiar with these regulations.

### WARNING

Improper handling, care, servicing, and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a belt pretensioner from activating when needed or by causing it to activate unexpectedly.

- The pretensioner can be activated only once. If a pretensioner has been activated, the safety belt must be replaced.
- Safety belt systems including the pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required to remove, install, and dispose of this system.
- Never repair, adjust, or change pretensioners or any other part of the safety belt system yourself. We strongly recommend that you have any work on the safety belt system performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They have the necessary technical information, training, and special equipment ⇒ [Parts, accessories, repairs, and modifications](#).

### WARNING

Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules contain explosive materials that can cause serious personal injuries if they are not properly handled when they or the vehicles they are installed in are scrapped.

- Never abandon vehicles or vehicle parts.
- Always scrap vehicles and vehicle parts, especially those containing undeployed airbag modules and undeployed safety belt pretensioners, at a licensed facility that has the knowledge and experience to properly dispose of the vehicle and its safety belt and airbag systems.

 Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Airbag system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints, and children on the front seat](#)

⇒ [Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System](#)

⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG light](#)

⇒ [Airbags and how they work](#)

⇒ [The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat](#)

⇒ [Front airbags](#)

⇒ [Advanced Airbag System components](#)

⇒ [How to tell if the front passenger front airbag is on or off](#)

⇒ [Side airbags](#)

⇒ [Side Curtain Protection® airbags](#)

Your vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and front seat passenger. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and the front seat passenger when seats, safety belts, head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel, are properly used and have been properly

adjusted. Airbags are only supplemental restraints. They are not a substitute for safety belts that must be worn even though the front seating positions are equipped with front airbags.

#### WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbags work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts → [Safety belts](#).
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

#### WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit upright more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel and with your back against the backrest, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. See → [Safety belts](#).
- An infant in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.
- Never put your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the head, legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

#### WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and fly dangerously through the passenger compartment when an airbag inflates.
- Always make sure that the airbag deployment zones are clear at all times. Never let any thing or object, a pet, or a person, including an infant or small child, be in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.

#### WARNING

An airbag works only once. Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Deployed airbags and the related system parts must be replaced immediately with new parts approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle model and model year.
- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information, and trained personnel to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.
- Never modify any components of the airbag system.

#### WARNING

Fine dust released when airbags deploy can irritate the skin, eyes, and mucous membranes as well as cause breathing problems for people who suffer from asthma or other respiratory conditions.

- The fine dust can irritate the skin and eye mucous membranes and cause breathing problems for people who suffer from asthma or other breathing conditions. To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.

- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

## ⚠ WARNING

Using solvents or other improper cleaning products on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash, causing injury.
- Never use solvents or cleaners on the steering wheel horn pad or on the instrument panel because they can damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- When cleaning the horn pad and instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with plain water.

## Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints, and children on the front seat

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Be sure to read the important information and the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for suppression for infants of about 12 months old and younger and for low risk deployment for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

## ⚠ DANGER!

The front seat of any vehicle can be a dangerous place for a child - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If the front airbag inflates, a child or infant who
  - is unrestrained on the front seat,
  - is in an improperly installed forward-facing child restraint on the front seat, or
  - is in any rearward-facing child restraint on the front seat will be seriously injured and can be killed.
- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always properly install rearward-facing child restraints or infant carriers and forward-facing child restraints on the rear seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

## Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light  will come on for a few seconds (function check).

**The airbag system must be inspected if the airbag indicator light **

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition,
- goes out and then lights up again or blinks after the ignition is switched on,
- or if it lights up or blinks while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the airbag indicator light comes on and stays on to alert the driver to the problem. It also reminds you to have the airbag system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light ⇒ PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

## ⚠ WARNING

An airbag system and safety belt pretensioner that are not working properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 34 In the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG light.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

On	Location	Possible cause	Solution
	Instrument cluster	Airbag and safety belt pretensioner system malfunction.	See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the system checked.
<b>OFF</b> 	Instrument panel ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 34</a>	Airbag system malfunction.  Front passenger airbag turned off by Advanced Airbag System.	See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the system checked.  Check if the airbag must stay turned off.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light ⇒ [Fig. 34](#) will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light burns out, the airbag indicator light  ⇒ [Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System](#) will come on and signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out light will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

- the ignition is switched on **and**
- the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's front Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

After the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is proper for the size, age, and weight (electrical capacitance) of the occupant on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light will show the status of the front seat passenger's front Advanced Airbag System a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on and the airbag monitoring light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
- will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about 1 year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#) ;

- will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.

**The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...**

- a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
- and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front passenger airbag will not deploy, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light will stay on.

Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is on the rear seat → [The danger of using child restraints on the front seat](#), and → [Child safety and child restraints](#).

**If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on...**

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not come on and stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so **AND**

- reactivate the airbag system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around or through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the switchable locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight;
- make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12 Volt socket → [Power outlets](#);
- make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
- make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
- make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

**If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light still does not come on...**

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on), take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

**The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light should NOT come on...**

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on and stays on under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined;
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing;
- there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.
- the optional safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

** WARNING**

If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.

** WARNING**

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.

- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.



If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light will stay on.



If the optional safety belt extender is left in the buckle for the front safety belt, or the front passenger safety belt itself is buckled and the front passenger seat is not occupied, the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light will come on and stay on.

## Airbags and how they work

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Front airbags and how they work

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. They are not a substitute for safety belts that must be worn even though the front seating positions are equipped with front airbags. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and the front seat passenger when seats, safety belts, head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel, are properly used and have been properly adjusted.

When the airbag system deploys in a collision, a gas generator fills the airbags that break open the padded covers on the steering wheel and the instrument panel. The front airbags inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger.

Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the vehicle interior, thereby reducing the forces acting on the occupants during a crash. In this way, they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body during a crash. Airbags do not provide protection for the arms and lower body parts. It is important to remember that the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries. However, it is possible that a deployed airbag may cause other injuries such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions.

Airbags inflate in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

Airbags inflate with a great deal of force. Airbags can cause serious injuries when they inflate and hit those who are sitting too close, are out of position, or are not properly restrained. By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection during certain frontal collisions ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

Make sure that nothing is in the way of the airbags when they deploy. For example, things on your lap or on the seat could be pushed into your body or fly dangerously through the passenger compartment when the airbag inflates and cause serious personal injury.

The areas outlined in red (dotted lines) ⇒ [Fig. 35](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 36](#) indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines).

### Physical impairments and airbags

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. The safety belt and airbag can only provide optimum protection if you are seated correctly and can reach the pedals.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

### When airbags deploy

Deployment of the front airbags and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

The front airbags will not inflate in side or rear collisions, in rollovers or if the ignition is switched off. The front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. This dust could irritate skin and eyes and cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other respiratory conditions.

**Always remember:** Front airbags only supplement the 3 point safety belts in some frontal collisions only when the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags. Airbags only deploy once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. The safety belts are always there to offer protection in situations in which airbags should not deploy or when they have already deployed, for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after an initial collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always buckle up properly and wear your safety belts.

The airbags are part of the overall passive vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most efficiently when used with properly worn safety belts and a proper seating position ⇒ .

## Safety equipment

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a number of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The following are just a few of the safety features for your Volkswagen:

- Sophisticated safety belts for all seating positions.
- Safety belt pretensioners for the driver and front passenger.
- Safety belt load limiters for the front and rear outboard seating positions.
- Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Safety belt warning light.
- Advanced front airbag system for the driver and front passenger.
- Sensors for the capacitive front seat passenger detection system.
- Side airbags for the driver and front passenger.
- Side Curtain Protection® airbags with ejection mitigation features.
- Airbag indicator light .
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light.
- Electronic control unit and associated sensors.
- Head restraints with height adjustment optimized for rear-end collisions.
- Adjustable steering column.
- LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages for child safety seats on the second row outboard seating positions.
- Top tether anchorages for child safety seats on all second row seating positions.

These individual safety features can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of collisions. These features can't work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and properly used!

### How the Advanced Airbag System components work together...

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger front airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about 1 year of age in one of the child restraints that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light.*

#### WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbags work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts ⇒ *Safety belts.*
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

#### WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit less than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit upright more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways, or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You can also be seriously injured and even be killed if you are sitting too close to the airbag when it inflates.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
- An infant in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when the airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.
- Adjust the front seats properly.

- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never put your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat.
- Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the head, legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

#### WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors or attach them to the doors; never place them over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or seat backrests or between those areas and someone in the vehicle. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.
- Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to the airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

#### WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

#### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on, take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seating positions.
- Always make sure that the child restraint is correctly registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

#### WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag on your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

## The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride, even if the vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System. The front seat is a very dangerous place for an infant or small child in a rearward facing child restraint. The front seat is also not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. All children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat and be properly restrained for their age and size.

During a frontal collision, a child restraint or infant carrier on the front seat could be hit and knocked out of position by the inflating front passenger airbag. The airbag

could significantly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure a child while deploying.

Because of this danger, and because children are generally better protected on the rear seat when properly restrained for their age and size, we strongly urge you always make sure that children ride on the rear seat ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints* , and ⇒ *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat* .

## DANGER!

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if too close to the airbag when it deploys – even an Advanced Airbag.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System has been designed to switch off when an infant or small child is on the front passenger seat in a child restraint that was used during the certification process for the Advanced Airbag System, no one can guarantee with absolute certainty that the airbag will never deploy under these particular conditions in all conceivable situations for the duration of your vehicle's use.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the low risk option for 3 to 6 year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child restraints with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

## DANGER!

Children on the front seat of any vehicle, even one with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

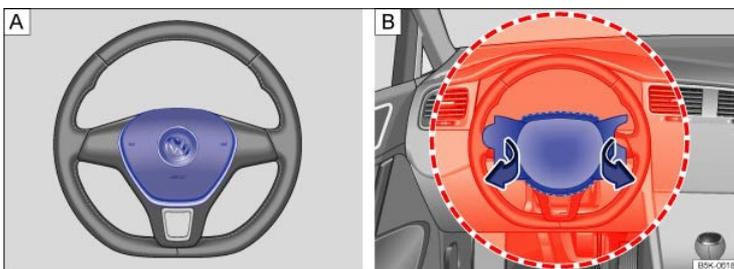
## WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

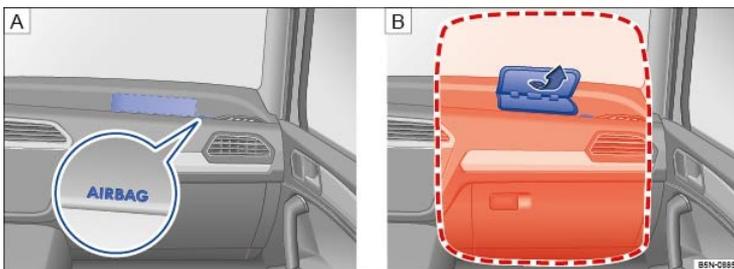
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the following special precautions must be taken for the safety and well-being of the child:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing child restraint has been designed and certified for use on a front passenger seat with a front airbag and a side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided for the child restraint or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never install a forward-facing child restraint in the third row if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.

- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger seat from being moved all the way back to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system.
- Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child restraint in a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even when no child is sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around the vehicle during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in the vehicle: ⇒ *Safety belts*, ⇒ *Airbag system*, and ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*.

## Front airbags



**Fig. 35** Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag.



**Fig. 36** Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System in compliance with the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 or the Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇒ *Fig. 35*  and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇒ *Fig. 36* . The general location of the airbags is marked AIRBAG.

The safety belts for the front seating positions have safety belt pretensioners which help take up slack in the belts. The airbag control unit also activates the belt pretensioners ⇒ *Airbags and how they work*.

The safety belts for the front and rear outboard seating positions also have belt load limiters to reduce the forces acting on a body during an accident.

The areas marked in red (dotted lines) ⇒ *Fig. 35*  and ⇒ *Fig. 36*  indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines).

### Front airbags will not deploy:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers,
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

### The front passenger front airbag will also not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side front airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on ⇒ *Airbags and how they work*).

### DANGER!

Children on the front seat of any vehicle, even one with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### DANGER!

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if too close to the airbag when it deploys – even an Advanced Airbag.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- An Advanced Airbag System can deploy with the low risk option for 3 to 6 year-old children when a child who is heavier than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old child plus child restraint is secured on the passenger seat in a forward-facing or rear-facing child restraint that was used to certify your vehicle, and when the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- For their own safety, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always sit on the back seat, properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- If the airbag indicator light goes on while driving, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. A lit indicator light means the airbags may not work properly if activated in a crash.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

### WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, notepads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors or attach them to the doors; never place them over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or seat backrests, or between those areas and someone in the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 35* and ⇒ *Fig. 36*. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never attach accessories to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
- Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

## ⚠ WARNING

Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

## ⚠ WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

## ⚠ WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag on your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

✿ Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Advanced Airbag System components

📖 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it ⇒ *Airbags and how they work*. These parts include capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system in the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇒ *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF* ⚠ *light*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

### The front Advanced Airbag System also includes:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit decides whether to fire just the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also decides whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
- An airbag system indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- The *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF* ⚠ *light* in the center of the instrument panel that tells you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ *PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF* ⚠ *light*.
- A switch in the safety belt buckle for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

## ⚠ WARNING

An airbag system and safety belt pretensioner that are not working properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the airbag system. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is

not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen. Have them installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

#### WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

- Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Repairs to the front passenger seat should be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never remove the front passenger seat or driver seat from the vehicle.
- Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
- Never disassemble or take parts off the seat or disconnect wires from it.
- Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. If the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
- Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit. These things can also cause serious personal injury if the airbag inflates.
- Never store items under the front seats. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the front seats could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
- Never put seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been approved by Volkswagen for your specific vehicle.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12 Volt socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something similar to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the child the restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.

- If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger front airbag. If this happens, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light  in the instrument cluster.
- If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the front passenger front airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light goes out when the front passenger's front airbag is active.

#### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to electrical and other parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.
- Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle that originally had cloth upholstery. Never install cloth upholstery on a vehicle that originally had leather upholstery. The capacitive passenger detection system for the Advanced Airbag system will not work properly if different upholstery is installed on the passenger seat than the upholstery originally installed on the vehicle when it was originally manufactured.

### How to tell if the front passenger front airbag is on or off

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  Introduction to the subject

## Passenger front airbag

Regardless of safety belt use, the airbag in front of the front passenger seat will be switched off if the electrical capacitance measured on this seat is less than the value programmed in the electronic control unit.

The front airbag on the passenger side of the front seat will also be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured on the seat (by the capacitive passenger detection system) is less than or equal to the combined capacitance of:

- a typical 1 year-old infant and
- any of the child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 for which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is certified.

For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with U.S. Safety Standard 208, see → [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#). The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.

## Passenger front airbag active

- Switch on the ignition.
- The capacitive passenger detection system measures the electrical capacitance of the front passenger seat. If that capacitance is above the reference value, the passenger front airbag will be switched on by the Advanced Airbag control unit.
- If the ignition is on, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light in the instrument panel *does not* come on, the passenger front airbag is generally active. If the OFF  light has burned out (see below), you will be unable to tell whether the passenger front airbag is active or not.

## Using child restraints on the front passenger seat

The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. Because of this danger, and because children are generally better protected on the rear seat when properly restrained for their age and size, we strongly advise that you always place children on the rear seat → [The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat](#). For a list of the child restraints used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of FMVSS 208, see → [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#).

For more information, see → [Child safety and child restraints](#); note →  below!

## How do I know when the passenger front airbag has been turned off by the control unit?

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light in the instrument panel will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. **Unless** the yellow OFF  light comes on and stays on, the passenger front airbag is still active → [PASSENGER AIR BAG !\[\]\(541545994945204347b0aa5c4e600ba3\_img.jpg\) light](#).

**For safety reasons, you must never** use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat **unless** the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on and stays on, perhaps in combination with the  indicator light in the instrument cluster. If the passenger front airbag deployed in an accident, it would severely injure and possibly kill the child in the restraint system. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light burns out, the airbag indicator light will come on and signal a malfunction of the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out light will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## DANGER!

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if sitting too close to the airbag when it deploys.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

## WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on. Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the seating positions on the rear seat if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not stay on. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or

something similar to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.

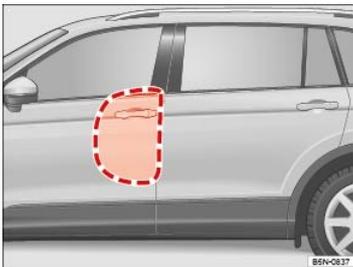
- Otherwise, install the child restraint system on the rear seat!

## WARNING

Changes in the electrical capacitance of the passenger seat while driving can switch the passenger front airbag on or off so that it does not deploy when it should or deploys when it should not, resulting in an increased risk of serious personal injury.

- Do not carry anything on your lap or transport things on the passenger seat. Things on the passenger seat can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, sending the wrong information to the airbag control unit. These objects can also cause serious personal injury if the airbag inflates.
- Always make sure that a child restraint has been correctly registered by the capacitive passenger detection system. If the status of the Advanced Airbag System changes while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the passenger riding on the front passenger seat.

## Side airbags



**Fig. 37** On the driver side: Location and deployment zone of the side airbags.



**Fig. 38** On the driver side: Location and deployment zone of the side airbags in the padding on the outboard side of the front seat backrest.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The side airbags are in the backrest padding of the driver and passenger seats ⇒ *Fig. 38*. The general location is shown by the word AIRBAG. The area marked in red (dotted lines) indicates the deployment zone of the side airbags.

In a side collision, the side airbag in the seat backrest can deploy and help reduce the risk of injury to the driver or the front seat passenger.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.

The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Always read and heed all important information and WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in the vehicle: ⇒ *Safety belts*, ⇒ *Airbag system*, ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*, and ⇒ .

### The side airbag system includes:

- An electronic control module and side impact sensors.
- Side airbags in the front seat backrests.
- An airbag system indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

When a side airbag deploys in a collision, a gas generator fills the side airbag between the vehicle occupant and the door. The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the occupant's upper torso.

In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make sure it is working properly at all times. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light .

will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle ⇒ *Sitting properly and safely*, ⇒ *Safety belts*.

It is important to remember that the side airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injury. However, it is also important to remember that a deploying airbag may also cause other injuries, such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions. Also remember that side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents. After the side airbag inflates, the system must be replaced. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accident in which side airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

**The side airbag system will not inflate:**

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers, unless the deployment threshold for deployment stored in the control unit is met.

In some types of accidents, the front airbags, Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

**⚠ WARNING**

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or even fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

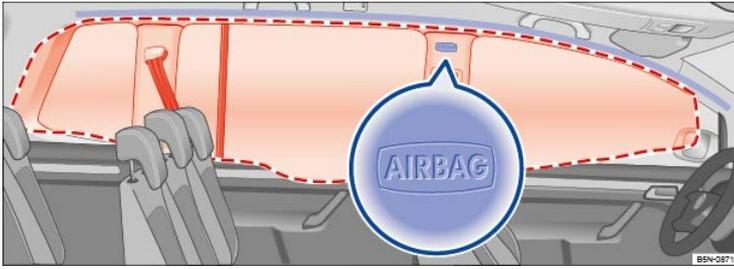
- To help reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,
  - Always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly.
  - Never let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in a collision by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors or over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the seat backrests ⇒ *Fig. 37*.
- Accessories or other objects can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause serious injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.
- Never position or hold any objects or pets in the area where an airbag inflates or allow any children or other passengers to ride in that space.
- Never use the built-in coat hooks for anything but lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Such objects may interfere with side airbag deployment and cause serious personal injury in a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper use, repair, or disassembly of the driver and front passenger seats can prevent side airbags from working properly and result in severe injuries.

- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seat backrests that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen. Otherwise, the side airbag may not be able to deploy properly.
  - Never put seat cushions, blankets, or other coverings over the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects hitting the sides of the seat backrests or force being put on the seat backs, especially in the area where the side airbag module is located.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced.
- Always have work involving the side airbag system, including removal, replacement, and installation of airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise, the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify parts of the front seats.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
- If too much force is exerted on the seat backrest bolsters, the side airbags may deploy improperly, not at all, or when they should not.

## Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags



**Fig. 39** On the left vehicle side: Installation location and deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection airbag.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  **Introduction to the subject**

The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags are in the header area on both sides of the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 39*. The general location is identified by the word AIRBAG. The red lines show the deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection airbags. The Side Curtain Protection airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

### The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag system includes:

- An electronic control module and side impact sensors.
- The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags above the front and rear side windows.
- An airbag system indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags inflate downwards between the occupant and the side window on that side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇒ *Fig. 39*. The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torsos on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags also contain features to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain vehicle rollovers.

In order to help provide this additional protection, the Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make sure it is working properly at all times. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle ⇒ *Sitting properly and safely*, ⇒ *Safety belts*.

It is important to remember that the Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injury. However, it is possible that a deployed Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag may cause other injuries such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions. Remember too, Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents. Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

### The Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag will not inflate:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers, unless the deployment threshold for deployment stored in the control unit is met.

In some types of accidents, the front, Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> and side airbags may be triggered together.

## **WARNING**

An inflating Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag can cause serious or even fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- A deploying airbag inflates within a fraction of a second with a lot of force and at very high speed.
- Always make sure that the Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag can inflate without interference.
- Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbags can help provide protection.
- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area where the Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag inflates.
- Always keep the area where the Side Curtain Protection<sup>®</sup> airbag inflates clear. Never carry any objects or pets in the area between them and where the airbags inflate and never let children or other passengers ride in this area.

- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Never use the built-in coat hooks for anything but lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Only use factory-installed sunshades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Volkswagen sunshades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates.

## WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once.

- If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always have work involving the curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a Side Curtain Protection® airbag.
- Always make sure that the airbag deployment zones are clear at all times. Never let anything or object, a pet, or a person, including an infant or small child, be in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

## Child safety and child restraints

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Child restraints – Overview](#)

⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#)

⇒ [Important safety instructions for using child restraints](#)

⇒ [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#)

⇒ [Infant seats](#)

⇒ [Convertible child restraints](#)

⇒ [Booster seats and safety belts](#)

⇒ [Installing child restraints with a safety belt](#)

⇒ [Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages](#)

⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#)

⇒ [Sources of information about child restraints and their use](#)

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a collision or other accident also apply to children ⇒ [Safety belts](#). But unlike adults and teenagers their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in accidents than are adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they must use restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20–35 mph (30–56 km/h), the forces acting on a 13 pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the effective weight of the child would suddenly increase to more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings in the section of this Manual that begin on ⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#). Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information, please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at: <http://www.safercar.gov> (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: <http://www.tc.gc.ca> (for Canada)

Consult the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size → *Sources of information about child restraints and their use*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this Manual.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this Manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

### DANGER!

Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing child restraint on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

### WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child restraint or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never install a forward-facing child restraint in the third row if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.

- Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12 Volt socket ⇒ [Power outlets](#).
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See ⇒ [Safety belts](#), ⇒ [Airbag system](#), and ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).



Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

## Child restraints – Overview

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

All children and especially infants must be properly restrained in a child restraint appropriate for their size and age whenever riding in a vehicle. Their safety also requires that the child restraint be properly installed. There are many car seat choices on the market. You can use the information below to help you choose a car seat that best meets your child's needs.

Type of child restraint	Applies to
	<p><b>Birth to 12 months:</b> Your child under age 1 should always ride in a rear-facing car seat. There are different types of rear-facing car seats:</p>
Rear-facing child restraint	<p>– Infant-only seats can only be used rear-facing.</p> <p>– Convertible and all-in-one car seats typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.</p>
Rear-facing child restraint before moving to a forward-facing child restraint	<p><b>1–3 years:</b> Keep your child rear-facing as long as possible. It's the best way to keep him or her safe. Your child should remain in a rear-facing car seat until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by the car seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the rear-facing car seat, your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing car seat with a harness and tether.</p>
Forward-facing child restraint	<p><b>4–7 years:</b> Keep your child in a forward-facing car seat with a harness and tether until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by the car seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the forward-facing car seat with a harness, it's time to travel in a booster seat, but still in the back seat.</p>
Booster seat	<p><b>7–12 years:</b> Keep your child in a booster seat until he or she is big enough to fit in a seat belt properly. For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snugly across the shoulder and chest and not cross the neck or face. Remember: your child should still ride in the back seat because it's safer there.</p>

Child restraints are designed to be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt portion of the 3 point lap and shoulder belt installed for the passenger seats. The outboard seating positions in the second row also have special fixtures for child restraints that can be used with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages. Many child restraints also require the use of a top tether strap. Depending on your state or country, top tether straps may also be required by law. The top tether strap reduces the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, to help reduce the risk of head injury if the child hits the vehicle interior.

Do not install a forward-facing child restraint in the third row if top tether is required by the child restraint manufacturer for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.

**Your vehicle has the following installation options in the second and third row of seats:**

Child restraint type	Second row of seats	Third row of seats (2 seating positions)
LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages	Anchorage available for the 2 outboard seating positions.	–
Top tether anchorage	✓	–
Safety belts with the switchable locking feature	✓	✓

The LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachment points are on the lower part of the second row seat backrest for the 2 outboard seating positions. The markings below the attachment points help you to locate the lower anchorages ⇒ [Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages](#) ⇒ Fig. 46.

The top tether anchorages are behind each of the second row seating positions ⇒ Fig. 47.

**More information:**

- Important safety instructions for using child restraints ⇒ [Important safety instructions for using child restraints](#)
- Using a child restraint on the rear seat ⇒ [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#)
- Infant seats ⇒ [Infant seats](#)
- Convertible child restraints ⇒ [Convertible child restraints](#)
- Booster seats and safety belts ⇒ [Booster seats and safety belts](#)
- Installing child restraints with a safety belt ⇒ [Installing child restraints with a safety belt](#)

## Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System that complies with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and with Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the low risk requirements for 3 to 6 year-old children (as defined in the standard) on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. Low risk deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur in these collisions, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the suppression requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag automatically for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system measures the capacitance of the child and the child restraint and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1 year-old child. When child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the

capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

### Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

No matter what child restraint you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (FMVSS 213) or, if you live in Canada, Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (CMVSS 213). Also make sure that the child restraint you are using has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system inside the front passenger seat, that the passenger front airbag is switched off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different footprints, the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for Advanced Airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific types, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

#### Subpart A. Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

#### Subpart B. Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century Smart Fit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013 PAW and base 22-999 WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

#### Subpart C. Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007

Model	Manufactured on or after
Graco Toddler SafeSeat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

## ⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the second row seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Important safety instructions for using child restraints



**Fig. 40 Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.**

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Proper use of child restraints greatly reduces the risk of injury in a collision or other kind of accident!

All children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

Always use the right child restraint for each child and always use it properly.

Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child restraint and how to restrain the child in the child restraint.

When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving ⇒ *Installing child restraints with a safety belt* .

Push the child restraint down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

### Important additional information about installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat:

If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings in the section of this Manual that begins on ⇒ *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System* .

### There are also additional adjustments that must be made in order to be able to properly install a child restraint on the front passenger seat:

Set the safety belt upper anchorage for the front passenger seat so that the available safety belt is long enough to properly install the child restraint. Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's installation instructions ⇒  .

Move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the seat's up and down adjustment range and to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint and make sure the backrest is in the upright position ⇒  .

Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.

When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving ⇒ *Using a child restraint on the rear seat* . Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint.

Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

## ⚠ DANGER!

Never install rearward-facing child restraints or infant carriers on the front passenger seat.

- A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints and infant carriers on the rear seat.

#### WARNING

Not using a child restraint, using the wrong child restraint, or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.
- Commercially available child restraints are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard FMVSS 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Volkswagen does not recommend using child restraints that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  - Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child restraints and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- For safety reasons, children under 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) may not wear standard safety belts. Children must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
- Never let more than one child occupy a child restraint.
- Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by another passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.

#### WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child.

- Always install child restraints on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child restraint or carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never install a forward-facing child restraint in the third row if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft

adjustment range.

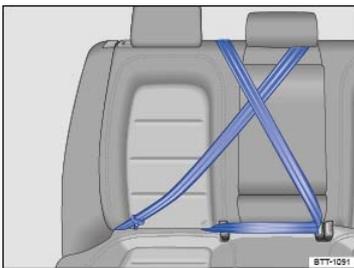
- Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system and can cause injury in a crash.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12 Volt socket ⇒ [Power outlets](#).
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See ⇒ [Safety belts](#), ⇒ [Airbag system](#), and ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).

## ⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF](#)  *light*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Using a child restraint on the rear seat



**Fig. 41** Keep unused safety belts away from children in child restraints.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Important special steps when installing a child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the vehicle safety belt.

You must take special precautions to prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it ⇒ [Fig. 41](#). Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child's reach.

### How to tell if the child restraint is properly installed

- The child restraint is flush with both the seat cushion and the seat backrest.
- The child restraint is centered in the seating position.
- The child restraint does not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm) where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint.

### Securing a safety belt for an outboard seating position

When routing a safety belt for an outboard seating position, do not activate the switchable locking feature, otherwise it will be very difficult to wind the safety belt back into its normal position. You should not hear a clicking sound when the safety belt retracts.

- Route the safety belt around the head restraint for the center seating position.
- Make sure the safety belt is out of the child's reach, so that the child cannot grab and play with it.
- Make sure that the safety belt does not block the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages. This could prevent you from correctly installing a child restraint with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

### Securing the center seat safety belt and third row safety belts

When routing a second row center seat safety belt or a third row safety belt, you must activate the switchable locking feature. When the safety belt retracts, a clicking sound indicates that the switchable locking feature is active.

- Buckle the safety belt ⇒ *Fig. 41*.
- Pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt all the way out of the retractor to activate the switchable locking feature. You should hear a clicking noise as the belt winds back into the retractor.
- Let the safety belt fully retract and then pull on it to make sure the switchable locking feature is active and the safety belt is properly fastened and tight so that the child cannot grab and play with the safety belt.
- Make sure that the safety belt does not block the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages. This could prevent you from correctly installing a child restraint with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

When a child safety seat is secured on the second or third row, adjust the position in front of the child restraint to provide the child with sufficient space. For example, adjust the front passenger seat to the size of the child safety seat and the child directly behind it. Consider the proper seating position of the passenger ⇒ ▲.

When child restraints are not needed, be sure to remove the safety belt(s) from around the head restraint(s), unbuckle the center safety belt, and return all safety belts to their normal stored positions so that they will be available for regular use.

### ⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

### ⓘ NOTE

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed.
- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Infant seats



**Fig. 42** Rearward-facing infant seat properly installed on the rear seat.

📖 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends that all infants should ride in rear-facing car safety seats (in which the child faces the back of the vehicle) starting with their first ride home from the hospital. All infants and toddlers (generally up to age 3) should ride in a rear-facing car safety seat as long as possible – until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their child restraint’s manufacturer. These infant seats support the baby’s back, neck and head in a collision. Rear-facing child restraints can be used safely only on the rear seats of the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 42*. The best place for a rear-facing safety seat is in the second row in one of the 2 outboard seating positions, where the safety seat can be installed with the LATCH/UCRA system.

Before installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the warnings ⇒ *Child restraints and the Advance Airbag System* and ⇒ *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat*.

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving ⇒ *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*. Always follow the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions when installing a child restraint.
- Attach the tether strap to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed ⇒ *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages on a rear seating position. Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child’s reach. Securing the safety belts will help prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it ⇒ *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*, ⇒ *Fig. 41*.

## **⚠ DANGER!**

Not using a child restraint, using the wrong child restraint or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Never install rearward-facing child restraints or infant carriers on the front passenger seat, even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints and infant carriers on the second row seats.
- Never install a rearward-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. These restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child restraint at a seating position on the rear rows and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See [⇒ Safety belts](#), [⇒ Airbag system](#), and [⇒ Child safety and child restraints](#).

## **⚠ WARNING**

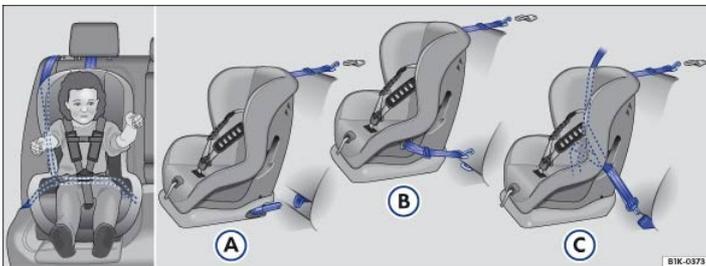
A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

## **! NOTE**

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed.
- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint with a safety belt, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Convertible child restraints



**Fig. 43** Some child restraints have lower anchors and a top tether. Figures **A** and **B** show how to correctly install a LATCH/UCRA seat. Figure **C** shows the set up of a seat using the vehicle's safety belt system.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [⚠ Introduction to the subject](#)

Children between 1 and about 7 years old must always be properly restrained in a child restraint certified for their size and weight ⇒ [Fig. 43](#).

Once your child outgrows the rear-facing car seat (generally up to age 3), your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing car seat with a harness. Keep your child in a forward-facing car seat with a harness until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by your car seat's manufacturer.

Before installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the warnings ⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#) and ⇒ [The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat](#).

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving ⇒ [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#).
- Push the child restraint down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
- Fasten the harness webbing that is part of the child restraint system securely and pull it tight so that you can only slip one finger underneath the shoulder belt portion at the child's chest.
- Attach the tether strap to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#).

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward facing child restraint. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages on the rear seating positions. Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child's reach. Securing the safety belts will help prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it → [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#), → [Fig. 41](#).

### DANGER!

Not using a child restraint, using the wrong child restraint or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child restraint or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child restraint and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → [Safety belts](#), → [Airbag system](#), and → [Child safety and child restraints](#).

### WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child restraint or carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
  - Never install a forward-facing child restraint in the third row if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, or electronic games device) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12 Volt socket → [Power outlets](#).

- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

### WARNING

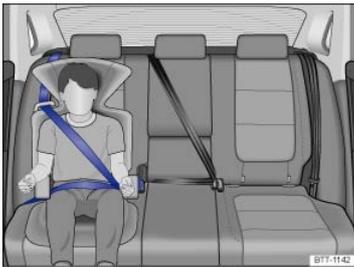
A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

### NOTE

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed.
- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint with a safety belt, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Booster seats and safety belts



**Fig. 44** Child properly restrained in a booster seat in the second row.



**Fig. 45** Child properly restrained in a booster seat in the third row.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  **Introduction to the subject**

Children between about 8 to 12 years old are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight ⇒ Fig. 44. Experts say that the skeletal structure particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall. Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the strong parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a collision.

- Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder. If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Always make sure that the shoulder portion is snug across the shoulder and chest and never rests against or across the child's neck or face.
- Always make sure that the child can wear the lap belt portion across the upper thighs and never over the stomach or abdomen.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's 3 point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's 3 point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the

safety belt be fastened snugly across the upper thighs. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats and keep them in a booster seat until they are big enough to fit in a safety belt properly. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Keep your child in a booster seat until he or she is at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall AND your child is:

- tall enough to sit without slouching; and
- able to keep his or her back against the vehicle seat; and
- able to keep his or her knees naturally bent over the edge of the vehicle seat; and
- able to keep his or her feet flat on the floor; and
- able to sit in that position during the entire trip.

The way the safety belt passes over the child's body is important for their safety and protection in a crash. Always make sure your child can wear the safety belt properly:

- The lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach.
- The shoulder belt must lie snugly across the shoulder and chest, and never cross the neck or face.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.

Always check belt fit on the child in every vehicle. A booster seat may be needed in some vehicles and not in others. If the seat belt does not fit properly, the child must continue to use a booster seat. Regardless of whether the child is using a booster or is able to properly wear the standard safety belt properly without a booster seat, keep your child in the back seat. Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

Even Advanced Airbags can injure children when they inflate. A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injuries.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially children, who must be in the front seat under exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

You must take special precautions when installing a booster seat with the vehicle safety belt on the rear seats. Always route and secure the unused center safety belt to help prevent a child from playing with the unused safety belt and becoming entangled in it → *Using a child restraint on the rear seat* , → Fig. 41.

**⚠ WARNING**

The third row seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m).

- Persons taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the trunk lid is closed or in an accident.
- Always make sure that the third row seat passengers cannot be struck when the trunk lid is closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the 3 point belt over the middle of the child's shoulder.
- Never let the shoulder portion of the safety belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.
- Always make sure the lap belt portion of the 3 point belt is worn snugly across the upper thighs. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a collision or other emergency situation.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example, the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during a collision can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.

- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described → [PASSENGER AIR BAG \*\*OFF\*\* !\[\]\(8f55aeeddfc414d9297e675e6ecfd358\_img.jpg\) light](#).
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the seating positions on the rear rows if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → [Safety belts](#), → [Airbag system](#), and → [Child safety and child restraints](#).

## WARNING

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seats may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

## Installing child restraints with a safety belt

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** →  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger seat must be locked with the switchable locking feature to properly secure child restraints.

Child restraints are designed to be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt portion of the 3 point lap and shoulder belt installed for the passenger seats. The 2 outboard seating positions in the second row also have special fixtures for child restraints that can be used with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

Regardless of the kind of child restraint that you use, always make sure that the child restraint is properly secured in the vehicle; otherwise the child could be seriously injured in a crash. Always follow legal requirements regarding the installation of child restraints.

Whenever a child restraint (except a booster seat) is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it cannot tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner.

**Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on a rear seat** → .

### Installing the child restraint on a rear seat

Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle → .

- Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Make sure that the red release button faces away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.
- Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.
- Activate the belt's switchable locking feature → [Activating the switchable locking feature](#).
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.
- Check the child restraint for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child restraint should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

### Special instructions for installing child restraints if the child restraint must be installed on the front seat

Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle → .

**Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on a rear seat** → . If in **exceptional circumstances** you must install the child restraint on the front seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the WARNINGS below.

- Make sure the front seat backrest is in the upright position.
- Move the front passenger seat to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible.
- Set the front passenger's safety belt height adjuster so that available safety belt length is sufficient to properly install the child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Make sure that the red release button faces away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.

- Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.
- Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.
- Activate the belt's switchable locking feature ⇒ *Activating the switchable locking feature* .
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.
- Check the child restraint for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child restraint should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light signals the correct front passenger front airbag status. Please be sure to read the additional important information and heed the WARNINGS about the Advanced Airbag System and the function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light in this Manual.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

### Activating the switchable locking feature

- Slowly pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt **all the way** out of the retractor.
- While keeping your weight on the child restraint, guide the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and is tightened against the child restraint.
- You should hear a clicking noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel of the safety belt retractor. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The switchable locking feature is now active.
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.
- Check the child restraint for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child restraint should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light signals the correct front passenger front airbag status. Please be sure to read the additional important information and heed the WARNINGS about the Advanced Airbag System and the function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light in this Manual.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

### Deactivating the switchable locking feature

The switchable locking feature for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- Guide the safety belt back by hand so that it rolls easily onto the retractor and the trim around the retractor will not be damaged.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the switchable locking feature for child restraints.

If the switchable locking feature should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the switchable locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

### WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child restraint, except a booster seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child restraint in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat backrest with the child restraint attached to it could fly forward in a collision or other emergency situation.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints* . Special precautions apply when installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat ⇒ *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat* , and ⇒ *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System* , and ⇒ *Important safety instructions for using child restraints* .

### WARNING

Improperly installed child restraints increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the switchable locking feature for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.

## NOTE

When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages



Fig. 46 On the second row seat backrests: Markings indicating the location of the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

LATCH is used in the United States and stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, Universal Child Restraint Anchorages (UCRA) is used to describe the combination of top tether straps and lower anchorages.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999 must have LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

The 2 outboard seating positions in the second row have LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachment points on the lower part of the backrests. The markings below the attachment points help you to locate the lower anchorages ⇒ Fig. 46. The third row seating positions and the center seating position in the second row do **not** have LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachment points.

LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages secure the child restraint system in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

Remember that the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with these lower universal anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachments can still be installed with vehicle safety belts according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. You must never mount 2 child restraint systems to one LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage point at the same time. For instance, you must not install a child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage points on one of the second row outboard seating positions and then use the inboard anchorage to also install a child restraint in the center of the second row that itself is not equipped with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage points.

There are 2 ways to attach an appropriate child restraint to the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages:

### Rigid connectors on bars at the back of the child restraint:

Depending on your vehicle's seats, you may want to use guidance fixtures when installing a child restraint that has rigid mountings. Installation with guidance fixtures is easier and protects the upholstery. Guidance fixtures are included with the child restraint in some cases. If not, they can be purchased from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The guidance fixtures must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the anchorage points between the seat cushion and the seat backrest.

- Make sure the seat backrest of the second row seat is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Release or deploy the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law) to secure the seat ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#).
- Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- Attach the connectors onto the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.
- Make sure you hear the child restraint click securely into place.
- Tighten the top tether strap (if there is one) to secure the seat ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#).
- Pull on both sides of the child restraint once you've installed it to make certain it is secure and properly attached.

### Releasing

- Release the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law).
- Release the lower latch from the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

### Hooks attached to adjustable straps (hook-on connectors)

- Make sure the seat backrest of the second row seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Attach the hook-on connectors with the spring catch release onto the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage so that the connectors lock into place.

- Pull on the connector attachments to make sure that it is properly attached to the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage.
- Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Release or deploy the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law) to secure the seat ⇒ *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap.*
- Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- Guide the tether strap between the rear seat back and the luggage compartment cover, if equipped.
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage and pull the top tether strap tight.
- After you have installed the child restraint, pull on both of the adjustable straps on the child restraint and pull also on the tether strap to make certain the seat is secure and properly attached.

### Releasing

- Loosen the tension on the hook-on connector straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Release the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer or by law).
- Depress the spring catch on the hook.
- Hold the spring catch in the depressed position.
- Move the hook in the direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the connector from the lower anchorage.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages on the rear seats. Always route the unused center seat safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the LATCH/UCRA child restraint is being installed around the rear head restraint behind the child restraint to help prevent a child from playing with the unused belt and becoming entangled in it.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH/UCRA system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraints and proper use of tether straps as well as the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never mount 2 child restraint systems on one LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage point.
- These anchors were developed only for child restraints using the LATCH/UCRA system.
- Never attach other child restraints, belts, luggage or other things to the LATCH/UCRA anchorages.
- Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click, the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle or be ejected from the vehicle.

### ⓘ NOTE

- To help prevent permanent indentations from forming in the cushion, remove the guidance fixtures from the anchorage points when there is no child restraint secured in the vehicle anchorage points.
- To help prevent damage to the seat upholstery, always remove the guidance fixtures from the anchorage points before folding the backrest on the second row seats forward.

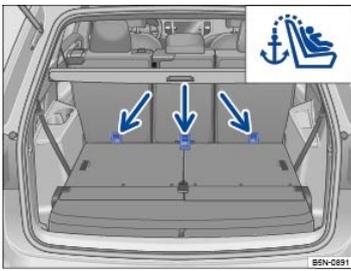


Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints. Only pull the safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.

### Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap



**Fig. 47 Example of a mounted upper tether strap: The top tether strap reduces the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, to help reduce the risk of head injury if the child hits the vehicle interior.**



**Fig. 48 Anchorages for the top tether strap on the back of the second row seats.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

### Installing the tether strap

- Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions ⇒ .
- Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary.
- Locate the tether anchor behind the second row seat backrest ⇒ *Fig. 48*. The third row seating positions do **not** have top tether anchors.
- Second row outer seating positions: Guide the upper tether strap under the second row head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary). *For child restraints with V-tether straps:* Always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- Second row center seating position: Guide the upper tether strap under the center rear head restraint only when it is pushed all the way up. If the tether strap hook is too big to pass under the center head restraint, push the head restraint all the way down and guide the strap over the center head restraint.
- Guide the tether strap between the second row seat backrest and the luggage compartment cover, if equipped.
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage ⇒ *Fig. 48*.
- Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.
- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Move the head restraint back into the original position, if necessary ⇒ *Seats and head restraints*.

### Releasing the tether strap

- Loosen the tension on the tether strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

### WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint when installing it in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law. For example, the use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
- Never install a forward-facing child restraint in the third row if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap for proper installation, or if required by law.
- Improper use of top tether straps and anchors can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never attach 2 child restraint systems to one top tether strap or top tether anchorage.
- Never attach a child restraint tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint top tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the top tether anchorages.

### NOTE

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

## Sources of information about child restraints and their use

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

The following are some sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

Safety authorities advise that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

### Transport Canada Information Centre

Tel.: 1-800-333-0371

Tel.: 1-613-998-8616 (Ottawa)

<http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>

### National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)

<http://www.nhtsa.gov>

<http://www.safercar.gov>

### National SAFE KIDS Campaign

Tel.: 1-202-662-0600

<http://www.safekids.org>

### SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.

Tel.: 1-800-745-SAFE or 1-800-745-7233 (English)

Tel.: 1-800-747-SANO or 1-800-747-7266 (Spanish)

<http://www.carseat.org>

### Volkswagen Customer CARE

Tel.: 1-800-822-8987

## In an emergency

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Protecting yourself and the vehicle*

## WARNING

A vehicle breakdown in traffic is dangerous and creates a great risk for you, your passengers, and others.

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to park and, if necessary, lock all doors in an emergency. Turn on the emergency flashers and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves alone in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

## Protecting yourself and the vehicle

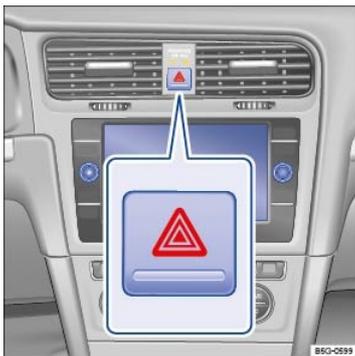


Fig. 49 In the center of the instrument panel: Button for the emergency flashers.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Obey all legal requirements regarding protecting a broken-down vehicle. For example, turning on the emergency flashers and wearing a safety vest are mandatory in many countries.

## Checklist

For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed ⇒  :

- ✓ Park the vehicle at a safe distance from traffic and on a suitable surface .
- ✓ Switch on emergency flashers by pressing the button .
- ✓ Switch off the engine. Shift the transmission to Park (P) Automatic transmission selector lever.
- ✓ Set the electronic parking brake Electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving.

- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle. Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Have all passengers exit and go to a safe location away from moving traffic, such as behind a guard rail.
- ✓ Take all vehicle keys with you when leaving your vehicle.
- ✓ Set up a warning triangle or other warning device in order to alert other motorists and cyclists.
- ✓ Let the engine cool down and get expert assistance if necessary.

If the emergency flashers are on, use the turn signal lever to indicate a direction or lane change, for example when the vehicle is being towed. This temporarily interrupts the emergency flashers.

#### Switch on the emergency flashers when:

- Traffic suddenly slows down or stops in front of you to warn those approaching from behind.
- In any emergency situation.
- If the vehicle breaks down.
- When being towed.

Always obey traffic laws that govern the use of emergency flashers where you are driving.

If the emergency flashers are not working, a different method – as permitted by law – must be used to alert other motorists and cyclists to the breakdown.

#### WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

#### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park where parts of the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as dry grass, brush, leaves, spilled fuel, etc.

#### NOTE

To help prevent damage to the vehicle if you should have to push it a short distance by hand, never push against spoilers, lights, body panels, windows, or similar parts. Concentrating force on these parts of the vehicle can cause expensive damage that may not always be obvious right away.



The vehicle battery will be drained if the emergency flashers are on for a long time – even if the ignition is switched off.

## Opening and closing

### Vehicle key set

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Remote control vehicle key*

⇒ *Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery (vehicles without Remote Start)*

⇒ *Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery (vehicles with Remote Start)*

⇒ *Emergency key*

#### DANGER!

20 mm button cells and other lithium batteries will cause serious personal injury and even death within a short time if swallowed.

- Always keep remote control vehicle key fobs with batteries, spare batteries, as well as dead button cell and larger 20 mm batteries out of the reach of children.
- Get medical attention immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed.

#### WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. It can be used to start the engine and operate vehicle systems such as the power windows, leading to serious personal injury. Children or other unauthorized persons could also lock the doors and the trunk lid.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

## Remote control vehicle key

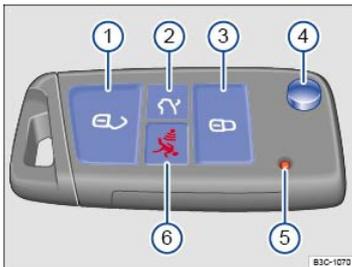


Fig. 50 Remote control vehicle key with panic button (vehicles without Remote Start).

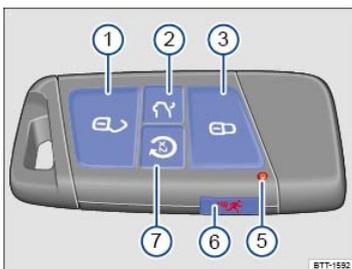


Fig. 51 Remote control vehicle key with panic button (vehicles with Remote Start).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 50 :

- ① Unlock the vehicle
- ② Unlock the trunk lid
- ③ Lock the vehicle
- ④ Key bit release (version 1 only)
- ⑤ Indicator light
- ⑥ Panic button
- ⑦ Remote Start button (version 2 only)

### Remote control vehicle key

The remote control vehicle key can unlock and lock the vehicle from a distance ⇒ [Power locking system](#).

The remote transmitter and battery are inside the remote control vehicle key. The receiver is inside the passenger compartment. The operating range of the remote control vehicle key for a fresh battery is several yards (meters) around the vehicle.

If the remote control vehicle key will not lock or unlock your vehicle, you probably need to replace the battery in the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery \(vehicles without Remote Start\)](#), or ⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery \(vehicles with Remote Start\)](#). If this is not the problem, the key should be resynchronized by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop.

### Folding the key bit in or out

Pressing button ⇒ Fig. 50④, releases the key bit and folds it out.

To fold the key bit in, press the button ④ and push the key bit in until it clicks.

For vehicles with remote start ⇒ Fig. 51, there is an emergency key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).

## Indicator light in the remote control vehicle key

If a button on the remote control vehicle key is pressed briefly, the indicator light  will flash once briefly. If you push and hold a button, it flashes repeatedly.

If the indicator light in the remote control vehicle key does not come on when the button is pressed, the battery inside the key must be replaced ⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery \(vehicles without Remote Start\)](#), or ⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery \(vehicles with Remote Start\)](#) .

A Declaration of Compliance with United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found in the Consumer information section of this Manual ⇒ [Declaration Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).

## Panic button

Press the panic button  only in emergencies! After pushing the panic button, the horn will sound and the turn signals will flash. Press the panic button again or press the  button on the remote control vehicle key to switch off the panic feature.

## Remote start button

Depending on equipment, pressing the  button ⇒ [Fig. 51](#)  two times after pressing the  button ⇒ [Fig. 51](#)  activates the remote start feature if certain requirements are met ⇒ [Remote start feature](#).

## Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key

If the  button is pressed often while outside the operating range, it is possible that the vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked anymore with the remote control vehicle key. Synchronize the vehicle key as follows:

- Depending on equipment, unfold the key bit on the remote control vehicle key, or remove the emergency key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).
- Remove the cap from the door handle on the driver door ⇒ [Manually unlocking and locking the driver door](#) .
- Press the  button on the remote control vehicle key. Stand immediately next to vehicle while doing so.
- Manually unlock the vehicle using the key bit. The synchronization is complete.
- Reinstall the cap.

## Replacement vehicle keys

The vehicle identification number is required to get a replacement key or an additional remote control vehicle key.

Each new vehicle key contains a microchip and must be coded with the data from the vehicle's electronic immobilizer. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or contains a chip that is not coded, even if the key bit was cut correctly.

You can obtain additional or duplicate remote control vehicle keys from authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths which are qualified to make remote control vehicle keys.

Each vehicle key must be programmed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or certain independent repair facilities in order for it to work with your vehicle.

To find the nearest qualified independent repair facility, locksmith, or Volkswagen dealer which can cut and code replacement vehicle keys, call the VW Customer Care Hotline at 1-800-822-8987 or visit <http://www.vw.com> and search for replacement keys.

Canadian customers can contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Canada Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987.

### NOTE

The remote control vehicle keys contain electrical components. Protect them from damage, moisture and rough handling.



Do not press the buttons on the remote control vehicle key unless you actually want to use the function in question. Since terrain and conditions vary, pressing a button on the remote control vehicle key when it is not necessary may unlock the vehicle or set off the panic alarm, even if you think you are out of range.



Remote control vehicle key functions can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle that use the same frequency range (such as radio equipment or mobile phones).



Things between the remote control vehicle key and vehicle, bad weather, as well as a weak battery can reduce the operating range.



If the remote control vehicle key buttons ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside](#) or the power locking buttons ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside](#) are pushed repeatedly in quick succession, the power locking system is switched off for a brief period to help keep it from being overloaded. During this period, the vehicle can be unlocked only once. After several seconds, the power locking system is switched back on and the vehicle can be locked again.

## Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery (vehicles without Remote Start)

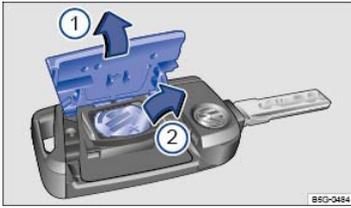


Fig. 52 Remote control vehicle key: Opening the battery compartment cover and removing the old battery.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 52 :

- ① Cover
- ② Battery

Volkswagen recommends having the battery in the remote control vehicle key changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ ①.

The battery is on the back of the remote control vehicle key under a cover ⇒ Fig. 52①.

When changing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity and use the same type of battery.

### Replacing the battery

- Unfold the key bit on the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Remote control vehicle key](#).
- Remove the cover on the back of the remote control vehicle key ⇒ Fig. 52① in the direction of the arrow using a suitable object such as a coin ⇒ ①. This action may require some force.
- Use a thin object to pry the battery out of the battery compartment ⇒ Fig. 52②.
- Position the new battery and press it into the battery compartment (opposite direction of the arrow) ⇒ ①.
- Position the cover as shown and press it down (opposite direction of the arrow) until you hear it click into place.

### NOTE

- Changing the battery improperly can damage the remote control vehicle key.
- Using the wrong battery can damage the remote control vehicle key. Replace a dead battery with a new one that has the same voltage, size, and specifications.
- Make sure the plus and minus poles of the battery are correctly positioned.

✿ Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally responsible manner and keep them out of the reach of children.

✿ Batteries of the type used in your remote control vehicle key may contain **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of these batteries. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery (vehicles with Remote Start)

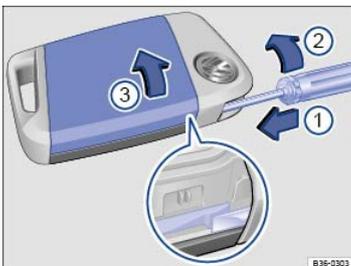


Fig. 53 Remote control vehicle key: Opening the battery compartment cover.

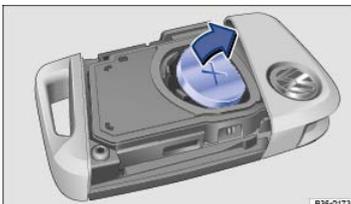


Fig. 54 Remote control vehicle key: Changing the battery.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 53](#) :

- ① Insert the flat blade of a screwdriver to unlock the cover.
- ② Turn the screwdriver in the direction of the arrow.
- ③ Open the cover on the back of the remote control vehicle key in the direction of the arrow.

Volkswagen recommends having the battery in the remote control vehicle key changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ [①](#).

The battery is on the back of the remote control vehicle key under a cover ⇒ [Fig. 53③](#).

When changing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity and use the same type of battery.

### Replacing the battery

- Remove the emergency key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).
- Insert a small, flat-blade screwdriver into the emergency key slot ⇒ [Fig. 53①](#).
- Turn the screwdriver in the direction of the arrow until the cover opens ⇒ [Fig. 53②](#).
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 53③](#).
- Use a thin object to pry the battery out of the battery compartment in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 54](#).
- Position the new battery and press it into the battery compartment (opposite direction of the arrow) ⇒ [Fig. 54](#) ⇒ [①](#).
- Press the cover into place until you hear it click.
- Replace the emergency key.

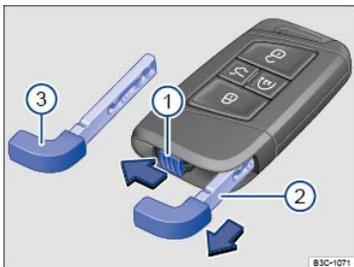
### ! NOTE

- Changing the battery improperly can damage the remote control vehicle key.
- Using the wrong battery can damage the remote control vehicle key. Replace a dead battery with a new one that has the same voltage, size, and specifications.
- Make sure the plus and minus poles of the battery are correctly positioned.

 Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally responsible manner and keep them out of the reach of children.

 Batteries of the type used in your remote control vehicle key may contain **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of these batteries. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

### Emergency key



**Fig. 55** Releasing the emergency key and removing it from the remote control vehicle key.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 55](#) :

- ① Emergency key release.
- ② Removing the emergency key.
- ③ Emergency key bit.

If your vehicle is equipped with the remote start feature, there is an emergency key ⇒ [Fig. 55③](#) inside the remote control vehicle key fob.

You can do the following with the emergency key:

- Manually lock or unlock the vehicle ⇒ [Manually unlocking and locking the driver door](#) , ⇒ [Manually locking the passenger doors](#) .

- Activate the child safety lock ⇒ *Child safety lock*.

To remove the emergency key: Move the sliding lock ⇒ *Fig. 55* ① in the direction of the arrow. At the same time, push the emergency key out of the slot in the remote control vehicle key in the direction of the arrow ②.

## Power locking system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator light in the driver door*

⇒ *Description of the power locking system*

⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside*

⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside*

⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access*

⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*

⇒ *Locking the vehicle after airbag inflation*

The power locking system works properly only when all doors and the trunk lid are completely closed. When the driver door is open, the vehicle *cannot* be locked with the remote control vehicle key.

For vehicles equipped with Keyless Access with push-button start, the vehicle can be locked *only* if the ignition is switched off and the driver door is closed.

### WARNING

Improper use of power locks can result in serious personal injury.

- The power locking button locks all doors. Locking the doors from the inside can help prevent unintended door opening during a collision and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside with the power lock button. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never allow passengers to remain in a locked vehicle. In an emergency any person still inside the vehicle might not be able to get out.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

### Indicator light in the driver door

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The indicator light for the power locking system is in the driver door ⇒ *Driver door overview*.

*If the vehicle is locked:* The red LED light flashes for about 2 seconds in short intervals, then slower.

*If there is a locking system malfunction:* Red LED light flashes for about 2 seconds in short intervals, then lights up continuously for about 30 seconds. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

### Description of the power locking system

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The power locking system lets you unlock and lock all doors and the trunk lid.

The doors can be locked manually if the remote control vehicle key or the power locking system is not working ⇒ [Doors](#).

When the vehicle is locked from the outside, the fuel filler flap is also locked.

The automatic locking and unlocking feature can be deactivated by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Automatic locking (Auto lock)

The vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of about 10 mph (15 km/h). When the vehicle is locked, the indicator light  comes on in the power lockir button ⇒ [Fig. 58](#).

### Automatic unlocking (Auto unlock)

Auto unlock works only if the vehicle has been automatically locked with the Auto lock feature. When one of the following conditions is met, the doors will unlock automatically.

- The selector lever is in Park (P).
- **OR:** The ignition is switched off.
- **OR:** You open a door from inside the vehicle.
- **OR:** The airbags inflate after a collision ⇒ [Locking the vehicle after airbag inflation](#).

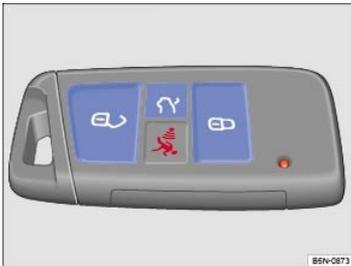
The indicator light  goes out in the power locking button when the doors unlock ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside](#).

Automatic unlocking after airbag inflation allows emergency responders to access the vehicle.



If the remote control vehicle key buttons ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#) or the power locking buttons ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside](#) are pushed repeatedly in quick succession, the power locking system is switched off for a brief period to help keep it from being overloaded. During this period, the vehicle can be unlocked only once. After several seconds, the power locking system is switched back on and the vehicle can be locked again.

## Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside



**Fig. 56 Remote control vehicle key with panic button: (vehicles without Remote Start).**



**Fig. 57 Remote control vehicle key with panic button: (vehicles with Remote Start).**

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- *To unlock:* Press the  button on the remote control vehicle key.
- *To lock:* Press the  button on the remote control vehicle key.
- *For vehicles with Keyless Access:* Touch the sensors ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access](#). One or all doors will be unlocked, depending on the power locking system settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).
- *To open the trunk lid:* Press the  button on the remote control vehicle key. On vehicles with five seats and Keyless Access, you can also press the  button for about a second to close the trunk lid ⇒ [Trunk lid](#).

**Note:** Depending on the settings for the power locking system that have been set in the Infotainment system, it may be necessary to press the  button on the remote control vehicle key twice to unlock all doors and the trunk lid ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

The vehicle key unlocks or locks the vehicle only when the battery in the remote control vehicle key has enough power, and the remote control vehicle key is within

few yards/meters of the vehicle.

- All turn signals flash *once* and the horn beeps once to confirm that the vehicle has been locked. The horn beep (acoustic confirmation) can be disabled in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Opening and closing function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.
- All turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If the turn signals *do not* flash to confirm locking, one or more doors or the trunk lid may be open.

If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked with the remote control vehicle key.

If the vehicle was unlocked with the remote control vehicle key and the door or the trunk lid has not been opened within several seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again. This feature helps prevent you from leaving the vehicle unlocked unintentionally.



Some vehicles are equipped with electrically folding outside mirrors. When the vehicle is unlocked from the outside, the outside mirrors may automatically fold out, depending on settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

## Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside



**Fig. 58** In the driver and front passenger doors: Power locking button.



**Fig. 59** In the driver door: Switch for the trunk lid.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 58 and ⇒ Fig. 59 :**

Unlock the vehicle.

Lock the vehicle.

Open the trunk lid ⇒ Fig. 59. On vehicles with five seats, close the trunk lid.

To open the trunk lid, pull the  switch in the driver door up. The trunk lid opens automatically. The doors remain locked. The selector lever must be in Park **(P)** ⇒ *Automatic transmission selector lever*.

- Pull the switch up and hold until the trunk lid is fully closed. The ignition must be on and the selector lever must be in Park **(P)**.

The power locking button works whether the ignition is switched on or off but only when *all* doors are closed.

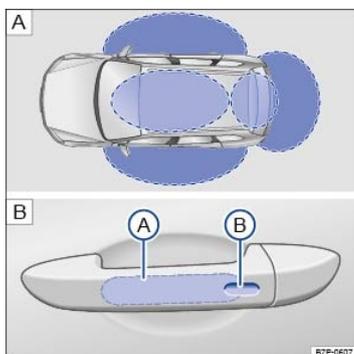
If the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key, the power locking button is deactivated.

If the vehicle is locked with the power locking button:

- The yellow indicator light  in the power locking button comes on to indicate that all doors are locked ⇒ Fig. 58.
- If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm, the system is **not** turned on.
- Opening doors or the trunk lid from the *outside* is not possible, at a traffic light, for example.
- Doors can be unlocked and opened separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door. The indicator light  goes out. The unopened doors and trunk lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.
- An open driver door will not be locked. This helps keep the driver from being locked out of the vehicle.

The vehicle is unlocked if you push the  button while the vehicle is standing still. It also unlocks when you switch off the ignition or open a door from inside the vehicle (Auto unlock). The doors will also unlock when the selector lever is in Park **(P)**. Auto unlock works only if the vehicle has been automatically locked with the Auto lock feature.

## Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access



**Fig. 60 Keyless Access system: System ranges. Unlocking and locking sensors on the outside door handle.**

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 60](#) :

- A** Unlocking sensor
- B** Locking sensor

Your vehicle may be equipped with Keyless Access with push-button start, a keyless starting and locking system that unlocks and locks the vehicle without active use of a remote control vehicle key. All you have to do is touch a sensor surface on one of the front outside door handles ⇒ [Fig. 60](#) or press the button below the Volkswagen emblem on the trunk lid ⇒ [Trunk lid](#) when a valid remote control vehicle key is within range ⇒ [!](#).

### General information

When a valid vehicle key comes within range ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#), the Keyless Access system recognizes a valid vehicle entry request as soon as a door handle sensor is touched on the driver or front passenger door or the button below the Volkswagen emblem on the trunk lid is pressed. The following functions are then enabled without active use of the remote control vehicle key:

- *Keyless Entry*: Unlock the vehicle with the sensor surfaces on the inside of the door handles on the driver or front passenger door ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#) or by pressing the button below the Volkswagen emblem on the trunk lid.
- *Keyless Go*: Start the engine and drive. Press the brake pedal and the starter button to start the engine. A valid remote control vehicle key must be inside the vehicle ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#).
- *Easy Open*: Open the trunk lid by moving your foot within the sensor range under the rear bumper ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#) ⇒ [Opening the trunk lid manually](#).
- *Easy Close*: With the Easy Close button in the trunk lid, set the trunk lid to close automatically once the vehicle key is outside of the sensor range ⇒ [Power operation of the trunk lid](#).
- *Keyless Exit*: Lock the vehicle with the sensor on the outside of the door handles on the driver or front passenger door ⇒ [Fig. 60B](#).

All turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle has been unlocked and *once* to confirm that it has been locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and within the next several seconds no door or the trunk lid has been opened, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

To help prevent you from locking yourself out, the vehicle will not lock immediately in the following situation:

- When you press the lock button on the remote control vehicle key when a passenger door or the trunk lid is still open, and
- You leave the remote control vehicle key you just used inside the vehicle when you close all doors and the trunk lid.

The vehicle does not fully lock. All turn signals flash *four* times. Take the remote control vehicle key out of the vehicle and lock the vehicle again.

If the vehicle is unlocked, it will lock again after a short time if you do not open one of the doors or the trunk lid.

### Unlocking and opening doors (Keyless Entry)

- Grasp the door handle of the driver or front passenger door so that you touch the unlocking sensor surface ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#).
- Open the door.

### Closing and locking doors (Keyless Exit)

Always switch off the engine and ignition and take the vehicle key with you.

- Close the driver door.
- Touch the sensor surface in the door handle on the driver or front passenger door ⇒ [Fig. 60B](#) *one time*. The vehicle is locked. The door being locked must be closed.

### Unlocking and locking the trunk lid

If the vehicle is locked and a valid remote control vehicle key is within range ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#) of the trunk lid, it unlocks automatically when opened.

Open and close the trunk lid as you would a *standard* trunk lid ⇒ [Trunk lid](#).

The trunk lid locks automatically when it is closed **except** in the following situations:

- The vehicle is completely unlocked.
- The most recently used vehicle key is inside the vehicle. All turn signals flash *four times*.

### Locking with a second vehicle key

If the vehicle is locked from the outside with a second valid vehicle key, any key located inside the vehicle cannot start the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*. A key that was inside the vehicle when it was locked from the outside can be reactivated by pressing the  button on the deactivated key.

### Automatic deactivation of sensors

If the vehicle has not been unlocked or locked for a longer period of time, the sensors in the door handles are automatically switched off.

If a sensor on the door handle of a locked vehicle is touched too often, for instance by a bush or hedge that rubs against the vehicle, that sensor may be switched off for a short time.

The door handle sensors switch on again if one of the following events occurs:

- A short time has passed.
- **OR:** The vehicle is unlocked using the  button on the remote control vehicle key.
- **OR:** The trunk lid is opened.
- **OR:** The vehicle is mechanically unlocked with the vehicle key.

### Temporarily deactivating Keyless Access

To help prevent the vehicle from being unlocked and started by an unauthorized person, Keyless Access can be temporarily deactivated.

- Lock the vehicle with the  button on the remote control vehicle key.
- Within 5 seconds, touch the lock sensor surface on the door handle on the driver or front passenger door ⇒ *Fig. 60B*.
- Keyless Access is now temporarily deactivated.
- To check that Keyless Access is deactivated, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle. The door should not open.

The vehicle can only be unlocked with the remote control vehicle key. Keyless Access is automatically reactivated after the vehicle has been unlocked.

### Convenience features

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience closing feature.

To use the convenience closing feature to close all power windows and the power sunroof, hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle ⇒ *Fig. 60B* for a few seconds until the windows and the power sunroof close.

Remove your finger from the lock sensor surface to stop the function.

Pinch protection is active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof.

#### NOTE

The door handle sensor surfaces can be activated by a strong stream of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is within range of the vehicle.

- All windows may open if you turn the spray of water or steam away from and then back onto the door handle sensor surface in quick succession. If at least one power window is opened and the sensor is continuously activated, the convenience closing feature will automatically close the windows.



The door may not open if the outside and inside door handles are used at the same time.



If the vehicle battery or the battery in the remote control vehicle key is weak or dead, it might not be possible to unlock and lock the vehicle using Keyless Access. The vehicle can still be manually locked or unlocked with the key bit or the emergency key (depending on equipment) ⇒ *Manually unlocking and locking the driver door*.



To help make sure that the vehicle stays locked after you press the locking sensor on the door handle, the unlocking function on that door handle switches off for about 2 seconds after locking the vehicle.



A driver information message may appear in the instrument cluster display if there is a Keyless Access system malfunction. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.



A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display if there is no remote control vehicle key inside the vehicle or if the system does not

recognize the remote control vehicle key. The key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by something that interferes with the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the remote control vehicle key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as mobile phones can also interfere with the signal.



Dirt on the door handles that contains a lot of salt (especially in winter) can affect the way the door handle sensors work. Cleaning the door handles can help with this problem ⇒ [Exterior care and cleaning](#).



If the automatic transmission is not in Park (P) position, the electronic steering column lock will not lock and the vehicle will not lock via sensors in the front door handles or the remote control vehicle key.



Depending on the vehicle settings, the entire vehicle will unlock when you touch the unlocking sensor surface twice in a row, even if a single door was already unlocked.

## Anti-theft alarm system

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an anti-theft alarm system or pre-equipped for anti-theft alarm system installation. If the vehicle is pre-equipped for installation of the anti-theft alarm system, the alarm system can be retrofitted by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The anti-theft alarm system makes it more difficult for someone to break into or steal the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated when the vehicle is locked by pressing the lock button on the remote control vehicle key.

### When is the alarm triggered?

The anti-theft alarm system sounds and the turn signals flash for up to 5 minutes if the following occurs with respect to the locked vehicle:

- A door unlocked mechanically with the vehicle key bit or the emergency key is opened.
- Forcibly opening a door.
- Forcibly opening the engine hood.
- Forcibly opening the trunk lid.
- Switching on the ignition with an invalid key (a short alarm may sound).
- Disconnecting the 12 Volt vehicle battery.

### Deactivating the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the unlock button on the remote control vehicle key.
- **OR:** Switch on the ignition with a valid remote control vehicle key.
- For vehicles with Keyless Access: Grasp one of the front door handles when a valid vehicle key is in range.



After the alarm has stopped and the vehicle is opened again in the same or a different area that is protected by the alarm, the alarm is triggered again. For example, the alarm will sound again if the trunk lid is opened after one of the doors has been opened.



The anti-theft alarm system is **not** activated when the vehicle is locked with the power locking button on the inside of the driver or front passenger doors.



If the driver door is mechanically unlocked using the vehicle key bit or the emergency key, only the driver door is unlocked, not the entire vehicle. Switching on the ignition deactivates the anti-theft alarm system and activates the central locking button. To unlock the doors, use the central locking button or remote control vehicle key.



If the vehicle battery is dead or weak, the anti-theft alarm system will not work properly.

## Locking the vehicle after airbag inflation

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If the airbags are activated during a collision, the entire vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the severity of the damage, the vehicle can be locked after a collision when the airbags have deployed.

### Locking the vehicle from the inside or with the remote control vehicle key

- Switch the ignition off.

- Open and close a door once.
- Press the  button on the power locking switch or on the remote control vehicle key.

## Doors

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Display*

⇒ *Child safety lock*

⇒ *Manually unlocking and locking the driver door*

⇒ *Manually locking the passenger doors*

#### WARNING

A door that is not closed properly may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving and cause severe injuries.

- Stop immediately in a safe place and close the door.
- Make sure that the door is safely and completely latched when closed. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- Open or close doors only if no one is in the way.

#### WARNING

A door kept open with the door stop may close in strong winds or on inclines and cause injuries.

- Always hold doors by the door handle while opening and closing.

## Display

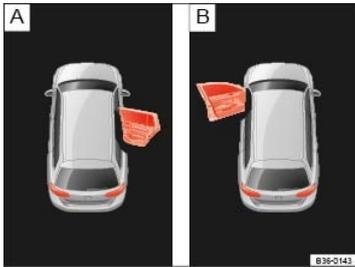


Fig. 61 In the instrument cluster display: A vehicle door is open or improperly closed.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If a door is not closed properly, the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster display indicating a door is open ⇒ Fig. 61.  **Stop!** Open and close the door again.

The icon may still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off as long as the key has not been removed. The instrument cluster display goes out a short time after the vehicle has been locked.

## Child safety lock

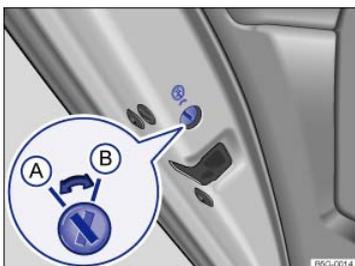
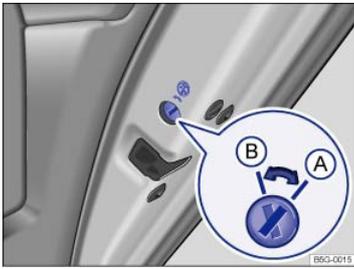


Fig. 62 In the rear driver side door: Child safety lock (A) deactivated, (B) activated.



**Fig. 63** In the rear passenger side door: Child safety lock **A** deactivated, **B** activated.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Slot position ⇒ [Fig. 62](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 63](#) :

- A** Child safety lock deactivated.
- B** Child safety lock activated.

The child safety lock keeps the rear doors from being opened from the inside, so that children cannot open them accidentally. When the child safety lock is activated, the rear doors can only be opened from the outside.

### Activating or deactivating the child safety lock

- Unlock the vehicle and open the respective rear door.
- Depending on equipment, unfold the key bit from the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#), or remove the emergency key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).
- Using the key bit, move the slot into the desired position.

### WARNING

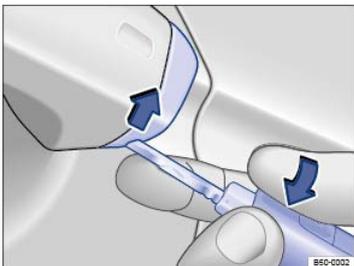
When the child safety lock is activated, that rear door cannot be opened from the inside.

- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves, in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

### Manually unlocking and locking the driver door



**Fig. 64** Driver door: Concealed lock cylinder.



**Fig. 65** Driver door handle: Removing the lock cylinder cover.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When locking the vehicle manually, all doors are locked. To unlock the vehicle manually, turn (counterclockwise) to the unlocking position. When the vehicle is unlocked manually, only the driver door is unlocked. Note the instructions for the anti-theft alarm system ⇒ [Anti-theft alarm system](#).

- Depending on equipment, unfold the key bit from the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#) or remove the emergency key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).

- Insert the key bit from below into the opening of the cover cap on the driver door ⇒ *Fig. 65* (arrow) and lift the cover cap off. Grasping the door handle and pulling slightly makes it easier to remove the cap.
- Insert the key bit into the lock cylinder of the driver door and unlock or lock the door. If the larger side of the vehicle key touches the door handle during locking or unlocking, either pull the door handle slightly or reinsert the vehicle key in the lock cylinder with the opposite side facing up.
- Reinsert the cover cap from top to bottom and press until it clicks into place. Grasping the door handle and pulling slightly makes it easier to reinstall the cap.

### Special considerations when unlocking

- If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, the system remains activated for the unlocked vehicle. But the alarm is not triggered at first ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.
- Open the driver door. The alarm will sound.
- Switch on the ignition. The electronic immobilizer recognizes a valid remote control vehicle key when the ignition is switched on and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

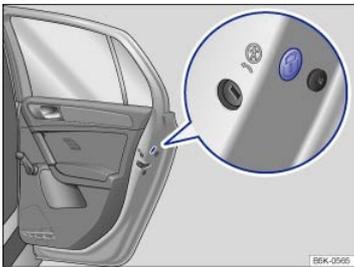


The driver door can be unlocked separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door.



The anti-theft alarm system, when installed, is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually with the key bit or the emergency key ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.

## Manually locking the passenger doors



**Fig. 66** On the front side of the rear passenger door: Manual lock, covered by a rubber seal.



**Fig. 67** On the front side of the rear passenger door: Locking the vehicle with the key bit in the vehicle key.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The passenger door and rear doors can each be locked manually. This will **not** activate the anti-theft alarm system, when installed.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber seal on the front side of the door. The seal is marked with a lock ⇒ *Fig. 66*.
- Depending on equipment, unfold the key bit from the remote control vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*, or remove the emergency key ⇒ *Emergency key*.
- Insert the key bit into the slot ⇒ *Fig. 67*. On the passenger side doors, turn the key clockwise. On the driver side rear door, turn the key counterclockwise.
- Reinsert the rubber seal and completely close the door.
- Make sure that the door is locked.
- Repeat the procedure for other doors if necessary.
- Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



The vehicle doors can still be unlocked and opened separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door.

## Trunk lid

**Introduction to the subject**

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Display*

⇒ *Opening the trunk lid manually*

⇒ *Closing the trunk lid manually*

⇒ *Power operation of the trunk lid*

⇒ *Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open)*

⇒ *Automatic trunk lid closing (Easy Close)*

⇒ *Opening the trunk lid from inside the luggage compartment*

## **⚠ WARNING**

Accidents and severe personal injuries can result if you unlock, open, or close the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- Only open or close the trunk lid if no one is in the way.
- Always make sure that the third row seat passengers cannot be struck when the trunk lid is closed.
- Never close the trunk lid by pushing on the rear window with your hand. The rear window could break and cause injuries.
- After closing the trunk lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked so that it cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving. The closed trunk lid must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving to help keep poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle.
- Never open the trunk lid when a luggage rack is installed and loaded. If, for example, there are bicycles on a carrier on the trunk lid, it is possible that the trunk lid will be difficult to open. An open trunk lid may fall on its own because of the additional weight. If necessary, prop open the trunk lid. Remove the weight from the luggage rack first.
- Close and lock the trunk lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. First, make sure that no one is left inside the vehicle.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially when the trunk lid is open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. They may lock the vehicle with the vehicle key or the power locking button and lock themselves in.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let anyone ride in the luggage compartment.

## **ⓘ NOTE**

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, for example, when the vehicle has a trailer or is in a garage.

## **ⓘ NOTE**

Never use the gas-pressure strut to hold or clamp a load in place. This can damage the trunk lid and make it impossible to close.

## **ⓘ NOTE**

Never use the rear windshield wiper or the rear spoiler to fix a load in place. This can damage the trunk lid and cause the windshield wiper or spoiler to be torn off.

## **Display**



**Fig. 68** In the instrument cluster display: Trunk lid open or improperly closed.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If the trunk lid is not closed properly, the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the trunk lid is open ⇒ [Fig. 68](#).  **Stop!** Open the trunk lid and then close it again.

The icon may still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off as long as the key has not been removed. The instrument cluster display goes out a short time after the vehicle has been locked.

### **WARNING**

If the trunk lid is not closed properly, it may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving and cause severe injuries.

- Stop immediately in a safe place and close the trunk lid.
- Always make sure the trunk lid is securely latched after you close it.

## Opening the trunk lid manually



**Fig. 69** On the remote control vehicle key: Button to open the trunk lid.



**Fig. 70** In the trunk lid: Button to open the trunk lid.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If necessary, remove anything secured to a luggage rack mounted onto the trunk lid before opening the trunk lid ⇒ .

### Unlocking and opening the trunk lid

- Press the  button on the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Fig. 69](#).
- Press the button in the trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 70](#) (arrow) and pull up slightly to open.
- **OR:** Pull the  switch in the driver door up ⇒ [Fig. 59](#). The trunk lid opens automatically. The switch in the driver door also works when the ignition is switched off. The selector lever must be in Park (P).

For vehicles with a power trunk lid, after pressing the button in the trunk lid and pulling up slightly or pulling the switch in the driver door, the trunk lid opens by itself ⇒ .

If you do not open the trunk lid a short time after unlocking it, it will automatically lock again.

### **WARNING**

Improper and unsupervised unlocking or opening of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries. Never open the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- If a bicycle or luggage rack is installed on the trunk lid, it may be hard to see that the trunk lid is unlatched. An unlatched trunk lid may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.

### **NOTE**

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, as for example when the vehicle has a trailer or is in a garage.



At temperatures below +32 °F (0 °C), the trunk lid may not open automatically after you unlock it. It will be necessary to lift it by hand.

## Closing the trunk lid manually



**Fig. 71 Open trunk lid: Handle for closing the trunk lid.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

### Closing the trunk lid

- Grasp the handle in the trunk lid trim ⇒ *Fig. 71*.
- Pull the trunk lid down and close it securely so that the latch engages.
- Check the trunk lid to make sure it is securely latched.

### Locking the trunk lid

If you unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key, but do not open either a door or the trunk lid within several seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again. This feature helps prevent you from leaving the vehicle unlocked unintentionally.

The trunk lid can be locked only when it is securely closed and latched.

- The power locking system also locks the trunk lid.
- If the trunk lid of a locked vehicle is unlocked with the button on the remote control vehicle key, it will lock again immediately after it is closed. The anti-theft alarm system, if equipped, is activated after the vehicle is locked ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.
- A closed but unlocked trunk lid automatically locks at speeds above about 3 mph (5 km/h).

### WARNING

Improper or unsupervised closing of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries. Never close the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold depending on the season. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness or death, particularly to small children.
- When closing the trunk lid, be careful to remove your hands out of the path of the trunk lid in time.



Make sure that the remote control vehicle key is not in the luggage compartment before closing the trunk lid.

## Power operation of the trunk lid

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

### Opening the trunk lid

If necessary, remove anything secured to a luggage rack mounted onto the trunk lid before opening the trunk lid ⇒ .

- Press the button ⇒ *Fig. 70* in the trunk lid (arrow).
- **OR:** Pull the switch ⇒ *Fig. 59* in the driver door up. The selector lever must be in Park (P). The switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
- **OR:** Press the button ⇒ *Fig. 69* on the remote control vehicle key for about a second until the trunk lid automatically opens. If the doors are locked, only the trunk lid is unlocked and the doors remain locked.
- *For vehicles with Keyless Access and sensor-controlled opening (Easy Open):* The trunk lid can be opened by moving your foot within the sensor range under the middle of the rear bumper (Easy Open) ⇒ *Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open)*.

The trunk lid opens by itself ⇒ .

If a trailer is hitched to the vehicle, do not attempt to open the trunk lid with the power feature ⇒ .

The trunk lid can be opened by hand with some force.

### Closing the trunk lid

- Press the button in the open trunk lid ⇒ *Fig. 73A* or ⇒ *Fig. 73B* ⇒ .
- **OR:** *For vehicles with five seats:* Pull up the switch in the driver door ⇒ *Fig. 69* and hold until the trunk lid is completely closed. The ignition must be switched on.
- **OR:** Push the trunk lid towards the closed position. The trunk lid will then close by itself ⇒ .
- *For vehicles with five seats and Keyless Access:* Press the button on the remote control vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 69* for about a second. You must be outside the

vehicle for the trunk lid to close.

- For vehicles with Keyless Access and the automatic closing button (Easy Close): You can set the trunk lid to close automatically after you leave the sensor range by pressing the Easy Close button ⇒ *Automatic trunk lid closing (Easy Close)*.

For vehicles with Keyless Access: If you close the trunk lid after the vehicle is locked, but the vehicle key you just used is still inside the vehicle, the trunk lid will not fully close and all turn signals flash *four times*. If you then close the trunk lid by hand, the vehicle will not fully lock immediately. All turn signals flash *four times*.

### Canceling trunk lid opening or closing

Trunk lid opening and closing can be canceled as follows:

- Press one of the  buttons while the trunk lid is opening or closing.
- Pressing one of the  or  buttons again makes the trunk lid move back to its original position.

If the trunk lid meets resistance or becomes blocked by an obstacle:

- The trunk lid will stop opening or closing. If the trunk lid was closing it will open again slightly.
- Check why the trunk lid could not be opened or closed.
- You can then push the trunk lid up by hand and the trunk lid opens again.

### Warning chime

A warning chime sounds when the trunk lid is opened or closed, *except* when opening or closing with the button on the trunk lid ⇒ *Fig. 70* or the buttons in the trunk lid ⇒ *Fig. 73*.

### Saving the opening angle

If space behind or above the vehicle is limited, you can change the opening angle.

- Stop the opening process at the desired opening angle ⇒ *Canceling trunk lid opening or closing*.
- Press the  button in the open trunk lid ⇒ *Fig. 73A*, or ⇒ *Fig. 73B* until the emergency flashers blink and a chime sounds. This saves the opening angle ⇒ .

### Resetting the opening angle

To completely open the trunk lid again, you must reset the original angle.

- Open the trunk lid to the saved opening angle.
- Manually push the trunk lid open to the new desired opening angle or as far as it will go. This requires some strength.
- Press the  button in the open trunk lid ⇒ *Fig. 73A*, or ⇒ *Fig. 73B* until the emergency flashers blink and a chime sounds.

The opening angle is reset.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper or unsupervised closing of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries.

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold depending on the season. Temperatures can quickly levels that can cause unconsciousness or death, particularly to small children.

## ⚠ WARNING

A closed trunk lid cannot open completely and an open trunk lid cannot close automatically if a luggage rack is installed on it or if it is covered by a heavy layer of snow. In this case, you will have to hold the trunk lid or prop it up to keep it open.

- Remove any snow or luggage mounted on the trunk lid before opening the trunk lid.

## ⓘ NOTE

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, as for example when the vehicle has a trailer or is in a garage.

## ⓘ NOTE

If the system is operated too often in succession, it will shut itself off to help prevent overheating.

- The feature can be used again as soon as the system has cooled down. In the meantime, the trunk lid can be opened or closed by hand, though this requires some strength.
- If the vehicle battery or the fuse is blown when the trunk lid is open, the trunk lid system must be reset. To reset the trunk lid, it must be manually closed once.

## Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open)



Fig. 72 Keyless Access locking and starting system: Opening the sensor-controlled trunk lid (Easy Open).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If your vehicle has Keyless Access, it may also be equipped with the Easy Open feature.

When a valid vehicle key is within range of the trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#), you can open the trunk lid by moving your foot within the sensor's range below the middle of the rear bumper.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Stand about 2 ft. (60 cm) behind the middle of the rear bumper.
- Move your foot under the middle of the rear bumper in a kicking motion ⇒ [Fig. 72](#), ① then ② (arrows).
- Move your foot back so that you are standing firmly on both feet again. It is not necessary to contact the vehicle when you make this kicking motion.
- The high-mounted brake light and the turn signals flash once to show that the Easy Open feature is opening the trunk lid. The trunk lid opens by itself.
- If the trunk lid does not open, wait a few seconds and try again.

Easy Open may not work properly or at all, if, for example:

- The rear bumper is very dirty.
- The rear bumper has salty water on it after driving on salted roads.
- A trailer hitch/ball mount has been installed on the vehicle.

In heavy rain, Easy Open may have a delayed reaction or be completely deactivated to help prevent unintended opening.

Easy Open can be switched on or off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, and Opening and closing function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) .

### WARNING

Careless use of the Easy Open feature can cause falls and serious personal injury

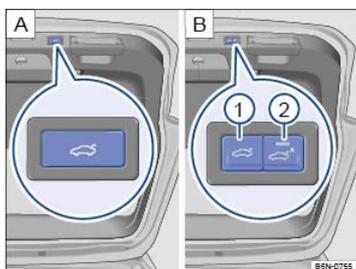
- Always make sure you have firm footing when using the Easy Open feature, and that the surface you are standing on is not uneven or slippery.
- Always remember that it will be necessary for you to move backwards to let the trunk lid open. Be careful not to lose your balance, particularly when holding things in your hands.
- Never use the Easy Open feature unless you can use it safely.

### CAUTION

If a valid vehicle key is within range of the trunk lid, the Easy Open feature can deploy unintentionally in some cases and open the trunk lid: for example, when sweeping the ground or floor below the rear bumper, if there is a strong stream of water or steam, or when carrying out maintenance or repairs around the rear bumper. If the trunk lid opens unintentionally, it can injure anyone or damage anything in its way.

- Never leave a valid vehicle key within range of the trunk lid unattended.
- Always turn off the Easy Open feature in the vehicle settings menu Vehicle settings menu in the following situations:
  - Before carrying out any maintenance or repairs on the vehicle.
  - Before washing the vehicle.
  - Before mounting a bicycle rack or connecting a trailer hitch to the vehicle.

## Automatic trunk lid closing (Easy Close)



**Fig. 73 Buttons in the open trunk lid: Versions and .**

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 73 :**

- ① Button to close the trunk lid electrically
- ② Button for the automatic closing feature (Easy Close)

If your vehicle has Keyless Access, it may also be equipped with the Easy Close button.

When a valid vehicle key is within range of the trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#), you can press the Easy Close button ⇒ [Fig. 73B](#) to set the trunk lid to close automatically, for example, after removing large items from the luggage compartment. The trunk lid closes itself once the vehicle key is outside the sensor range.

- Switch off the engine and the ignition and take the vehicle key with you.
- Press the Easy Close button in the trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 73B](#). The trunk lid must be at least halfway open, and the vehicle key must be within range of the trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 60A](#).
- The light in the Easy Close button blinks and a chime sounds to confirm that Easy Close is activated. The trunk lid stays open.
- As soon as the valid vehicle key is outside the sensor range, the trunk lid is closed.
- When there are multiple valid vehicle keys within range of the trunk lid, the trunk lid closes when the last valid vehicle key is outside the sensor range.

In the following situations, Easy Close is not activated or will not work properly:

- There is no valid vehicle key within range of the trunk lid.
- **OR:** The trunk lid is not open far enough. Open the trunk lid further. As soon as the trunk lid is open far enough, the light in the Easy Close button lights up to indicate the function can now be activated. Press the button again to reactivate the function.
- **OR:** The Easy Close button has been pressed multiple times.
- **OR:** One or more valid vehicle keys are still in the luggage compartment.
- **OR:** The valid vehicle key is still within the sensor range more than about 15 seconds after pressing the Easy Close button. The light in the button blinks quickly to confirm that the function is deactivated. Press the Easy Close button again to reactivate the function.
- **OR:** You press the button in the vehicle key or pull the switch in the driver door.
- **OR:** You bring the valid vehicle key back within range of the trunk lid while the trunk lid is closing. The trunk lid opens again to the set opening angle.
- **OR:** The trunk lid meets resistance or becomes blocked by an obstacle. The trunk lid opens again slightly.

## Opening the trunk lid from inside the luggage compartment



**Fig. 74 Inside the luggage compartment: Cover for the trunk lid release.**



**Fig. 75 Inside the luggage compartment, behind the cover: Opening the trunk lid.**

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The trunk lid can be opened manually if the vehicle battery is discharged or if there is a fault in the locking system.

- If necessary, fold the third row seat backrest forward ⇒ [Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place](#) , release the second row seat backrest and move the second row seat bench forward ⇒ [Adjusting the second row seats](#) , ⇒ [Folding the second row of seats forward and back into place](#) .
- Remove luggage to reach the trunk lid from the inside.
- Unlock the cover by turning the knob in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 74](#). Pull the cover toward you to open.
- Depending on equipment, unfold the key bit from the vehicle key fob ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#) or remove the emergency key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).
- Insert the key bit into the slot in the trunk lid trim and press the release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 75](#) to unlock the trunk lid. At the same time, push the trunk lid out until it opens.

## Power windows

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Opening or closing power windows](#)

⇒ [Power windows – features](#)

⇒ [Power window pinch protection](#)

### WARNING

Improper use of power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.
- When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key makes it possible to lock the vehicle, start the engine, turn on the ignition, and operate the windows.
- Always use the safety switch when children are in the back seat to disable the rear power windows and keep them from being opened and closed.

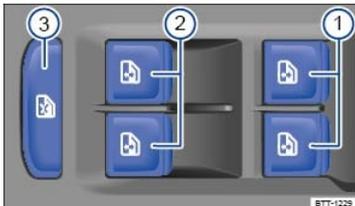
### NOTE

If you leave the windows open, rain or other precipitation may enter the vehicle from outside and can damage the vehicle interior.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ [Driver personalization](#).

## Opening or closing power windows



**Fig. 76 In the driver door: Switches for the front and rear power windows.**

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Switches in the driver door

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 76](#) :

- ① For the windows in the front doors.
- ② For the windows in the rear doors.
- ③ Safety switch.

- **Opening:** Press the  switch.
- **Closing:** Pull the  switch.
- **Stopping automatic movement:** Press/pull the respective switch again.
- The safety switch  ⇒ [Fig. 76](#)  deactivates the power windows in the rear doors. The yellow indicator light in the switch comes on.

You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened. When the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition and the driver door has been opened, the power windows cannot be opened or closed.



Separate switches for controlling the passenger windows are located in each passenger door.

## Power windows – features

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

### One-touch opening and closing

The one-touch feature automatically opens or closes a power window all the way. The window switch does not have to be held.

**For one-touch opening:** Press the switch for the window down briefly as far as it goes.

**For one-touch closing:** Pull the switch for the window up briefly as far as it goes.

**Stopping automatic movement:** Pull/press the switch again.

### Reactivating the one-touch feature

If the vehicle battery is disconnected or dies when the windows are not completely closed, the one-touch feature will not work and must be reactivated after the vehicle battery has been recharged or replaced:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Close all windows and doors.
- Pull the switch for the respective window up and hold it for at least 2 seconds in this position.
- Release the switch, pull up and hold again. The one-touch feature is now reactivated.

The one-touch feature can be reactivated for one or more windows at the same time.

### Convenience opening and closing

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience opening and closing feature.

The convenience opening and closing feature lets you open and close the windows when the ignition is switched off.

You can configure settings for the convenience opening feature in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Opening and closing function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) .

- **Convenience opening from inside the vehicle:** Push down and hold the switch for the driver window until all windows open and the sunroof tilts.
- **Convenience closing for vehicles with Keyless Access:** Hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows and the sunroof close ⇒ [Fig. 60](#).

## WARNING

Improper use of power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.
- When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition, set the electronic parking brake, and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.
- Always use the safety switch when children are in the back seat to disable the rear power windows and keep them from being opened and closed.



If the power windows malfunction, the one-touch feature, as well as pinch protection may not work properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility right away.



Convenience closing only works when the one-touch feature is active.

## Power window pinch protection

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing a power window ⇒ . If one-touch window closing meets resistance or there is something in the way, the window will stop and go down again.

- Check why the window did not close.
- Try one-touch window closing again.
- If the window meets resistance a second time, so that it stops and goes back down, one-touch closing is deactivated for about 10 seconds.
- If you pull the power window button up all the way and hold it during this 10 second interval, the window will close **without pinch protection** ⇒ .

### Closing the window without pinch protection

- Try to close the window again within 10 seconds by holding the switch. **Pinch protection is turned off for a short distance in the window track!**
- If closing takes longer than about 10 seconds, pinch protection is turned on again. The window stops again if there is resistance.
- If the window still will not close, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

Without pinch protection, power windows will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing power windows.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding pinch protection to close power windows!
- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the window frame; injuries may result.



Pinch protection is also active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof ⇒ [Power windows – features](#).

## Power sunroof

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Opening or closing the power sunroof](#)

⇒ [Convenience opening and closing of the power sunroof](#)

⇒ [Pinch protection for the power sunroof](#)

Depending on equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with a Panoramic sliding and tilting sunroof.

### WARNING

Improper use of the power sunroof can result in serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that no one is in the way of the power sunroof when it is closing.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key makes it possible to lock the vehicle, start the engine, turn on the ignition and operate the sunroof.
- You can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes after you switch off the ignition, as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

### NOTE

- To help prevent damage, remove ice and snow from the sunroof before opening or tilting it in winter weather.
- Always close the sunroof before leaving the vehicle or if it begins raining. If the sunroof is open or tilted, rain could enter the vehicle interior and cause extensive damage to the electrical system. This could result in further vehicle damage.



Remove leaves and other objects from the sunroof guiderails regularly either by hand or using a vacuum cleaner.



If the power sunroof malfunctions, pinch protection may not function properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

## Opening or closing the power sunroof

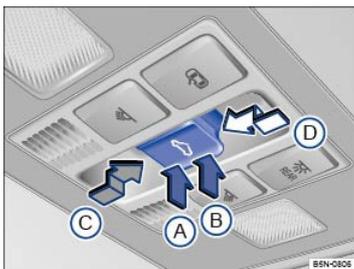


Fig. 77 In the headliner: Power sunroof switch.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

You must switch on the ignition to operate the power sunroof. After switching off the ignition, you can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

The sunshade opens automatically with the sunroof if it is closed when the power sunroof opens, or if the sunroof opens farther than the current sunshade position. The sunshade does not close automatically with the sunroof, but instead stays in the previous position. For more information on the sunshade, see ⇒ *Power sunshade in the sunroof*.

The switch ⇒ Fig. 77 has two detents for each switch position (A, B, C, and D).

Press the switch to the first detent to completely or partially tilt, open, or close the sunroof. Press the switch briefly to the second detent to activate the one-touch feature (automatic operation). Press the switch again to stop the one-touch feature.

### Tilting, opening, and closing the power sunroof

- *Tilt the power sunroof:* Press the rear area of the switch (B) upward to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to tilt the sunroof with the one-touch feature.
- *Close the tilted sunroof:* Press the front area of the switch (A) upward to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to close the tilted sunroof with the one-touch feature.
- *Stop the one-touch feature during tilting/closing:* Press the button again at position (A) or (B)
- *Open the power sunroof:* Press the switch rearward (C) to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to open the roof to the comfort position with the one-touch feature. Press (C) again to fully open the roof.
- *Close the power sunroof:* Press the switch forward (D) to the first detent. Briefly press the switch to the second detent to close the sunroof with the one-touch feature.
- *Stop the one-touch feature during opening/closing:* Press the switch again at (C) or (D).

### Manually closing the power sunroof

If your power sunroof will not close properly, do not try to close it yourself, doing so can cause serious and expensive damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty. Special knowledge and tools are required to close the power sunroof if it will not close on its own. To help prevent damage to the sunroof, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility help you close and repair the power sunroof.



The comfort position provides sufficient ventilation without loud wind noise.

## Convenience opening and closing of the power sunroof

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### Convenience opening and closing

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience opening and closing feature.

You can configure settings for the convenience opening feature in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, and Opening and closing function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

The convenience opening and closing feature lets you open and close the windows and the power sunroof when the ignition is switched off:

- *Convenience opening from inside the vehicle:* Push down and hold the switch for the driver window until all windows open and the sunroof tilts.
- *Convenience closing for vehicles with Keyless Access:* Hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until

the windows and power sunroof close ⇒ *Power locking system*.

## Pinch protection for the power sunroof

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing the power sunroof ⇒ . If the power sunroof closing meets resistance or there is something in the way, the power sunroof opens again immediately.

- Check why the power sunroof did not close.
- Try to close the power sunroof again.
- If the power sunroof cannot close, the power sunroof will open again immediately. For a few seconds after the sunroof has opened, it can be closed without pinch protection.

### Closing the power sunroof without pinch protection

- Press the  button ⇒ *Fig. 77* within about 5 seconds after the sunroof has stopped and hold it in the direction of the arrow  at the second detent until the power sunroof closes completely.
- **The power sunroof will now close without pinch protection!**
- If the power sunroof still will not close, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power sunroof will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing the power sunroof.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding the pinch protection to close the power sunroof!
- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the edge of the roof; injuries may result.



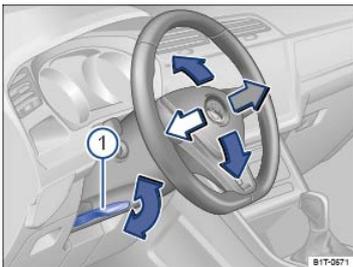
Pinch protection is also active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof ⇒ *Convenience opening and closing of the power sunroof*.



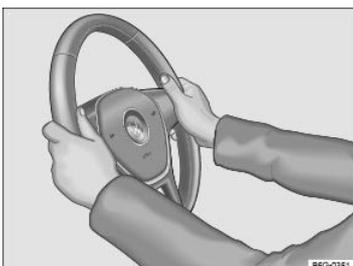
If the power sunroof malfunctions, pinch protection may not function properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## Steering wheel

### Adjusting the steering wheel position



**Fig. 78** Manual adjustment for the steering wheel position.



**Fig. 79** Steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is not moving.

The steering wheel can be adjusted up and down (blue arrows) or forward and back (white and gray arrows) ⇒ *Fig. 78*.

- Push down on the lever ⇒ *Fig. 78*①.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that it can be held with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions on the outside of the steering wheel rim and with the arms slightly bent at the elbow ⇒ Fig. 79.
- Pull the lever up firmly until it is flush with the steering column ⇒ ▲.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the steering wheel adjustment feature can result in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always pull the lever ⇒ Fig. 78① firmly upward after adjusting the steering wheel so that the steering wheel does not change position suddenly while the vehicle is moving.
- Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. If you find that you need to adjust the steering wheel while driving, stop the vehicle in a safe place and make the proper adjustment.
- Never adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your face. Always make sure that the steering wheel points toward your chest. Otherwise, the airbag system cannot protect you properly in the event of a crash.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions ⇒ Fig. 79 to help reduce the risk of serious personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

## Seats and head restraints

### Driver and front passenger seats

#### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Electrical controls on the driver and front passenger seats*

⇒ *Manual controls on the driver and front passenger seats*

## ⚠ WARNING

Always adjust seat, safety belts, and head restraints properly before driving and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible. Always be sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent.
- If these requirements cannot be met for physical reasons, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to see whether adaptive equipment is available.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Never drive with backrests reclined or tilted back farther than necessary to drive comfortably. The farther back the backrests are tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect positioning of the safety belts and improper seating position.
- Never drive with the front seat passenger backrest tilted forward. If the front airbag deploys, the front backrest can be forced backward and injure passengers on the rear seat.
- Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Rear seat passengers who are not properly seated and restrained are more likely to be seriously injured in a crash.

## ⚠ WARNING

The third row seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m).

- Persons taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the trunk lid is closed or in an accident.
- Always make sure that the third row seat passengers cannot be struck when the trunk lid is closed.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle. In addition, you will not be in the correct seating position while adjusting the seats.
- Adjust the front seat height, angle and longitudinal direction only if the seat adjustment area is clear.
- The adjustment of the front seats must not be restricted by things in the footwell in front or behind the seats.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of seat covers can lead to an accidental activation of the electrical seat controls and can cause the front seats to move unexpectedly while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others. Furthermore, the electrical components of the front seats could be damaged.

- Never attach seat covers to the electrical seat controls.
- Never put seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been approved by Volkswagen for your specific vehicle.

## ⚠ WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

## ! NOTE

Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.

- To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim.

## Electrical controls on the driver and front passenger seats

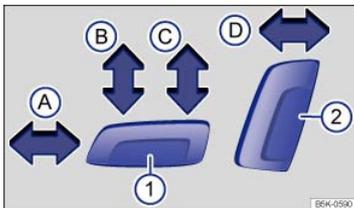


Fig. 80 Driver seat: Electrical controls to move the seat backward or forward, and adjust seat cushion height and backrest angle (if equipped).

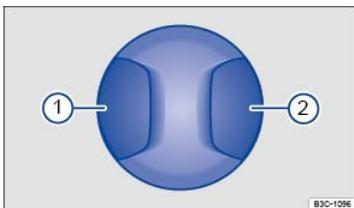


Fig. 81 Lumbar support control (if equipped).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If your vehicle is equipped with electrical controls for the front seats, the controls on the front passenger seat either mirror those on the driver seat or there may be different combinations of electrical and manual controls.

There may be manual and electrical controls on the same seat.

### Electrical seat controls

Press the switch in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 80 :

- ① (A): Slide the seat forward or back. (B): Adjust the seat cushion angle. (C): Raise or lower the seat cushion.
- ② (D): Adjust the backrest angle.

### Lumbar support controls (if equipped)

Press the switch in the corresponding area ⇒ Fig. 81 :

- ① Adjust the curve of the lumbar support (forward).
- ② Adjust the curve of the lumbar support (back).

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of electrical seat controls can cause serious personal injuries.

- The front seats in your vehicle can be electrically adjusted even when the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition or, on a vehicle with Keyless Access, even if there is no key in the vehicle.
- Never leave children and persons who need help in the vehicle alone because the unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments can result in serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way while the front seats are being adjusted, or while calling up the stored memory settings for the front seats. In an emergency, stop automatic seat adjustment by pressing a seat adjustment switch.

#### **! NOTE**

To help prevent damage to electrical parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.



If the vehicle battery is too weak, the electrical seat adjustment controls may not work.



When entering and exiting the vehicle, be careful not to come into contact with any switches that could change the seat adjustment.

## Manual controls on the driver and front passenger seats

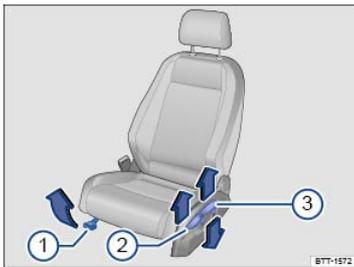


Fig. 82 Driver seat: Manual seat adjustment controls.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The manual controls on the front passenger seat either mirror those on the driver seat or there may be different combinations of manual and electrical controls, depending on vehicle equipment.

The illustration and information in this section describes all possible seat controls. The number of controls may vary depending on the version of the seat.

There may be manual and electrical controls on the same seat ⇒ [Electrical controls on the driver and front passenger seats](#) .

### Manual seat controls

Key to ⇒ Fig. 82 :

- ① Move the front seat forward or back. Pull the lever up and move the front seat. The front seat must lock in place after the lever is released!
- ② Adjust the backrest angle. Pull the lever up and move the seat backrest. The seat backrest must lock in place after the lever is released! If the vehicle has an electrical control for adjusting the backrest angle, see ⇒ Fig. 80②.
- ③ Adjust the seat height. Move the lever several times up or down.

### Rear seats

**Introduction to the subject**

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Adjusting the second row seats](#)

⇒ [Folding the second row of seats forward and back into place](#)

⇒ [Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place](#)

⇒ [Entry assistance for the third row seats](#)

The third row seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof ⇒ ⚠!

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper adjustment of the rear seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Adjust the rear seats only when the vehicle is stopped, since the seat could otherwise move unexpectedly when the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the rear seats only if no one is in the way.
- Always guide the backrest down by hand and never let it fall into place on its own.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The third row seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m).

- Persons taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the trunk lid is closed or in an accident.
- Always make sure that the third row seat passengers cannot be struck when the trunk lid is closed.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

#### ! NOTE

Items behind or under the second row seats could be damaged or cause damage when the seats are adjusted forward or backward.

- If a second row seat is in a forward position, items can get into the area between the seat and the floor. Before you slide the seat back again, make sure that the area behind the seat is clear of objects.

#### ! NOTE

Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.

- To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim.

## Adjusting the second row seats

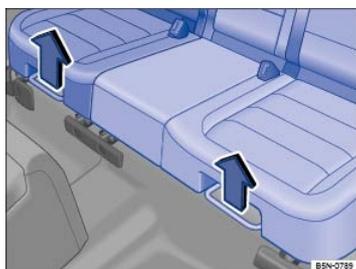


Fig. 83 Adjusting the second row seat.

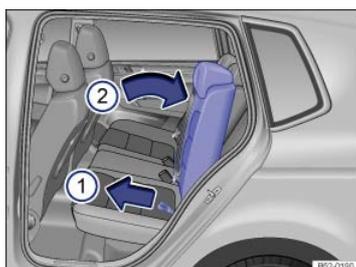


Fig. 84 Adjusting the second row seat backrest.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The second row of seats is divided asymmetrically into three sections. Each section can be adjusted separately. To fold the second row backrest down, see ⇒ [Luggage compartment pass-through](#).

### Adjusting the second row seat

Pull one of the two levers upward ⇒ [Fig. 83](#) (arrows) and push the respective rear seat section forward or backward. Release the lever and lock the rear seat section by gently sliding it forward or backward.

### Adjusting the second row seat backrest

- *With the pull strap:* Place one hand on the section of the second row backrest you wish to adjust and pull the respective pull strap with the other hand ⇒ [Fig. 84①](#). Move the rear backrest to the desired position by hand against the force of the spring. Release the pull strap and lock the rear backrest by gently tilting it forward or backward. With the pull strap, you can fold the section of the backrest all the way forward and latch it in the folded position ⇒ [Folding the second row seats forward](#).
- *With the lever (for vehicles with seven seats):* Pull the lever ⇒ [Fig. 84②](#) and push or pull the backrest to adjust the section to the desired position. With the lever, you can also move the seat forward to make entering the third row of seats easier, and then push it back ⇒ [Entry assistance for the third row seats](#).

There is also a lever on the center section of the second row backrest which folds the second row center backrest down individually ⇒ [Luggage compartment pass-through](#).

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper adjustment of the rear seat can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Adjust the rear seat only when the vehicle is stopped, since the seat could otherwise move unexpectedly when the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the rear seat only if no one is in the way.
- Always guide the backrest down by hand and never let it fall into place on its own.

### ⓘ NOTE

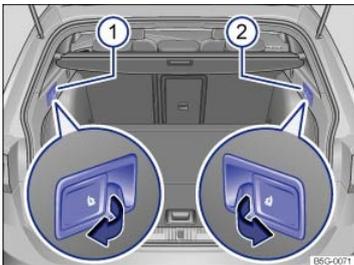
Items in the luggage compartment could be damaged or cause damage when the rear seat is adjusted forward and backward.

- If the rear seat is in a forward position, items can get into the area between the seat and the luggage compartment floor. When you slide the rear seat back again, make sure that the area behind the seat is clear of objects.

## Folding the second row of seats forward and back into place



**Fig. 85** In the second row: Pull strap to fold the second row backrest forward.



**Fig. 86** In the luggage compartment: Release levers for the second row backrest (if equipped).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The second row seat backrest is divided into three sections. Each section of the rear seat backrest can be folded down individually to increase luggage space.

### Folding the second row seats forward

From the passenger compartment with the pull strap in the second row seat:

- Move the driver and passenger seats forward, if necessary.
- Remove objects from the second row seat footwell and from behind the second row seats ⇒ .
- Push the second row head restraints as far down as they will go ⇒ [Head restraints](#).

- Fold up the armrest in the second row.
- Push the second row seat as far back as it will go ⇒ *Adjusting the second row seats*.
- Pull the strap toward you ⇒ *Fig. 85* (arrow) and fold the second row seat backrest forward at the same time until it locks in place ⇒ ▲.

From the luggage compartment with the release levers (if equipped):

- Move the driver and passenger seats forward, if necessary.
- Remove objects from the second row seat footwell and from behind the second row seats ⇒ ①.
- Push the second row seat as far back as it will go ⇒ *Adjusting the second row seats*.
- Push the second row head restraints as far down as they will go ⇒ *Head restraints*.
- Fold up the armrest in the second row.
- Open the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*.
- Pull the release lever for the second row seat backrest you want to fold forward ⇒ *Fig. 86*. Lever ① is for the driver side section, and lever ② is for the passenger side section.
- To fold the backrest all the way down, you must manually press the backrest down from the second row of seats until you hear a click indicating the backrest is locked in place.

When the backrest is folded forward, no person or child may ride on that seat ⇒ ▲.

### Folding the second row seat backrest back into place

- If the backrest is folded all the way down and latched in place, pull the strap in the direction of the arrow to release the backrest ⇒ *Fig. 85*.
- Push the second row seat backrest back until it latches securely ⇒ ▲.
- The second row seat backrest must be securely latched into place for the safety belts on the second row seats to provide optimal protection.

### ⚠ WARNING

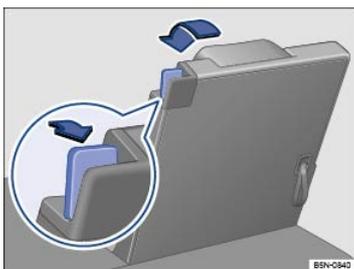
Improper folding and improper latching of the second row seat backrest can cause serious personal injury.

- Always make sure there are no people or animals in the area around the second row seat backrest when folding it forward.
- Never fold the second row seat backrest forward or back when the vehicle is moving.
- When folding the second row seat backrest into the upright position, make sure that the safety belt does not get caught or damaged.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of the way when folding the second row seat backrest forward or back.
- Each second row seat backrest must be securely latched in the upright position so that the safety belts on the rear seats can provide protection. This is particularly the case for the middle seat on the second row seat bench.
- If a seat is used with an unsecured backrest, the passenger will move forward together with the rear seat backrest during sudden braking, driving maneuvers, or in a collision.
- No one, including children, may ride on the second row seats if the second row seat backrest is folded down or not correctly latched.

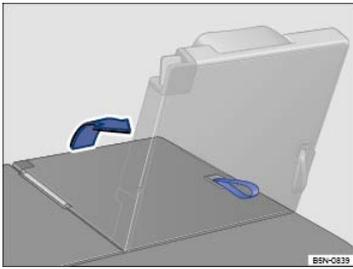
### ! NOTE

- Objects in the footwell or under the second row seats may be damaged when the backrest is folded forward and back. Always remove objects before folding the backrest forward.
- Before folding the second row seat backrest forward, adjust the front seats so that the second row seat's head restraint or backrest cushion will not touch the front seats.

## Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place



**Fig. 87** In the third row: Lever to release the third row seat backrest.



**Fig. 88 In the third row: Strap to fold the third row seat backrest back into place.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

The third row seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof ⇒ !

On vehicles equipped with a third row of seats, each backrest in the third row may be folded forward to extend the luggage compartment.

### Folding the third row seat forward

- Push the head restraint as far down as it will go ⇒ *Head restraints*
- Release the safety belt from the belt buckle and slide it into the safety clip to help reduce the risk of damaging the safety belt.
- Move the second row seats forward.
- Remove objects from the third row seat footwell, from underneath and behind the third row seats ⇒ .
- Open the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*.
- From the trunk, pull the release lever ⇒ *Fig. 87* toward you (arrow in lever magnified view) to unlock the third row seat backrest.
- Push the backrest down with your hand into the horizontal position ⇒ .
- When the backrest is folded forward, no person or child may ride on that seat ⇒ .
- Close the trunk lid.

### Folding the third row seat backrests into place

- Open the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*.
- If necessary, remove the luggage compartment cover and store it under the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment cover*.
- Pull the strap on the backrest ⇒ *Fig. 88* to fold the backrest into place.
- **OR:** From inside the vehicle, push the lever up and push the backrest into place with your hand.
- Pull and push the backrest to ensure that it is securely latched in the upright position ⇒ .
- Close the trunk lid.

### WARNING

The third row seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m).

- Persons taller than 5 ft. 3 in. (1.6 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the trunk lid is closed or in an accident.
- Always make sure that the third row seat passengers cannot be struck when the trunk lid is closed.

### WARNING

Improper folding and improper latching of the third row seat backrests can cause serious personal injury.

- Always make sure there are no people or animals in the area around the third row seat backrest when folding it forward.
- Never fold the third row seat backrests forward or back when the vehicle is moving.
- When folding the third row seat backrests into the upright position, make sure that the safety belt does not get caught or damaged.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of the way when folding the third row seat backrest forward or back.
- Each third row seat backrest must be securely latched in the upright position so that the safety belts on the third row seats can provide protection.
- If a seat is used with an unsecured backrest, the passenger will move forward together with the backrest during sudden braking, driving maneuvers, or in a collision.
- No one may ride on the third row seats if the third row seat backrest is folded down or not correctly latched.

### NOTE

- Objects on a seat cushion in the third row may be damaged when the backrest is folded forward. Always remove objects before folding the backrest forward.

## Entry assistance for the third row seats

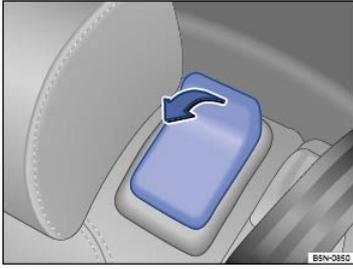


Fig. 89 In the second row: Entry assistance lever.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

On vehicles equipped with a third row of seats, the seats in the second row can be folded forward to make entering and exiting the third row easier.

### Folding the second row seat backrests forward

- Remove any objects from the second row seat footwell ⇒ .
- Push the head restraint down as far as it will go ⇒ [Head restraints](#).
- Pull the lever ⇒ [Fig. 89](#) up and toward the front of the vehicle (arrow).
- Pull the seat backrest forward. The entire section of the second row backrest folds forward. The folded seat can be also be pushed forward.
- Carefully enter or exit the third row ⇒ .

### Folding the second row seat backrests back into place

- Push the seat back completely.
- Pull the lever ⇒ [Fig. 89](#) toward the front of the vehicle in the direction of the arrow and fold the second row backrest into the upright position ⇒ .
- The backrest must be securely latched in the upright position.

#### WARNING

Improper folding and improper latching of the second row seat backrests can cause serious personal injury.

- Never fold a second row seat backrest forward or back when the vehicle is moving.
- When folding the backrest into the upright position, be careful not to catch or damage the safety belt in the backrest hinges.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of the way of the seat hinges and the seat locking mechanism when folding the backrest forward and back.
- Floor mats and other objects can get caught in the backrest hinges. This can cause the second row seat backrest to incorrectly latch when folded back into the upright position.
- When folded back into place, the second row seat backrest must be securely latched in the upright position. An improperly latched front passenger backrest can suddenly move and cause serious personal injury.
- Do not let passengers or children occupy a second row seat when the backrest is folded forward.
- Do not use the folded second row seat to lean on or to support yourself while entering or exiting the third row.

#### WARNING

If child restraints are installed on all seats in the second row, someone in the third row may not be able to fold the second row seat backrests forward. Therefore passengers in the third row may not be able to exit the vehicle in an emergency without help.

- Never install child restraints on all seats in the second row if there are passengers in the third row.

#### NOTE

Before folding the second row seat backrests forward or back into place, make sure that the headrest will not hit the front passenger seat.

#### NOTE

Objects in the footwell or under the second row seats may be damaged when the backrest is folded forward. Always remove objects before folding the backrest forward.

- Objects under the second row seats may be damaged when the seats are folded back. Remove items before folding the seats back.

- Objects or dirt in the seat tracks may damage the seats when the seats are folded forward. Carefully clean the tracks before folding the seats forward.

## Head restraints

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Adjusting the front head restraints*

⇒ *Adjusting the rear head restraints*

⇒ *Removing and reinstalling the front head restraints*

⇒ *Removing and reinstalling the rear head restraints*

### WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision.

- Never drive or let a passenger ride in the vehicle until the head restraints are properly adjusted to help minimize the risk of neck injury in a crash.
- Each head restraint must be adjusted according to the occupants' size so that the upper edge is even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level. Always sit so that the back of your head is as close as possible to the head restraint.
- Never adjust head restraints while driving.

### NOTE

When removing or reinstalling the head restraint, make sure that the head restraint does not strike the headliner or other parts of the vehicle. The headliner or other parts of the vehicle could otherwise be damaged.

## Adjusting the front head restraints

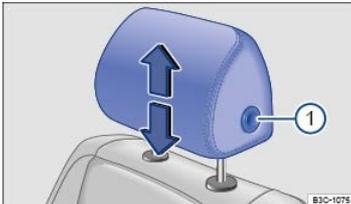


Fig. 90 Adjusting the front head restraints.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

All seats are equipped with head restraints.

There are notches in the head restraint guide rods so that the head restraint can lock into place. Only properly installed head restraints can lock into place at the adjustment range notches. In order to help prevent inadvertent removal of the head restraints after installation, there are stops at the top and bottom of the adjustment range.

### Adjusting the height of the front head restraints

- While pressing the button ⇒ Fig. 90①, pull the head restraint up or push it down ⇒ .
- The head restraint must lock securely in position.

### Proper head restraint adjustment

Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.

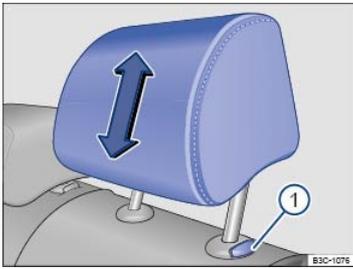
### Adjusting the head restraint for shorter people

Push the head restraint down as far as it will go, even if this means the person's head is still below the top edge of the head restraint. A small gap may remain between the head restraint and the backrest when the head restraint is all the way down.

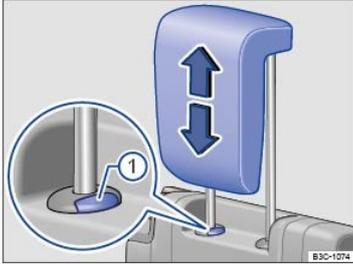
### Adjusting the head restraint for taller people

Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.

## Adjusting the rear head restraints



**Fig. 91 Adjusting the second row head restraints.**



**Fig. 92 Adjusting the third row head restraints (if equipped).**

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  **Introduction to the subject**

All seats are equipped with head restraints.

The second row center head restraint is designed only for the center seat on the second row bench. Therefore, only install the center head restraint in the center position.

### Adjusting the height of the rear head restraints

- Push the head restraint up.
- To lower the headrest, first push the headrest down as far as it will go. Then push the button ⇒ [Fig. 91①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 92①](#) and push the head restraint down completely.
- The head restraint must lock securely in position. There are two possible positions for the head restraints in the second row and one possible position for the head restraints in the third row.

### Proper head restraint adjustment

Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.

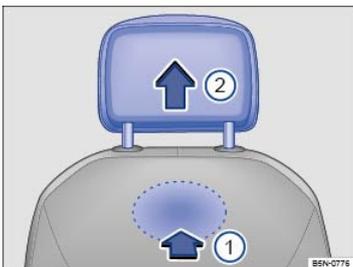
### Adjusting the head restraint for shorter people

Push the head restraint down as far as it will go, even if this means the person's head is still below the top edge of the head restraint. A small gap may remain between the head restraint and the backrest when the head restraint is all the way down.

### Adjusting the head restraint for taller people

Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.

## Removing and reinstalling the front head restraints



**Fig. 93 Removing the front head restraints.**

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  **Introduction to the subject**

All seats are equipped with head restraints. The rear center head restraint is designed only for the center seat on the rear bench. Therefore, only install the center head restraint in the center position. For instructions on removing and reinstalling the rear head restraints, see ⇒ [Removing and reinstalling the rear head restraints](#).

## Removing the front head restraints

- Sit in the back seat behind the head restraint you want to remove.
- Push the head restraint all the way down ⇒ ▲. Recline the backrest with the head restraint so that there is enough overhead clearance to remove it.
- Locate the circular button on the inside of the seat ⇒ Fig. 93 (in the blue oval area ①, not visible) and press it firmly in the direction of the arrow. This requires force.
- While pressing button ①, pull the head restraint out completely in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 93②.

## Reinstalling the front head restraints

- Position the head restraint properly over the head restraint guides of the respective seat backrest and insert the head restraint rod into the guides.
- Push the head restraint down.
- Adjust the head restraint according to the occupant's size ⇒ *Adjusting the front head restraints*.

## Removing and reinstalling the rear head restraints

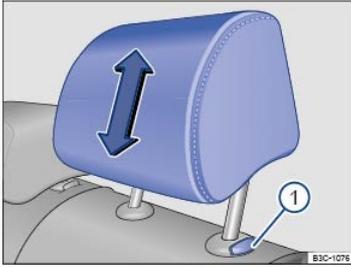


Fig. 94 Removing the second row head restraints.

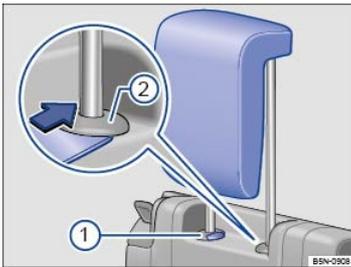


Fig. 95 Removing the third row head restraints (if equipped).

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

All seats are equipped with head restraints. The second row center head restraint is designed only for the center seat on the second row bench. Therefore, only install the center head restraint in the center position. For instructions on removing and reinstalling the front head restraints, see ⇒ *Removing and reinstalling the front head restraints*.

## Removing the second row head restraints

- If necessary, unlock the backrest of the second row seat bench and fold it forward ⇒ *Folding the second row of seats forward and back into place*.
- Pull the head restraint all the way up ⇒ ▲.
- Push button ⇒ Fig. 94① in and hold it in this position.
- Pull out the head restraint completely.

## Removing the third row head restraints

- Unlock the backrest of the second row seat bench and fold it forward ⇒ *Folding the second row of seats forward and back into place*.
- Unlock the backrest of the third row seat and fold it forward as far as necessary ⇒ *Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place*.
- Pull the head restraint all the way up ⇒ ▲.
- Slide a flat object (plastic card) in against the guide rod to depress a release button located under the cap ⇒ Fig. 95② (not visible) and hold it in this position.
- At the same time, press button ⇒ Fig. 95① while a second person pulls out the head restraint completely.
- Fold the backrests of both rear seat benches back so that they lock securely.

## Reinstalling the rear head restraints (second and third row)

- Unlock the backrest of the second row seat bench and fold it forward ⇒ *Folding the second row of seats forward and back into place*.
- If necessary, unlock the backrest of the third row seat bench and fold it forward ⇒ *Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place*
- Position the head restraint properly over the head restraint guides of the respective seat backrest and insert the head restraint rod into the guides.

- Push the head restraint down while pressing button ⇒ [Fig. 94](#)① or ⇒ [Fig. 95](#)①.
- Fold the backrests of both rear seat benches back so that they lock securely.
- Adjust the head restraint according to the occupant's size ⇒ [Adjusting the rear head restraints](#).

## ⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision.

- Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted to help minimize the risk of neck injury in a crash.
- Always reinstall head restraints as soon as possible so that vehicle occupants are properly protected.

## ! NOTE

Before folding the third row backrest forward, adjust the second row seats so that the third row head restraints or backrest cushion will not touch the second row seats.

## Seat functions

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Memory seats](#)

⇒ [Center armrests](#)

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of seat adjustment controls can cause severe personal injuries.

- Always sit properly at all times before starting to drive and while the vehicle is moving. Make sure all passengers, especially children, are properly seated whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from moving parts and adjustment areas of the seats.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ [Driver personalization](#).

## Memory seats



**Fig. 96** On the driver seat: Memory buttons.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with seat memory functions for the driver seat and the outside mirrors.

### Memory buttons

Each memory button can be assigned with individual settings for the driver seat and the outside mirrors.

#### Storing driver seat settings and forward driving settings for outside mirrors

- Set the electronic parking brake.
- Turn on the ignition.
- Shift the transmission to Neutral (N).
- Adjust the driver seat and outside mirrors.
- Press the SET button for longer than a second ⇒ [Fig. 96](#).
- Within about 10 seconds, press the desired memory button. A signal chime confirms the setting is saved.

#### Storing reverse driving settings for the passenger side outside mirror

- Turn on the ignition.
- Set the electronic parking brake.

- Shift the transmission to Neutral (**N**).
- Press the desired memory button.
- Shift the transmission to Reverse (**R**).
- Adjust the passenger side outside mirror.
- The mirror position is automatically saved and assigned to the remote control vehicle key which was used to unlock the vehicle.

### Recalling stored memory settings

- When the ignition is switched off and the driver door is open, press the corresponding memory button.
- **OR:** When the ignition is on, press the memory button and hold until the seats and mirrors are fully adjusted to the saved position.
- The passenger mirror moves back from the reverse driving setting when the vehicle moves forward faster than about 10 mph (15 km/h) or the adjusting knob is moved from **R** to another position ⇒ *Mirrors*.

### Front seat convenience entry function

Depending on vehicle equipment, when the driver door is opened, the front seat may automatically move to a position that makes it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.

The driver seat moves back to its original position automatically as soon as the driver door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

### Personalized user profiles

Seat settings are saved to the current personalized user profile.

The memory seat settings will be saved in the user profile once the ignition is switched off or the vehicle is locked.

When the vehicle is unlocked and the driver door is opened, the driver seat and outside mirrors will automatically move to the set position.

- *Vehicle is stopped or moving slower than 3 mph (5 km/h):* The driver seat and outside mirrors move to the new settings. You can cancel the movement by pressing the relevant function key in the Infotainment system or one of the buttons on the driver seat.
- *Vehicle is moving faster than 3 mph (5 km/h):* The driver seat and outside mirrors will not move to the new settings. All other settings in the user profile will change.



If the driver door is not opened within about 10 minutes after the vehicle has been unlocked, the driver seat and outside mirrors will not automatically move.

## Center armrests



Fig. 97 Front center armrest.

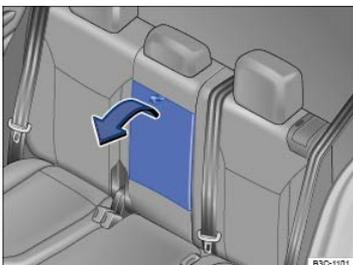


Fig. 98 Rear center armrest.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### Front center armrest

There is a storage compartment between the front seats ⇒ *Storage compartment between the front seats*.

### Rear center armrest

There may be a fold-down armrest in the backrest of the second row seat bench ⇒ *Fig. 98*.

- To *fold down*, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 98*.
- To *fold up*, push the center armrest up as far as it will go.

### WARNING

When completely open or improperly adjusted, the center armrest can restrict the driver's arm movement and cause crashes and serious personal injury.

- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never let a passenger, especially a child, ride on the center armrest. Improper seating position can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.
- Never put hot drinks or other liquids in the cup holders without secure lids on the beverage containers. Liquids can spill when the vehicle is moving as well as during braking or other sudden maneuvers.

## Lights

### Controls

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator lights*

⇒ *Switching lights on and off*

⇒ *Headlight range adjustment*

⇒ *Instrument panel lighting*

⇒ *Interior and reading lights*

Always obey local vehicle lighting laws.

The driver is always responsible for the correct headlight settings.

### WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

- Always switch on the low beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark and whenever the weather is bad or visibility is poor.

### WARNING

Headlights that are aimed too high and improper use of the headlight flasher or high beams can blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that headlights are properly adjusted.
- Never use the headlight flasher or high beams when they can blind or distract other drivers.



In cool or humid weather, the insides of the headlights, the rear lights, and turn signals can temporarily fog up. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

### Indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

#### Indicator lights in the instrument cluster

Lights up

Meaning ⇒ 

Left or right turn signal.



The indicator light blinks twice as fast if a turn signal is not working on the vehicle.

Check the turn signals on the vehicle.

Rain and light sensor malfunction.



The headlights will not switch on or off automatically when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ *Rain sensor*.



High beams switched on or headlight flashers in use ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.



Light Assist switched on ⇒ *High-beam control (Light Assist)*.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### Indicator lights in the light switch

Lights up	Meaning
	The fog lights are switched on ⇒ <i>Switching lights on and off</i>
	The parking lights are switched on ⇒ <i>Switching lights on and off</i> .
<b>AUTO</b>	The automatic headlights and the daytime running lights are switched on ⇒ <i>Switching lights on and off</i> .

#### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, turn on the emergency flashers, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system could come into contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, oil, or other material that can catch fire.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

#### ⓘ NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlights provide bright, uniform lighting to help you see and be seen. The light comes from an electric arc between two electrodes in the gas-filled bulb. Over time, the electrodes can wear down and the gap between them will get wider. The HID lamp's control unit then increases the voltage to keep the arc's brightness constant. Before they burn out, HID lamps can flicker. A message will then appear in the MFD. This is your reminder to see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service facility to check the headlights.

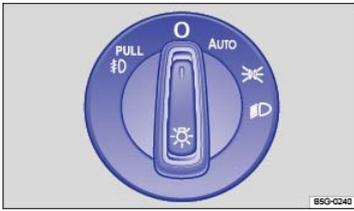


Fig. 99 Headlight switch next to the steering wheel (with fog lights and automatic headlights, if equipped).

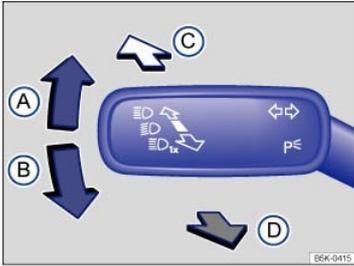


Fig. 100 To the left of the steering wheel: Turn signal and high beam lever.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Adjust the light switch to the desired position ⇒ Fig. 99:		
Symbol	When the ignition is switched off	When the ignition is switched on
0	Fog lights, DRL, and low beams switched off.	Headlights off, daytime running lights (DRL) on.
AUTO	Orientation lighting may be switched on.	Automatic headlights active, DRL on.
	Low beams switched off. The parking lights, DRL, and taillights will stay on as long as the key is in the ignition, or for vehicles with Keyless Access, the driver door is closed.	Headlights, DRL, and taillights switched on.
	Parking lights, DRL, and taillights switched on.	Parking lights, DRL, and taillights switched on.
	Fog lights switched off. The DRL may stay on for some time.	Headlights and fog lights switched on.

**Moving the turn signal and high beam lever to the desired position**

- (A) ⇨ Right turn signal.
- (B) ⇦ Left turn signal.
- (C) Switch on high beams ⇒ . The indicator light lights up.
- (D) Turn on the headlight flasher. The *headlight flasher* turns on the high beams as long as the lever is pulled and manually held in the pulled position. The indicator light lights up.

Move the lever back to the home position to turn the selected feature off.

**Fog lights (if equipped)**

The indicator light in the headlight switch shows that the fog lights are switched on.

- To switch on the fog lights : first turn the light switch to position or **AUTO**, then pull the light switch out to the detent.
- To switch off the fog lights, push the switch back in. To then turn off the headlights, turn the switch to position **0**.

**WARNING**

Daytime running lights and parking lights are not bright enough to let you see ahead or be seen by others when it is dark.

- Always switch on the low-beam headlights at dusk, when it is dark, and whenever the weather is bad or visibility is poor.
- Never use the daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low-beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark.
- The taillights do not come on with the daytime running lights. Unless the taillights are on, a vehicle cannot be seen by others in bad weather, at dusk, or when it is dark.

- Even if automatic headlights (**AUTO**) are switched on, the low-beam headlights may still not come on by themselves in fog or heavy rain. You have to switch on the low-beam headlights manually.

### **WARNING**

Using the turn signals improperly, not using the turn signals, or forgetting to turn off the turn signals can confuse other drivers and lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Always use a turn signal before changing lanes, overtaking another vehicle, or turning.
- Turn off the turn signal after changing lanes, overtaking another vehicle, or turning.

### **WARNING**

Improper use of high beams can distract and blind others, causing accidents and serious injuries.



The turn signals work only when the ignition is switched on. The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is switched off ⇒ *Protecting yourself and the vehicle*.



In cool or humid weather, the insides of the headlights, the rear lights, and turn signals can temporarily fog up. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.

## Headlight range adjustment

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

*For vehicles equipped with halogen headlights:* The headlight range cannot be manually adjusted. If you believe the headlights are not properly adjusted or are not sure, have them checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ [▲](#).

*For vehicles equipped with LED headlights:* The headlights are equipped with an automatic leveling feature that automatically adjusts the headlight range to the vehicle loading condition once the low beams are switched on ⇒ [▲](#).

### **WARNING**

Headlights that are aimed too high because of the way the vehicle is loaded can blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure the headlights are adjusted to loading conditions so that they do not blind others.

### **WARNING**

If the automatic leveling feature of the headlights does not work properly or at all, the headlights could blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Have headlight range adjustment checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Instrument panel lighting

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

### Instrument cluster and switch brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster and switch lighting by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the **Vehicle**, , and **Lights** function keys in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

The brightness of the instrument panel lighting changes in response to a change in lighting around the vehicle, for example, when driving through a tunnel.



The instrument cluster lighting is on when the lights are turned off and the ignition is on. As the lighting around the vehicle fades, the instrument cluster lighting will also fade and eventually turn off. This is to remind the driver to turn on the low beams.

## Interior and reading lights

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)



Rear interior lights on.



Door contact button. Press the button and the interior lights come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened, or the vehicle key is

removed from the ignition. The lights go out about 20 seconds after you close the doors. They also go out when you lock the vehicle or switch on the ignition. Press the button back out again to switch the door contact feature off.

 Reading lights on or off.

### Glove and luggage compartment lights

The glove and luggage compartments may have lights that come on automatically when they are opened and go off when they are closed.



The interior and reading lights go out when you lock the vehicle or a few minutes after you remove the vehicle key from the ignition. This helps to prevent unnecessary drain on the vehicle battery.

## Light features

### Lights – features

#### Parking lights

If the ignition is switched off and the vehicle is locked from the outside with the headlight switch in the  position, the parking lights and DRL in both headlights come on together with both taillights.

If the headlight switch is in the  position when you switch off the ignition, and you do not switch the parking lights off when leaving the vehicle, the parking lights stay on for about 30 minutes before automatically switching off. This feature helps prevent the parking lights from draining the vehicle battery if they were left on unintentionally.

#### 3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating)

Move the turn signal lever up or down slightly, just to the point of resistance, and then let it go. If you have the 3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating) feature switched on in the Infotainment system, the turn signal flashes three times.

If the feature is switched off, the turn signal will blink as long as you hold the lever up or down, and go out when you release the lever.

The 3-blink turn signal (convenience indicating) can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , an Lights function keys → [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

#### Daytime running lights (DRL)

The daytime running lights can help to increase the visibility of your vehicle during the day.

Separate lamps or LEDs are installed in the headlights or in the front bumper for the daytime running lights (DRL).

The daytime running lights switch on whenever the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in position **0**, **AUTO**, or .

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the low-light sensor switches the low beams as well as the instrument and switch lighting on and off automatically.

#### Daytime running lights (DRL) parking feature

Some models are equipped with a daytime running lights (DRL) parking feature that switches the daytime running lights off when the parking brake is engaged and the ignition is switched on.

Function	Action
Switching the DRL off:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch the ignition on.</li> <li>– Turn the light switch to the <b>0</b> position.</li> <li>– Set the parking brake.</li> </ul>
Switching the DRL back on:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Release the parking brake.</li> </ul>

#### Automatic headlights (AUTO)

Your vehicle may be equipped with automatic headlights (**AUTO**), which are a convenience feature only and cannot always recognize all lighting and driving situations.

If the light switch is in the **AUTO** position, both vehicle lighting and instrument and switch lighting are automatically switched on and off in the following situations →

- **Automatic activation:** If the low-light sensor registers darkness, for example, when driving through a tunnel or at dusk **OR** when the rain sensor recognizes rain and switches the windshield wipers on.

- **Automatic deactivation:** If sufficient brightness is registered **OR** the windshield wipers have not moved for several minutes.

If the fog lights are turned on while the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the low beam lights will come on regardless of the brightness outside the vehicle.

You can adjust the level of darkness the vehicle must register before automatically switching on the headlights in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Lights function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*. You can also turn the automatic activation of the headlights with the rain sensors on and off via this menu.

### Cornering lights

Your vehicle may have cornering lights, which are either integrated into the headlights or the fog lights under the front bumper. At speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h), the cornering light on one side of the vehicle will come on automatically when you turn a corner. If you turn to the right, the right cornering light comes on turn left and the left cornering light comes on. The light dims and goes out when the steering wheel is straightened out again.

When you move the selector lever to Reverse (**R**), the cornering lights on both sides of the vehicle may come on so that you can see the area around the vehicle better when backing up.

The cornering lights work only when the headlights are on. If you are using automatic headlights (headlight switch in the **AUTO** position ⇒ *Fig. 99*), they work only when the headlights have been automatically switched on. The cornering lights do not come on when the headlight switch is in the **0** position or when the fog lights themselves have been switched on ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.

### Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)

Vehicles equipped with LED headlights have an Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS), which works only when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position and only at speeds above about 6 mph (10 km/h). The swivel-mounted lamps automatically improve road illumination during cornering.

In vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, the selected driving mode can affect the turning of the lights ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*.

In some models, the headlights will turn independently, even when driving straight ahead. They can adjust automatically, depending on the weather conditions and the speed of the vehicle to better light up the road ahead. The bulbs return to their original position after a short period of time, depending on the vehicle speed.

On vehicles equipped with AFS, the feature can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Lights function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

### Acoustic warning when lights are not switched off

In the following situation, a warning chime will sound if you switch off the ignition and open the driver door. This is to remind you that lights are still on.

- Light switch in position .

A warning chime will not sound when the driver door is opened if the Coming Home feature is switched on.

### WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

- Never use daytime running lights (DRL) to see where you are going. DRL are not bright enough to light up the roadway and be seen by other motorists. You will not be able to see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low-beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark.
- The taillights do not come on when the daytime running lights are switched on and the headlight switch is in position **0** or **AUTO**. A vehicle without taillights on cannot be seen by others in bad weather, at dusk, or when it is dark.
- If automatic headlights (**AUTO**) are switched on, the low-beam headlights still may not be switched on in fog or heavy rain. You have to switch on the low-beam headlights yourself.

### NOTE

Leaving the parking lights on when the ignition is switched off can drain the vehicle battery.



In cool or humid weather, the insides of the headlights, the rear lights, and turn signals can temporarily fog up. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.

## High-beam control (Light Assist)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Light Assist automatic high beam control system.

### Light Assist high beam control

Light Assist switches the high beam headlights on at speeds above about 37 mph (60 km/h), depending on the surroundings and traffic conditions, and off again at speeds below about 18 mph (30 km/h), within the limits of the system ⇒ . The system is controlled by a camera mounted in the rearview mirror base.

Light Assist generally detects well-lit areas such as towns and switches the high beam headlights off when driving through these areas.

### Switching Light Assist on

- Switch the ignition on and turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.
- Push the turn signal lever forward (out of the home position) ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.

When Light Assist is switched on, the  indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display.

### Switching Light Assist off

- When the high beam headlights are on, pull the turn signal lever back to the home position.
- **OR:** Turn the light switch to a position **other than AUTO** ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.
- **OR:** Switch the ignition off.
- **OR:** Push the turn signal lever forward to switch the high beam headlights on manually. Light Assist switches off.

### Adjusting Light Assist sensitivity

Light Assist has two sensitivity levels.

- *Increase sensitivity:* Push the turn signal forward from the home position and hold for about 15 seconds. The  indicator light in the instrument cluster display flashes 3 times to confirm the increased sensitivity level.
- *Reset sensitivity to the factory setting:* Push the turn signal lever forward from the home position a second time and hold for about 15 seconds. The  indicator light in the instrument cluster display flashes (quickly) 3 times. **OR:** Turn the ignition off and back on again.

### Light Assist system limits

The following conditions can prevent Light Assist from switching the high beam headlights off in time or from switching them off at all:

- Poorly lit roads with highly reflective signs.
- If there are others on the road with insufficient lighting, such as pedestrians or bicycles.
- In tight curves, when traffic is partially hidden, on steep hills, or in valleys.
- On roads with a center barrier where the driver can clearly see oncoming traffic above the barrier, for example, a truck driver.
- If the camera is not working properly or the power is interrupted.
- In fog, snow, or heavy rain.
- When there is dust or sand in the air.
- If the windshield is damaged in the area of the camera.
- If the camera's visual field is fogged over, dirty, or covered by a sticker, snow, or ice.

### WARNING

Never let the increased convenience provided by Light Assist tempt you into taking extra risks. The system is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.

- Always be prepared to control the headlights yourself and to adapt them to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Light Assist may not detect all traffic situations correctly and function may be restricted in certain situations.
- If the camera's area of view is dirty, covered, or damaged, Light Assist may not work properly. Changes to the vehicle lighting system, such as by adding additional headlights, can also change the way the systems work.

### NOTE

To help the Light Assist system function properly, note the following:

- Always keep the windshield in front of the camera clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the windshield for damage in the area of the camera.



The headlight flasher and the high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time with the turn signal lever ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.



The illuminated display on an electronic device, for example, an external navigation device, may prevent the Light Assist system from functioning properly.

## Coming Home and Leaving Home features (orientation lighting)

Your vehicle may be equipped with Coming Home and Leaving Home features, which light up the area around the vehicle when entering or exiting the vehicle in the dark.

The Coming Home and Leaving Home features are controlled automatically by a low-light sensor.

### Switching on the Coming Home feature

- Switch off the ignition.

The Coming Home feature is switched on when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position and the low-light sensor registers *darkness*.

The *delay period* starts once the last vehicle door or the trunk lid is closed.

### Switching off the Coming Home feature

- The Coming Home feature switches off automatically after the preset delay period is over.
- **OR** If a vehicle door or the trunk lid is still open about 30 seconds after activation.
- **OR** The light switch is turned to the **0** position.
- **OR** The ignition is switched on.

### Switching on the Leaving Home feature

- Unlock the vehicle.

The Leaving Home feature is switched on when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position and the low-light sensor registers *darkness*.

### Switching off the Leaving Home feature

- The Leaving Home feature switches off automatically after the preset delay period is over.
- **OR** When the vehicle is locked.
- **OR** The light switch is turned to the **0** position.
- **OR** The ignition is switched on.



The length of time the lights stay on can be adjusted or the feature can be activated and deactivated in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Lights function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.



If the Coming Home feature is switched on and the driver door is opened, no warning chime will sound to alert you that the lights are still on.

## Ambient (background) lighting

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may have ambient lighting in the doors and footwells, which comes on when the ignition and the headlights are switched on.

On appropriately equipped vehicles, you can adjust the brightness of the ambient lighting in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Ambient lighting function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

## LED lights on the vehicle

Your vehicle may be equipped with the following LED lights:

- Taillights, brake lights, turn signals, back-up lights, and license plate lighting on the rear of the vehicle.
- Headlights, daytime running lights (DRL), turn signals, and side marker lights on the front of the vehicle.

Individual LEDs cannot be replaced. If individual LED lights fail, other LED lights may also fail. In this case, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorize Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## Vision

### Windshield wipers and washer



#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator lights*

⇒ *Windshield wiper lever*

⇒ *Windshield wiper functions*

⇒ *Rain sensor*

Windshield washer fluid without enough frost protection can freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

- Use the windshield washer system with enough frost protection for winter temperatures.
- Never use the windshield wipers/washers when it is freezing without first defrosting the windshield. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

### ⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always replace wiper blades that are worn, damaged, or do not keep the windshield clear ⇒ *Cleaning and changing the windshield wiper blades*.

### ! NOTE

To help prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor when it is cold outside, always make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield **before** operating the wipers. Using the windshield wiper service position can be helpful in cold weather so the wipers do not freeze to the windshield ⇒ *Windshield wiper service position*.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

## Indicator lights

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Proper response
	Windshield and rear window washer fluid level too low.  Refill windshield washer reservoir at the next opportunity ⇒ <i>Windshield washer fluid</i> .
	Rain and light sensor malfunction.  Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <i>Rain sensor</i> .
	Windshield and/or rear window wiper malfunction.  Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### ! NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Windshield wiper lever

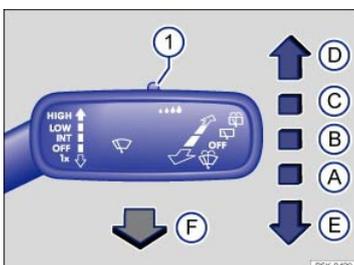


Fig. 101 Operating the front windshield wipers.

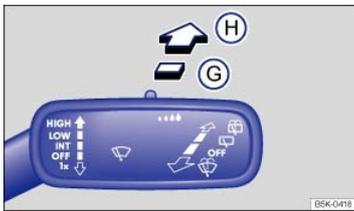


Fig. 102 Operating the rear wiper.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Move the lever to the desired position ⇒ Fig. 101 ⇒ ① :

- Ⓐ OFF Wiper switched off.
- Ⓑ INT Intermittent wiping for the front windshield. Rain sensor active (if equipped).
- Ⓒ LOW Slow wiper speed.
- Ⓓ HIGH Fast wiper speed.
- Ⓔ One-tap wiping – brief wiping. Hold the lever down longer to wipe more often.
- Ⓕ Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to activate the front windshield washers, then release.
- ① Switch for adjusting the windshield wiper interval settings (vehicles without a rain sensor) or the sensitivity of the rain sensor (vehicles with a rain sensor).

Move the lever to the desired position ⇒ Fig. 102 ⇒ ① :

- Ⓖ Intermittent wiping for the rear window. The wiper wipes about every 6 seconds.
- Ⓗ Press the lever forward as far as it will go to activate the rear window washers, then release to stay in intermittent wiping mode (position Ⓒ). Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to turn the rear wiper off.

- This feature can be turned on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Mirrors and wipers function key: ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) .

#### NOTE

To help prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor when it is cold outside, always make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield before switching on the ignition. Using the service position can be helpful in cold weather so the wipers do not freeze to the windshield ⇒ [Windshield wiper service position](#).

- If the ignition is switched off while the wipers are running, the wipers will continue at the same wiping speed when the ignition is switched on again. Frost, ice, snow, leaves, and other objects on the windshield can damage the wipers and the wiper motor.
- Remove snow and ice from the wipers before you begin driving.
- If the wiper blades freeze to the windshield, loosen them carefully. Volkswagen recommends using a deicing spray.

#### NOTE

Never switch on the windshield wipers when the windshield is dry because the windshield can be scratched.



On some vehicles, the windshield wipers work only if the ignition is switched on and the engine hood is closed. The windshield wipers turn off automatically when the engine hood is opened. The rear window wiper turns off when the trunk lid is opened.



If there is something on the windshield, the wiper will try to wipe it away. If it continues to block the wiper, the wiper will stop moving. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

## Windshield wiper functions

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Wiper performance when the vehicle is not moving:

The wiper speed changes temporarily to the next lower speed.

### Wiper performance during intermittent wiping:

Speed-dependent interval control: The higher the vehicle speed, the faster the wipers move.

### Heated washer nozzles (if equipped)

The heating thaws frozen washer nozzles, but not the fluid supply hoses. When the ignition is switched on, the heat applied to the washer nozzles is automatically regulated depending on the outside air temperature.

### Headlight washer system (if equipped)

The headlight washer system cleans the headlight glass.

If the ignition and the headlights (high or low beams) are switched on, the headlights are cleaned the first time and every fifth time the front windshield washers are activated. This happens only when the low or high beams are on when the windshield wiper lever is pulled towards the steering wheel. However, the headlights must still be washed by hand periodically to get rid of hard-to-remove dirt (for example, insect splatter).

To help make sure that the headlight washer system works during winter weather, always keep the headlight washer nozzles free of snow and remove any ice with deicer spray before driving. Use a deicer spray to remove any ice.

### Rain sensor

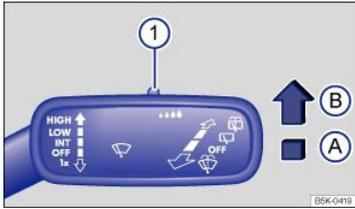


Fig. 103 Windshield wiper lever: Adjusting the rain sensor ① (if equipped).

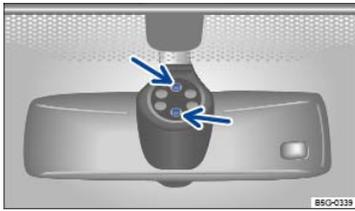


Fig. 104 Inside the front windshield above the inside mirror: Sensitive rain sensor surface (arrows).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When switched on, the rain sensor automatically shortens or lengthens the time between wiping intervals depending on how hard it is raining ⇒ .

### Activating and deactivating the rain sensor

- Position **A**: Rain sensor off (windshield wiper lever home position).
- Position **B**: Rain sensor active - automatic wiping as needed.

After switching the ignition off and back on again, the rain sensor stays on and works again when the wiper lever is in position **B**.

The automatic wipe function of the rain sensor can be turned on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Mirrors and wipers function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

### Setting the rain sensor's sensitivity

The rain sensor's sensitivity can be adjusted manually ⇒ [Fig. 103](#) ① ⇒ .

- Move switch to the right – high sensitivity.
- Move switch to the left – low sensitivity.

### Possible reasons for changes in the way the rain sensor works

The rain sensor may misread what is happening in the *detection zone of its sensitive rain-sensor surface* ⇒ [Fig. 104](#) (arrows) and not work for a number of reason which may include:

- **Worn out wiper blades:** Worn out wiper blades may leave a film of water or wiping streaks; this can cause the wipers to run longer, to wipe more often, or to wipe continuously at high speed.
- **Insects:** Insects hitting the windshield may trigger the wipers.
- **Salt streaks:** Salt streaks on the windshield from winter driving can cause wiping more often or continuously on glass that is almost dry.
- **Dirt:** Caked-on dust, wax, any other buildup on the windshield (lotus effect), or car-wash detergent residue can lower the rain sensor's sensitivity and cause it to react too slowly or not at all.
- **Crack or chip in the windshield:** If a stone hits and chips the windshield while the rain sensor is on, this will trigger a wiper cycle. After that, the rain sensor will recognize the change and recalibrate itself to respond to the sensitive surface's reduced detection zone. Depending on the size of the chip, the sensor's reaction pattern may or may not change.

## WARNING

The rain sensor cannot always recognize rain and activate the wipers.

- Switch the wipers on manually when water on the windshield reduces visibility.



Clean the rain sensor's sensitive surface ⇒ *Fig. 104* (arrows) regularly and check the wiper blades for wear or damage.



To remove wax and coats of polish safely, Volkswagen recommends using an alcohol-based windshield cleaner.

## Mirrors



### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Inside mirror*

⇒ *Outside mirrors*

The outside mirrors and the inside mirror help you see and adapt your driving to traffic behind you. Remember that the inside and outside rearview mirrors will not show everything behind you. There can be blind spots. Blind spots can be significantly larger if the mirrors are not properly adjusted.

For your driving safety, it is important that you properly adjust the outside mirrors and the inside mirror before you start driving ⇒ .

## WARNING

Adjusting mirrors when the vehicle is moving can cause driver distraction, accidents, and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust the rearview mirrors when the vehicle is not moving.
- Always be aware of what is happening around the vehicle when changing lanes, passing, turning, or parking. Another vehicle, pedestrian, or object could be in your blind spot.
- Always make sure mirrors are properly adjusted and the view to the rear is not reduced by moisture, ice, snow, or other things.

## WARNING

Self-dimming rearview mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which can leak if the mirror glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes, and respiratory system.

- Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte fluid can irritate the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
- If electrolyte fluid gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
- If electrolyte fluid contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
- If swallowed, and the person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a medical professional.

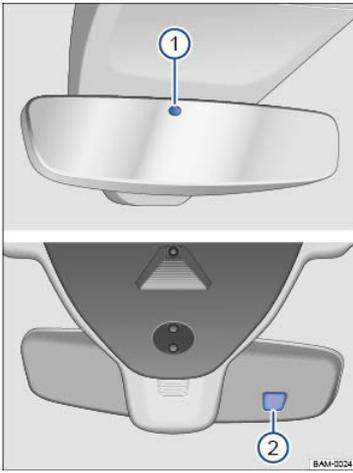
## NOTE

Broken glass in the self-dimming rearview mirrors can cause electrolyte fluid leakage. Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte fluid immediately with clear water and a sponge.

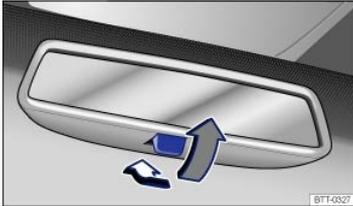


Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

## Inside mirror



**Fig. 105 On the windshield: Self-dimming rearview mirror.**



**Fig. 106 On the windshield: Manually adjustable rearview mirror.**

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Adjust the inside mirror to make sure that there is good visibility through the rear window.

For example, visibility through the rear window could be impaired if there is a sunshade on the rear window or clothing on the luggage compartment cover, or if the rear window is covered with ice, snow, or dirt.

### Self-dimming rearview mirror (if equipped)

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors in the front ⇒ [Fig. 105①](#) and back ⇒ [Fig. 105②](#) of the rearview mirror measure the amount of light shining into the vehicle from the rear and from the front, respectively.

If the ignition is on, the mirror *automatically* darkens depending on the amount of light shining into the vehicle from the rear.

Do not attach external navigation devices to the windshield or in the vicinity of the self-dimming inside mirror ⇒ [▲](#).

The self-dimming feature is deactivated when you shift the transmission to reverse or switch on the interior lights or the reading light.

### Manually adjustable inside mirror

Home position: Lever on the bottom edge of the mirror points forward.

To adjust to non-glare visibility, move the lever so that it points down ⇒ [Fig. 106](#).

### WARNING

The illuminated display on an electronic device, for example, an external navigation device, may disrupt the self-dimming function of the rearview mirror, which may cause a crash and serious injuries.

- If the self-dimming function malfunctions, you may not be able to use the rearview mirror to help judge the distance between traffic or other objects behind you.



If the light striking the sensor is filtered or blocked (such as by a sunshade), the self-dimming inside mirror will not work properly or may not work at all.

## Outside mirrors



**Fig. 107 In the driver door: Adjusting knob for the outside mirrors.**

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When the ignition is switched on, turn the knob in the driver door ⇒ [Fig. 107](#) to adjust the outside mirrors.

- Fold the outside mirror in toward the vehicle body (if equipped) ⇒ [▲](#).
- Switch on outside mirror heating. Heats only at outside air temperatures below +68 °F (+20 °C).
- L** Adjust the left outside mirror by pressing the knob to left/right and up/down.
- R** Adjust the right outside mirror by pressing the knob to left/right and up/down.
- 0** Neutral position. No heating or adjustment possible.

#### Synchronous mirror adjustment (if equipped)

- To turn on the synchronous mirror adjustment feature in the Infotainment system, press the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, and Mirrors and wipers function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).
- Turn the outside mirror adjusting knob to the **L** position.
- Adjust the left outside mirror. The right (passenger) outside mirror will automatically adjust at the same time.
- If needed, correct the position of the right mirror by turning the adjusting knob to the **R** position.

#### Automatic mirror folding when parked (if equipped)

The adjusting knob must be in position , **L**, **R** or **0** for the outside mirrors to automatically fold in when the vehicle is parked.

- Press the **MENU** function key followed by the Vehicle, , and Mirrors and wipers function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).
- When the vehicle is locked from the outside, the outside mirrors automatically fold in.
- When the vehicle is unlocked from the outside, the outside mirrors automatically fold out.

When the adjusting knob is in the position, the outside mirrors remain folded in.

#### Passenger side mirror lowering in reverse gear (if equipped)

- Choose the remote control vehicle key that will be used with the settings about to be made.
- Unlock the vehicle using this key.
- Set the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the ignition.
- To turn the passenger side mirror lowering feature on in the Infotainment system, press the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Mirrors and wipers function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).
- Shift the transmission to Reverse (**R**).
- Adjust the passenger outside mirror for a clear view of the curb, for example.
- The adjusted mirror position is automatically stored and assigned to the vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.

#### Recalling the passenger side mirror settings

- Turn the adjusting knob for the outside mirrors to the **R** position.
- Shift the transmission to Reverse (**R**) with the ignition switched on.
- The passenger mirror moves back to the regular position when the vehicle moves forward faster than about 10 mph (15 km/h) or the adjusting knob is moved from **R** to another position.

#### WARNING

Improper use of the folding outside mirrors can cause personal injury.

- Always make sure that nobody is in the way when folding the mirrors in or out.
- Make sure that you do not get your finger caught between the mirror and the mirror base when moving the mirrors.

## ⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly estimating distances with the right outside mirror can cause collisions and serious injury.

- The right outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. This widens your field of vision. But vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are.
- If you use the right outside mirror to judge distances from vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause a crash and serious injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to more accurately judge distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.
- Always make sure you have a clear view to the rear of the vehicle.

## ! NOTE

- Always fold in the outside mirrors when taking the vehicle through an automatic car wash.
- The electric motor in the electrically folding outside mirrors may be damaged if the mirrors are folded by hand.

✿ To reduce fuel consumption, use outside mirror heating only when needed.



When first switched on, outside mirror heating works with maximum heat for about 2 minutes.



If power mirror adjustment does not work, the outside mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edges of the mirror surface.

## Sun protection

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Sun visors*

⇒ *Power sunshade in the sunroof*

⇒ *Windshield made of heat-insulating glass*

## ⚠ WARNING

Sun visors and sunshades can reduce visibility.

- Always stow sun visors and sunshades when not needed to block sun glare.

## Sun visors

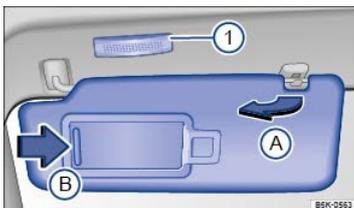


Fig. 108 Sun visor.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Sun visor adjustment

- Flip the sun visor down toward the windshield.
- Lift it out of the retaining clip ⇒ Fig. 108A.
- Swivel the sun visor toward the door.

### Additional sun visor positions

On some vehicles, you can slide the sun visor toward the rear of the vehicle after swiveling it toward the door.

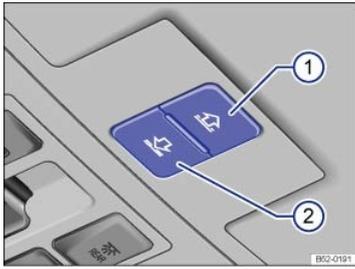
### Vanity mirror and lighting

A vanity mirror is behind a cover in the sun visor. When the cover is slid open ⇒ Fig. 108B, the light ⇒ Fig. 108C comes on.

The light goes out when you shut the cover or if you flip the sun visor up again.

 The vanity mirror light goes out after several minutes. This helps to prevent unnecessary drain on the vehicle battery.

## Power sunshade in the sunroof



**Fig. 109** In the roof console: Buttons for the power sunshade.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The power sunshade works when the ignition is switched on.

When the power sunroof is fully tilted, the sunshade is automatically moved to the ventilation position. The sunshade also stays in this position when the sunroof is closed.

### Opening and closing the sunshade

The buttons ⇒ [Fig. 109](#) ① and ② have two detents.

Press the button to the first detent to completely or partially open or close the sunshade. Press the button briefly to the second detent to activate the one-touch feature (automatic opening or closing). Press the button again to stop the one-touch feature.

- *Open the sunshade:* Press button ① to the first detent. One-touch feature: Press ① to the second detent.
- *Close the sunshade:* Press button ② to the first detent. One-touch feature: Press ② to the second detent.
- *Stop the one-touch feature:* Press button ① or ② again.

You can still use the sunshade for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or passenger door has not been opened.

### Pinch protection for the power sunshade

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing the power sunshade ⇒ . If the power sunshade meets resistance while closing or there is something in the way, the sunshade opens again immediately. When the sunshade is closed again after a short time, it will close without pinch protection.

- Check why the power sunshade did not close.
- Try to close the power sunshade again.
- If the power sunshade still cannot close, the power sunshade will stop where the resistance is located. The power sunshade will close the next time without pinch protection.

### Closing the power sunshade without pinch protection

- Within about 5 seconds after the sunshade has stopped, press and hold button ⇒ [Fig. 109](#) ② until the power sunshade closes completely.
- **The power sunshade will now close without pinch protection!**
- If the power sunshade still will not close, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

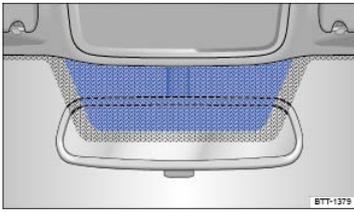
## WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power sunshade will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing the power sunshade.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding the pinch protection to close the power sunshade!
- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the edge of the roof; injuries may result.

 When the sunroof is open, the power sunshade can be closed only to the front edge of the sunroof.

## Windshield made of heat-insulating glass



**Fig. 110 Heat-reflective windshield with communications window (blue shaded area).**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

Windshields made of insulating glass have a transparent metallic infrared-reflecting coating.

There is an uncoated area (communications window) just above the inside rearview mirror ⇒ Fig. 110. This serves as a communications window for transmitting signals to and from electronic components and accessories.

The uncoated area must not be blocked on the inside or outside or covered with stickers because this can cause the electronic components to malfunction.

## Climate control

### Heating and air conditioning

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Overview of the front controls*

⇒ *Climatronic controls in the Infotainment system*

⇒ *Air recirculation*

⇒ *Seat heating*

⇒ *Steering wheel heating*

⇒ *Tips and troubleshooting*

Your vehicle may have the following equipment:

- Manual air conditioning
- Climatronic

The **manual air conditioning** and the **Climatronic** climate control system cool and dehumidify the air. The systems are most effective when the windows and sunroof are closed.

On vehicles with Climatronic climate control, Climatronic information appears in the Climatronic display and/or on the screen of the factory-installed Infotainment system. If the box in the function key is checked , the function is switched on.

#### Air vents

To help ensure sufficient heating, cooling, and ventilation in the passenger compartment, never close the air vents completely ⇒ *Passenger compartment*.

- To open and close the air vents, turn the respective thumbwheel (magnified view) in the desired direction. When the thumbwheel is turned all the way toward position ►, the air vent is closed.
- Use the lever on the vent grille to adjust the airflow direction.

Additional air vents are located in the instrument panel, in the footwells, as well as in the rear area of the passenger compartment.

#### WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents that cause serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow and condensation for good visibility to the front, sides, and rear.
- Always make sure you know how to properly use the climate control system as well as the rear window defroster that you will need for good visibility.
- Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.
- Never use air recirculation for long periods of time. When the air conditioner is off and recirculation mode is on, condensation can quickly form on the windows and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not needed.

## ⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never switch off the fan for a long period of time and never use air recirculation for a long period of time because no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.

## 📌 NOTE

- If you think the air conditioner is not working properly or may be damaged, switch it off to help prevent more damage. Have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Air conditioner repair requires specialized knowledge and special tools. Volkswagen recommends that you see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system can leave residue on the evaporator and on the dust and pollen filter, resulting in permanent odors whenever the air conditioner is switched on.
- The heating elements for the rear defroster are on the inside of the rear window. Do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear window and never clean the inside of the windows with corrosive, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents, materials, or chemicals that could damage the heating elements.

## 📌 NOTE

Do not place food, medications, or other temperature-sensitive things in front of the air vents. Food, medications, and other things that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flow from the vents.



If the air conditioner is switched off, the fresh outside air will not be dehumidified. To help keep the windows from fogging over, Volkswagen recommends leaving the air conditioner (compressor) switched on. Press the **A/C** button. The indicator light in the button must light up.



When it is very hot and humid outside, **water condensation** can drip from the air conditioner evaporator and form a puddle under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.



Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of ice, snow, and leaves in order to maintain proper functioning of the heating and ventilation systems.



Maximum heating output and defrosting performance are not possible until the engine has reached operating temperature.



Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, driver personalization, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → *Driver personalization*.

## Overview of the front controls

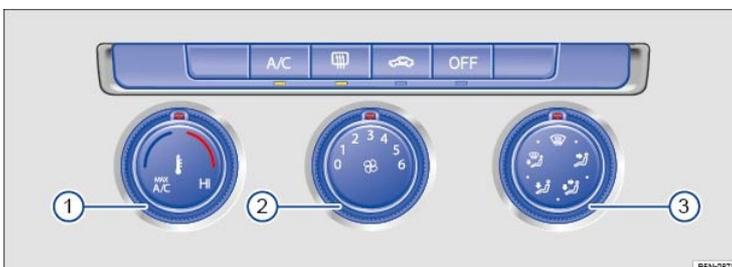


Fig. 111 In the center console: Manual controls.

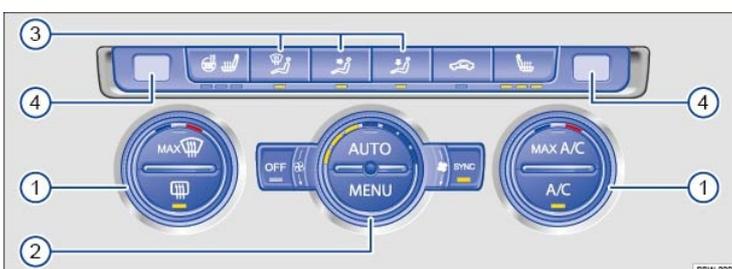


Fig. 112 In the center console: Climatronic controls (buttons may vary depending on equipment).

If a function is switched on, an indicator light in or under the button lights up.

### Turning the system off

- Press the **OFF** button.
- **OR: Manual air conditioning:** Turn the fan knob to  ⇒ Fig. 111②.
- **OR: Climatronic:** Turn the fan knob as far left as it will go ⇒ Fig. 112②
- **OR:** Press the **MENU** button ⇒ Fig. 112② to open the Climatronic menu in the Infotainment system and switch the system off ⇒ *Climatronic controls in the Infotainment system*.

If the system is switched off, the indicator light in or under the **OFF** button lights up.

### A/C – Air conditioner

Press the **A/C** button on the manual or Climatronic controls to switch the air conditioner on or off.

### AUTO – Automatic regulation (Climatronic only)

Press the **AUTO** button to switch on automatic regulation. The indicator light in the button lights up.

Automatic regulation controls temperature, fan speed, and air distribution. If you change the fan speed or air distribution manually, the automatic regulation switches off.

### MAXA/C – Maximum cooling

- *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the temperature knob ⇒ Fig. 111① all the way to the left (**MAXA/C** position).
- *Climatronic:* Press the **MAXA/C** button for maximum air conditioner cooling. The air recirculation and cooling system are switched on automatically, and the air distribution is automatically set to position .

### ... – Temperature

- *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the temperature knob ⇒ Fig. 111① to set the temperature.
- *Climatronic:* Turn the outside knobs ⇒ Fig. 112① to set different temperatures for the driver and passenger sides. The displays above the knobs  show the set temperature.

### ... – Fan speed

Turn the middle knob ⇒ Fig. 111② or ⇒ Fig. 112② to adjust the fan speed.

*Climatronic:* LEDs in the knob light up to indicate the current fan speed. When automatic regulation (**AUTO**) is switched on, the fan speed is not indicated in the knob

### Air distribution

- *Manual air conditioning:* Turn the knob ⇒ Fig. 111③ to direct air flow in the desired direction.
- *Climatronic:* Press the buttons ⇒ Fig. 112③ to direct air flow in the desired direction. When automatic regulation (**AUTO**) is switched on, air flow is automatically adjusted to a comfortable level.

: Air distribution to the upper instrument panel outlets.

: Air distribution to the footwells.

: Manual air conditioning only: Air distribution to the upper instrument panel outlets and footwells.

: Manual air conditioning only: Air distribution to the windshield and footwells.

: Air distribution to the windshield.

### – Defog/defrost

*Manual air conditioning:* Turn the right knob to position  ⇒ Fig. 111③ to defrost the windshield as quickly as possible. The cooling system switches on automatically to dehumidify the air. When the defrost function is switched on, the air recirculation mode cannot be switched on.

*Climatronic:* Press the **MAX**  button ⇒ Fig. 112① to defrost the windshield as quickly as possible. The incoming outside air is directed to the windshield, and air recirculation automatically switches off. Humidity is removed from the air at temperatures above about +38 °F (+3 °C), and the blower is set to a high speed.

### – Air recirculation mode

Press the  button to switch on manual air recirculation ⇒ *Air recirculation*.

### MENU – Settings in the Infotainment system (Climatronic only)

Press the **MENU** button ⇒ [Fig. 112②](#) to open the air conditioning settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ [Climatronic controls in the Infotainment system](#) .

### **SYNC – Synchronize temperature settings (Climatronic only)**

Press the **SYNC** button to apply the temperature settings for the driver side to the passenger side: If the indicator light in the **SYNC** button lights up, the temperature settings for the driver side also apply to the passenger side.

Press the button or turn the temperature knob for the passenger side to set a different temperature for the passenger side. The indicator light in the button goes out

### **– Seat heating and steering wheel heating (button varies depending on equipment)**

Press the  or  buttons to switch the seat heating on or off ⇒ [Seat heating](#) .

To synchronize seat heating and steering wheel heating, see ⇒ [Synchronizing seat heating and steering wheel heating](#) .

### **– Rear window defroster**

Press the  button to defrost the rear window. The rear window defroster works only when the engine is running and switches off automatically after 10 minutes or less.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Never switch off the fan for a long time because no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.

## **! NOTE**

To help prevent damage to the rear window defroster, do not place stickers over the heating lines inside the vehicles.

## **Climatronic controls in the Infotainment system**

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [⚠ Introduction to the subject](#)

For vehicles equipped with the Climatronic climate control system, various settings can also be adjusted via the Infotainment system.

### **Opening the climate control settings menu**

Press the **MENU** ⇒ [Fig. 112②](#) button on the Climatronic controls.

### **Climatronic settings display**

The current air conditioning settings are displayed in the upper section of the screen, for example, the temperatures that are currently set for the driver and passenger sides.

Blue arrows indicate that cool air is flowing from the vents, while red arrows indicate that warm air is flowing from the vents.

### **Operation via the Infotainment system**

Tap the corresponding function key to switch a function on or off, or to select a submenu.

The following menu items may be available, depending on vehicle equipment.

- OFF** Tap to switch the Climatronic on (white) or off (yellow). The indicator light in the **OFF** button lights up when Climatronic is switched off.
- SYNC** Apply the temperature settings for the driver side to the passenger side. The indicator light in the **SYNC** button lights up when the feature is active.
-  Switch the steering wheel heating on or off.

### **Climate control settings submenu <sup>(R)</sup>**

- Switch automatic air recirculation on or off ⇒ [Air recirculation](#) .
- Choose between the following levels for steering wheel heating ⇒ [Steering wheel heating](#) :
  - Low
  - Medium
  - High

### **⊙ Climate control settings submenu**

-  Adjust fan speed.
- A/C** Switch the air conditioner on or off.
-  Adjust air distribution.
-  Switch air recirculation mode on or off.

## Presets – Submenu

**AUTO** Tap for automatic temperature control, fan speed, and air distribution. The indicator light in the **AUTO** button lights up.

**MAX A/C** Tap for maximum air conditioner cooling. The indicator light in the **MAX A/C** button lights up.

**MAX DEF** Tap for maximum defog/defrost. The indicator light in the **MAX DEF** button lights up.

**MANUAL** Displays only when the climate control system is in manual mode. Tap the blue bar at the left of each function key showing the current temperature to decrease the temperature. Tap the red bar at the right of each function key to increase the temperature.

## Air recirculation

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

### General information

There are different types of air recirculation:

	Manual air recirculation.
Automatic air recirculation mode (Climatronic only).	

The air recirculation mode helps prevent outside air from entering the vehicle interior.

In very hot outside temperatures, temporarily switch to manual air recirculation in order to cool the vehicle interior faster.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is switched off in the following situations ⇒  :

- *Manually:* The **MAX DEF** button is pushed (Climatronic) or the air distribution knob is turned to  (manual air conditioning).
- *Automatically:* A sensor detects conditions that could cause the windows to fog up.

### Switching manual air recirculation on and off

*Switching on:* Press the  button. The indicator light under the button lights up.

*Switching off:* Press the  button. The indicator light under the button goes out.

### Switching the automatic air recirculation mode on and off (if equipped)

- Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic controls.
- Tap the  function key.
- Switch automatic recirculation mode on or off by tapping the Automatic air recirculation function key.

If the box in the function key is checked , the automatic recirculation mode is switched on.

### Features of automatic air recirculation mode

In automatic air recirculation mode, fresh air enters the passenger compartment. If the system detects an increased concentration of pollutants in the outside air, it automatically switches to air recirculation. As soon as the pollutant level is back in the normal range, air recirculation is switched off.

Unpleasant odors cannot be detected by the system.

To prevent condensation from forming on the windows, air recirculation does **not** automatically switch on in certain situations.

### WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never use air recirculation mode over an extended period of time, since no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.
- When the air conditioner is off and recirculation mode is on, condensation can quickly form on the windows and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not needed.

### NOTE

Do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system can leave residue on the evaporator and on the dust and pollen filter, resulting in permanent odors whenever the air conditioner is switched on.



**Climatronic:** When backing up and while the automatic wiper/washer is operating, air recirculation is briefly activated to help keep exhaust fumes from getting into the passenger compartment.



In very hot outside temperatures, temporarily switch to manual air recirculation in order to cool the vehicle interior faster.

## Seat heating

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a seat heating feature for the front seats.

### Using seat heating

- **Switching on:** Press the or button. Seat heating is switched on to maximum.
- **Adjusting:** Press the or button repeatedly until the desired heating level is set.
- **Switching off:** Press the or button repeatedly until all indicator lights are off.

To sync seat heating and steering wheel heating, see ⇒ [Synchronizing seat heating and steering wheel heating](#) .

- **Switching on:** Press the or button. Seat heating is switched on to maximum.
- **Adjusting:** Press the or button repeatedly until the desired heating level is set.
- **Switching off:** Press the or button repeatedly until all indicator lights are off.

The seat heating switches off every time the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is switched back on, the seat heating for the driver seat may switch back on automatically to the previous setting. The seat heating for all other seats must be turned on and adjusted again.

### When should seat heating not be used?

Do not use the seat heating if any of the following conditions apply:

- If you or a passenger suffers from a low level of perceived pain or a lowered awareness of pain as from medication, paralysis, or chronic illness (e.g., diabetes) ⇒ .
- If the seat is not being used.
- If there is a child restraint installed on the seat.
- If there is a blanket or seat cover on the seat.
- If the seat is damp or wet.
- If the outside temperature or the temperature inside the passenger compartment is +77 °F (+25 °C) or higher.

### WARNING

Certain medical conditions, such as paralysis and diabetes, and certain medications can increase the risk of serious burns when the seat heating feature is switched on.

- Vehicle occupants who have a low level of perceived pain or a lowered awareness of pain are at risk of serious burns to the back, buttocks, and legs that take a long time to heal or may never heal completely.
- Never use the seat heating feature if you or your passengers are at risk of being burned because of a medical condition. Take regular breaks and get out of the vehicle, particularly on long trips. Consult your doctor for advice regarding your specific condition.
- Never let exposed skin remain in contact with the seat upholstery when the seat heating is being used.

### WARNING

A wet seat can cause the seat heating to malfunction and increase the risk of serious burns.

- Always make sure the seats are dry before using the seat heating.
- Never sit on the seat with wet clothes.
- Never put damp or wet things including clothes on the seat.
- Never spill liquids on the seats.

### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to electrical and other parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.
- Liquids, sharp objects and things that do not let the heat in the seat escape into the air, including, for example, a child restraint, a blanket, or seat covers on the seat can damage seat heating.
- If you smell an odor, immediately shut off seat heating and have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle with seat heating that originally had cloth upholstery. The seat heating elements for seats with cloth seats will

overheat if the cloth upholstery is replaced with leather upholstery.

 Switch off seat heating when it is not needed to help reduce unnecessary fuel consumption.

## Steering wheel heating

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Some vehicles with Climatronic controls are equipped with a steering wheel heating feature. The heated steering wheel feature only works when the engine is running.

### Switching steering wheel heating on and off in the Infotainment system

- Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic controls.
- Tap the  function key to switch the steering wheel heating on or off.

### Synchronizing seat heating and steering wheel heating

- Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic controls.
- Tap the  function key.
- Tap the Sync seat and steering wheel heating function key to synchronize seat and steering wheel heating.
- Press the  button on the Climatronic controls to adjust both functions at the same time.

### Adjusting the temperature setting

- Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic controls.
- Tap the  function key.
- Set the steering wheel heating to **Low, Medium, or High**.

The selected setting will be saved after the ignition has been switched off. The temperature level for the steering wheel heating is unrelated to the temperature setting for the seat heating.

### Automatic deactivation

The steering wheel heating switches off automatically if any of the following conditions apply:

- If the driver seat heating is switched off (and Sync seat and steering wheel heating is turned on in the Infotainment system).
- If the overall energy consumption is too high.
- If the heated steering wheel system malfunctions.

## Tips and troubleshooting

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The following tips will help you use the climate control system correctly.

### If the climate control system switches off automatically or the system will not switch on

The air conditioner may not switch on for one of the following reasons:

- The engine is not running.
- The fan is switched off.
- The air conditioner fuse has blown.
- The outside air temperature is colder than about (+38 °F (+3 °C)).
- The air conditioner compressor has been temporarily switched off due to excessive engine coolant temperature.
- There is another malfunction in the vehicle. Have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Settings for optimum visibility

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of ice, snow, and leaves so that the heating and ventilation systems can work properly and to help prevent the windshield from fogging up.
- The air coming out of the vents flows through the passenger compartment and through the vents in the luggage compartment. Do not cover these slots with clothing or other things.
- Maximum heating output and defrosting performance are not possible until the engine has reached operating temperature.

## Recommended settings for manual air conditioning

- Switch off the air recirculation.
- Set the fan to **1** or **2**.
- Turn the temperature knob to the center position.
- Open and adjust all air vents in the instrument panel ⇒ [Heating and air conditioning](#).
- Turn the air distribution knob to the desired setting.
- Press the **A/C** button to turn on the air conditioner. The indicator light in the button lights up. The air will be dehumidified during cooling.

## Recommended settings for Climatronic

- Press the **AUTO** button.
- Set the temperature to +72 °F (+22 °C).
- Open and adjust all air vents in the instrument panel ⇒ [Heating and air conditioning](#).

## Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter reduces the entry of pollutants into the passenger compartment.

The dust and pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals recommended in ⇒ Booklet *Warranty and Maintenance*, so that the air conditioner can work properly.

If the effectiveness of the filter decreases prematurely due to operating the vehicle where the outside air is heavily polluted, the dust and pollen filter should be replaced more frequently than indicated.

## Changing the temperature units

The inside and outside temperatures can be displayed in either Fahrenheit (F) or Celsius (C).

You can change the units in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the **Vehicle**, , and **Units** function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

## Water under the vehicle

When it is very hot and humid outside, **water condensation** can drip from the air conditioner evaporator and form a puddle under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

# Driving

## Information on driving safely and efficiently

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Pedals](#)

⇒ [Special considerations while in reverse gear](#)

⇒ [Efficient driving style](#)

⇒ [Think Blue. Trainer.](#)

⇒ [About the brakes](#)

⇒ [Driving a loaded vehicle](#)

⇒ [Weights and axle weights](#)

⇒ [Driving with an open trunk lid](#)

⇒ [Driving through water on roads](#)

⇒ [Break-in period](#)

## WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust your driving style in accordance with the flow of traffic.

- Only use the kick-down feature or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.

## Pedals

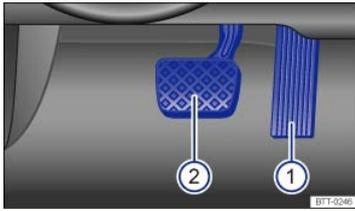


Fig. 113 Pedals in the driver footwell.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 113 :

- ① Accelerator pedal
- ② Brake pedal

All pedals must always be able to move freely in and out without interference from floor mats or other things.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and are held securely in place with floor mat fasteners to help prevent sliding.

If a brake circuit malfunctions, more brake pedal travel is needed to bring the vehicle to a full stop, and it is important that nothing is in the way when you have to depress the brake pedal harder and farther than normal.

### WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Always fasten floor mats securely to the floor.
- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats.
- Always make sure that nothing can fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving.

### NOTE

Always make sure that the pedals are able to move freely and that nothing can interfere with them. If a brake circuit fails, more brake pedal travel will be needed to bring the vehicle to a stop. The brake pedal must be pressed farther and harder than normal.

## Special considerations while in reverse gear

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

- The back-up lights turn on.
- Air recirculation is briefly switched on to help keep exhaust fumes from getting into the passenger compartment.
- Depending on equipment, the Rear View Camera system or Area View system and Park Distance Control (PDC) switch on.
- The rear windshield wiper switches on automatically when the front windshield wipers are switched on.

## Efficient driving style

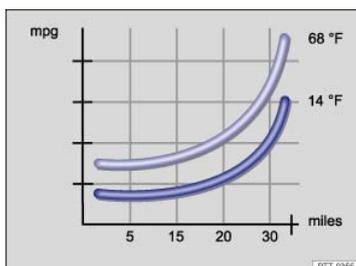
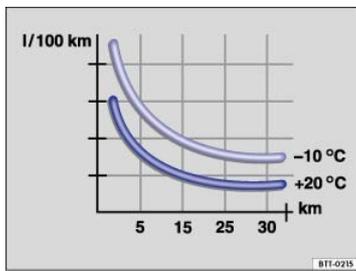


Fig. 114 Fuel consumption in miles per gallon (mpg) at two different outside air temperatures.



**Fig. 115 Fuel consumption in l/100 km at two different outside air temperatures.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### **Drive defensively**

Driving defensively and economically can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10 to 15%.

The vehicle consumes the most fuel when accelerating. Defensive driving requires less braking and therefore less acceleration.

Frequent braking and acceleration increase fuel consumption significantly. By watching the traffic, you can help avoid unnecessary braking and accelerating. If you keep enough distance from the car in front of you, you can maintain a more constant speed. Active braking and accelerating is then not necessarily required.

Use the cruise control when possible to maintain a uniform driving style ⇒ [Cruise control](#), or ⇒ [Adaptive Cruise Control \(ACC\)](#).

If possible, coast the vehicle to a stop, for example, when you can see that the next traffic light is red or about to turn red.

### **Avoid full throttle acceleration**

Driving at higher speeds uses more fuel. The air resistance and the power needed to move the vehicle increases at high speeds, for example over about 80 mph (130 km/h).

### **Reduce idling**

In situations where the vehicle will be stopped for a longer period of time, such as at a railroad crossing, switch off the engine.

In vehicles with the Start-stop system, the engine will switch off automatically in many cases ⇒ [Start-stop system](#).

### **Refuel in moderation**

A completely full tank raises the weight of the vehicle. A partially-filled tank is plenty, especially in city traffic.

### **Avoid traveling short distances**

A cold engine uses a lot more fuel right after starting. It takes a few miles (km) before the engine is warmed up and fuel consumption is stabilized.

To reduce fuel consumption and the emission of pollutants effectively, the engine and catalytic converter must reach their optimal **operating temperature**. Important in this context is also the **outside air temperature**.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle consumes more fuel in winter than in summer.

Therefore, avoid driving short distances unnecessarily and consolidate routes.

Letting the engine run to warm up is not only illegal in some places, but also technically not necessary and wastes fuel.

### **Perform regular maintenance**

Regular maintenance is necessary for fuel-efficient driving and helps extend the life of the vehicle.

### **Adjust the tire pressure**

The proper tire pressure helps reduce rolling resistance as well as fuel consumption. When purchasing new tires, always make sure that the tires are optimized for lower rolling resistance.

Adjust the tire pressure according to the figures on the tire pressure label ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#).

### **Use low viscosity engine oil**

Fully synthetic, low viscosity engine oils that expressly comply with Volkswagen oil quality standards reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils reduce the frictional resistance on the engine and are distributed more evenly and quickly, particularly when cold-starting the engine. The effect is particularly apparent in vehicles that frequently travel short distances.

Always ensure the right engine oil level is maintained and keep to the scheduled service intervals (engine oil changes).

Make sure the engine oil that you purchase expressly complies with Volkswagen oil quality standards and is the oil approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.

### **Avoid unnecessary weight**

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and eco-friendly it will be. For example, an extra 220 lbs (100 kg) of weight increases fuel consumption by up to 1 pint per 60 miles (0.3 l/100 km). Remove unnecessary dead weight from the vehicle.

The more aerodynamic the vehicle, the less fuel it will consume. Remove unnecessary items, such as roof racks, from the vehicle.

### Use extra electrical loads in moderation

Comfort inside the vehicle is important, but it is also important to use extra electrical loads in an environmentally conscious manner.

Some devices can increase fuel consumption when used (examples):

- Climate control system (air conditioner): If the air conditioner has to keep the inside temperature a lot lower than the outside temperature, it uses a large amount of energy, which is generated by the engine. When possible, keep the temperature inside the vehicle close to the outside temperature. In hot outside temperatures, it may be helpful to ventilate the vehicle before driving and then to drive a short distance with the windows open. After that, switch on the air conditioner with the windows closed. Keep the windows closed when driving at high speeds. Open windows increase wind resistance and fuel consumption.
- Switch off seat heating once it has served its purpose.
- Switch off the rear window defroster as soon as the windows are free of fog and ice.

### Additional factors that increase fuel consumption (examples):

- Malfunctioning engine control.
- Driving in the mountains.
- Towing a trailer.

### ⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic, and weather conditions.

### ! NOTE

Never let the vehicle coast or roll down a hill in Neutral (N), especially when the engine is not running. The transmission will not be lubricated and will be damaged.

- ✿ Find out about other ways to protect the environment. Think Blue.® is the international Volkswagen brand for sustainability and environmental compatibility.
- ✿ Your Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide you with additional information about correct maintenance and replacement parts that are particularly fuel efficient, for example new tires.



Under the same conditions, the vehicle consumes more fuel in winter than in summer.

### Think Blue. Trainer.

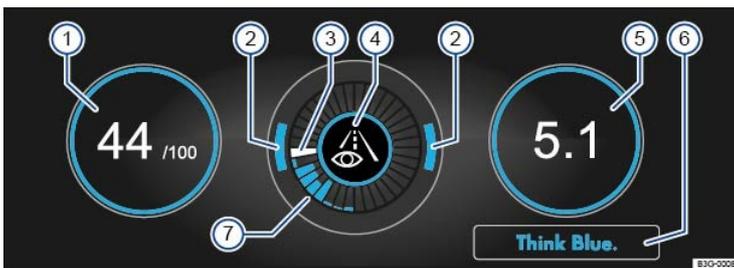


Fig. 116 Infotainment system screen: Think Blue. Trainer.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Think Blue. Trainer. analyzes your driving while the vehicle is moving forward. It then generates a visual display which can help you to adopt a more fuel-efficient driving style.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 116 :

- 1 The Blue Score is a rating of your driving style efficiency on a scale of 0 to 100. The higher the value displayed, the more efficient your driving style. You can touch the display to show the statistics for the last 30 minutes of the current trip. If the current driving time is less than 30 minutes, the values from the last trip are displayed in gray. A blue frame around the display indicates a fuel-efficient and consistent driving style. A gray frame indicates a less efficient driving style.
- 2 The position of the two arcs in the outer ring shows the acceleration. At a constant speed, the arcs appear in the central area. The arcs move up and down during braking and acceleration, respectively.

3

The white segment in the central ring shows the current evaluation status. It gradually moves clockwise about every 5 seconds, creating a blue segment each time. See 7.

4 Various symbols in the inner ring provide feedback about the current driving style: : Think ahead while driving.

: A different gear is recommended (larger number). Only applies to vehicles equipped with a gear recommendation feature.

: The current speed is not fuel-efficient. : The current driving style is ecological and fuel-efficient.

5

The average fuel consumption is displayed in the units set by the driver, for example, **Av. mpg** or **Av. l/100km**. The value refers to the distance traveled since the start of the trip.

You can touch the display to show the statistics for the last 30 minutes of the current trip. If the current driving time is less than 30 minutes, the values from the last trip are displayed in gray.

A blue frame around the display indicates a fuel-efficient and consistent driving style. A gray frame indicates a less efficient driving style.

6

Tap the Think Blue. function key for additional tips on saving fuel.

7

The blue segments in the central ring show driving style efficiency. Each segment indicates an elapsed time of about 5 seconds. The larger the blue segment, the more efficient the driving style during this period.

### Displaying the Think Blue. Trainer.

When the vehicle is not moving, press the **MENU** Infotainment button followed by the Vehicle, , and Think Blue. Trainer. function keys → [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

### WARNING

Never pay so much attention to the graphics shown on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.

- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.

## About the brakes

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** → [Introduction to the subject](#)

**New brake pads** do not provide full performance during the first 100 to 200 miles (200 to 300 km) and must first be broken in → . To some extent, you can make up for the somewhat reduced performance by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. But, **during the break-in period**, the stopping distance for hard braking and emergency braking will be longer until the brakes are fully broken in. Avoid hard braking and situations that might require hard braking (such as following other vehicles too closely) – especially during the break-in period.

**Brake pad wear** depends mostly on operating conditions and the way the vehicle is driven. If you do a lot of city and short-distance driving and/or have a sporty driving style, you should have the brake pads checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility more often than the regular service intervals → [Braking assistance systems](#).

**Wet brakes** (for example, after driving through water or washing the vehicle or after heavy rainfall) will not brake as well. Stopping distances will be longer when brake discs are wet or, in winter, even icy. Wet or icy brakes must be dried as soon as possible by carefully applying the brakes a couple of times while traveling at relatively high speed. Make sure nobody is behind you and that you do not endanger yourself or others → .

**Brakes coated with road salt** also react slower and need longer stopping distances. If there is salt on the roads and you are not braking regularly, brake carefully and gently from time to time to remove any salt coating from the brake discs and pads → .

Brake disc **corrosion** (rust) and **dirt** buildup on the brake pads are more likely to occur if the vehicle is not driven much or is driven only for short distances with little braking. If the brakes have not been used and there is some rust on the discs, clean the brake discs and pads once in a while by carefully braking a couple of times while driving at relatively high speed to help clean the brake discs and pads. Make sure nobody is behind you and that you do not endanger yourself or others → .

### Brake system malfunction

If you brake and find that the vehicle doesn't brake nearly as well as it used to (sudden increase in stopping distance), a brake circuit may have failed. The brake warning light or **BRAKE** will light up and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, immediately take it to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for repair. Drive slowly and very carefully, allow for the longer stopping distance, and be ready to push longer and harder on the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

### Brake booster

The brake booster works only when the engine is running. It increases the force on the brakes above and beyond the pressure put on the brake pedal by the driver.

If the brake booster is not working, or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to push the brake pedal harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance and the resulting longer stopping distance → .

### WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or  does not go out, or lights up when driving, either the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle as soon as you can do so safely and get expert assistance ⇒ *Brake fluid*.
- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or  lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or , the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, drive slowly and very carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Avoid sudden hard braking and steering.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or  does not go out, or if it lights up while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.
- If the symbol **BRAKE WEAR** or  lights up in the instrument cluster display, whether alone or together with a text message, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

#### WARNING

New brake pads do not provide maximum braking performance.

- New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 200 miles (320 km) and must be broken in. You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by putting more pressure on the brake pedal.
- Drive with extra care while the new brake pads are being broken in. This reduces the risk of collisions and serious personal injuries due to a loss of control over the vehicle.
- Never follow other vehicles too closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking, especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.

#### WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and even to fail leading to collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never ride the brakes or apply the brake pedal too often or too long.
- Riding the brakes will substantially reduce braking performance, increase stopping distance, and can cause complete brake system failure.

#### WARNING

Overheated brakes will reduce the vehicle's stopping power and increase stopping distances considerably.

- When driving downhill, the brakes have to work especially hard and heat up quickly.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear. This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and possibly fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.
- A damaged front bumper or a non-standard spoiler can reduce airflow to the brakes and make them overheat.

#### WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off ice and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

#### WARNING

Driving when the brake booster is not working increases stopping distances and can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Never let the vehicle coast when the engine is switched off.
- If the brake booster is not working (such as when the vehicle is being towed), a lot more pedal force is needed to slow down and stop.

#### NOTE

- Never ride the brakes by keeping your foot on the brake pedal when you do not want to brake. Constant pressure on the brake pedal can make the brakes overheat. Riding the brakes will substantially reduce braking performance, increase stopping distance, and can cause complete brake system failure.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear. This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and possibly fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.



When the front brakes are serviced, you should have the rear brake pads inspected at the same time. The wear of all brake pads should be visually checked regularly. The best way to check for brake pad wear is to have your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility visually inspect the pads through the openings in the wheel rims or from underneath the vehicle. If necessary, the wheels can be taken off for a more thorough inspection.

## Driving a loaded vehicle

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

For good handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

- Securely stow all luggage ⇒ [Stowing luggage](#).
- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.
- If applicable, observe information about driving with a trailer ⇒ [Trailer towing](#).
- If applicable, observe information about driving with a roof rack ⇒ [Roof rack](#).

### WARNING

Heavy loads can change the way your vehicle handles and increase stopping distances. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can shift suddenly, causing loss of control and serious injury.

- Secure the load properly to keep it from shifting.
- Always remember when transporting heavy objects that they change the vehicle's center of gravity and also the way it handles.
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Secure heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
  - Secure luggage in the luggage compartment using suitable straps and the tie downs ⇒ [Tie-downs](#). Also see ⇒ [Luggage compartment – features](#).
- Always tie down heavy items securely with suitable straps.
- Securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and handle differently.
- Always adapt speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Always accelerate gently and avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Always brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

## Weights and axle weights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The actual gross weight of any vehicle depends on the engine, basic equipment, any factory-installed optional equipment for the given model, and any accessories that have been installed. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross front and Rear Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) for a given vehicle are printed on the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver door jamb ⇒ [Important vehicle labels](#).

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the vehicle itself with all of its factory-installed equipment, plus a full tank of gasoline, the engine oil and coolant, all vehicle occupants (150 lbs/68 kg per seating position) and cargo.

The **Gross Axle Weight Ratings** specify the maximum allowable load for each axle.

The cargo payload may not be increased by using a roof rack without subtracting the weight of the roof rack and the cargo being carried on it ⇒ . See ⇒ [Determining the correct load limit](#).

Vehicle payload consists of the combined weight of the following:

- Passengers.
- Total luggage and other cargo.
- Roof load, including the roof rack system, if permitted ⇒ [Roof rack](#).
- Factory-installed or retrofitted accessories.

- Hitch weight and tongue weight for trailer towing ⇒ *Loading the trailer*.

Please refer to the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross front and rear Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) for your vehicle, which are printed on the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver door jamb ⇒ *Important vehicle labels*.

### WARNING

Exceeding maximum permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents, and serious personal injury.

- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible Gross Axle Weight Rating. Also, never let the total of these actual weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Always remember that the vehicle's handling and braking will be affected by extra load and the distribution of this load. Adjust your speed accordingly.

### NOTE

- Always distribute the load evenly and as low as possible in the vehicle. The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage).
- When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as close to the rear axle (as far forward) as possible so that the vehicle's handling and braking are affected as little as possible.

## Driving with an open trunk lid

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Driving with an open trunk lid can lead to serious personal injury. If you have to drive with an open trunk lid, make sure that all objects and the trunk lid itself are properly secured and take appropriate measures to keep toxic exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.

### WARNING

Driving with an unlatched or open trunk lid can lead to serious personal injury.

- Never transport objects larger than those that fit completely in the luggage compartment, because the trunk lid cannot be fully closed properly.
- After closing the trunk lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed and cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
- Always stow all objects securely in the luggage compartment. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure others on the road behind you.
- Drive carefully; anticipate what other drivers will do.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden acceleration, steering, or braking, because the unlatched trunk lid can move suddenly.
- Always mark objects sticking out from the luggage compartment clearly for others to see. Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Never use the trunk lid to clamp or hold objects that stick out of the luggage compartment.
- Always remove any luggage rack or other rack mounted on the trunk lid (along with any luggage on the rack) before driving with an open trunk lid.

### WARNING

Driving with an open trunk lid can cause poisonous carbon monoxide in the engine exhaust to get into the passenger compartment.

- Carbon monoxide causes drowsiness, inattentiveness, poisoning, and loss of consciousness. It can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.
- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving to help keep poisonous exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle.
- Never transport objects that are too large to fit completely into the luggage area, because then the trunk lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with an open trunk lid, do the following to reduce the risk of carbon monoxide poisoning:
  - Close all windows and the power sunroof.
  - Switch off the climate control system's air recirculation feature.
  - Open all air vents in the instrument panel.
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

### NOTE

The open trunk lid changes the vehicle length and height.

## Driving through water on roads

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Note the following to help prevent vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

- Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water **must not be any higher than** the bottom of the vehicle body ⇒ .
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, and do not drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
- Oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
- Always manually deactivate the Start-stop system before driving through water ⇒ [Start-stop system](#).

#### WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the brakes react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden braking maneuvers immediately after driving through water.

#### NOTE

- Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
- Never drive through salt water. Salt causes vehicle corrosion. Thoroughly rinse with fresh water all vehicle parts that were exposed to salt water.

## Break-in period

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Note applicable requirements for breaking in new parts.

### Breaking in a new engine

A new engine must be carefully broken in during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all moving parts have been broken in.

Engine life is influenced by how you drive the vehicle for the first 1000 miles (1600 km). Even afterwards, driving at moderate engine speeds, especially when the engine is cold, will tend to reduce engine wear and help the engine to last longer and go farther. But do not drive at an excessively low engine speed, either. Always downshift if the engine is not running smoothly. **For the first 600 miles (1000 km):**

- Do not use full throttle.
- Don't let the engine speed get above 2/3 of the maximum speed.
- Do not tow a trailer.

**From 600 to 1000 miles (1000 to 1600 km):** Speed may *gradually* be increased to maximum permissible road and engine speed.

### New tires and brake pads

- New tires and replacement tires ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).
- Brakes ⇒ [About the brakes](#).

 Breaking in a new engine gently will increase service life and reduce oil consumption.

## Starting and stopping the engine

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Ignition switch](#)

⇒ [Starter button](#)

⇒ [Starting the engine](#)

⇒ [Stopping the engine](#)

⇒ *Remote start feature*

⇒ *Electronic immobilizer*

⇒ *Start-stop system*

### Immobilizer display

If an unauthorized vehicle key is used or the system malfunctions, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The engine cannot be started.

### Push-starting and tow-starting

**Never** try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle. Unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter and damage it. The steering column may also be locked. Jump-start the vehicle instead while following proper and safe procedures ⇒ *Jump-starting*.

#### **WARNING**

Switching off the engine while the vehicle is moving can make the vehicle harder to stop and result in loss of vehicle control, leading to collisions and severe personal injuries.

- The ignition must be on for the airbag system and safety belt pretensioners to work.
- Braking and steering assistance systems only work when the engine is running.
- Switch off the engine only when the vehicle is not moving.

#### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious personal injury when starting and running the vehicle's engine:

- Never start the engine or let it run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never start the engine or let it run if oil, fuel, or other flammable substances are under, around, or have leaked from the vehicle, for example, due to vehicle damage.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, especially when it is in gear. The vehicle could move suddenly or some other unexpected event could occur, resulting in property damage, fire, or personal injury.
- Never use starting assist fluids. Starting fluids can explode and can cause a run-away vehicle condition.

#### **WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious personal injury when you leave the vehicle.

- Always switch off the engine and ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

#### **WARNING**

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park the vehicle where the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, or heat shields.

## Indicator lights

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause and proper response
	Brake pedal not depressed. Apply the brake pedal to start the engine.
Flashes	Possible cause and proper response
	The release button in the selector lever did not engage. Vehicle movement is prevented. Engage the selector lever release button ⇒ <i>Automatic transmission</i> .

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

## ! NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Ignition switch



Fig. 117 In the ignition switch: Vehicle key positions for vehicles without Keyless Access.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

If there is no vehicle key in the ignition, the steering column is locked.

**Vehicle key position** ⇒ Fig. 117

- ① Ignition switched off. Steering column lock engaged. The vehicle key can be removed.
- ② Ignition is switched on. Steering column lock can be released.
- ③ Start the engine. When the engine starts, release the vehicle key. When released, the vehicle key returns to position ①.

### If you use the wrong key or cannot remove the key from the ignition switch

If an unauthorized vehicle key has been inserted into the ignition switch, press the release button on the transmission selector lever and release. The vehicle key can now be removed.

### If you leave the ignition on

If you leave the ignition on and open the driver door, a warning message may appear in the instrument cluster. In addition, you may also hear an acoustic warning. This warning reminds you to switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle ⇒ ①.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key also makes it possible to start the engine, or turn on the ignition and operate the windows as well as other vehicle features.
- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.
- Only attach lightweight objects to the remote control vehicle key that weigh no more than a combined total of 3.5 oz (100 g).

## ! NOTE

Leaving the key in the ignition for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery.

- Always switch off the ignition and remove the key before leaving the vehicle.

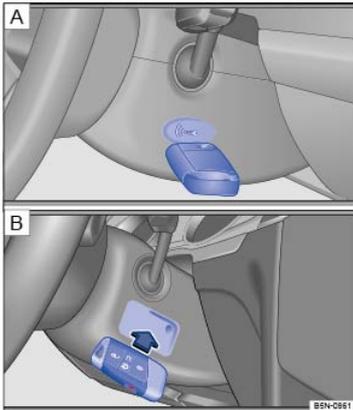


Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park **(P)** when the ignition is switched off can drain the vehicle battery.

## Starter button



**Fig. 118** In the lower center console: Starter button for the Keyless Access system.



**Fig. 119** Hold the remote control vehicle key to the right of the steering column: Emergency starting feature: Versions and .

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

For vehicles with Keyless Access with push-button start ⇒ *Power locking system*, the vehicle can be started and stopped with the starter button in the lower center console ⇒ *Fig. 118*.

The starter button can only be used when an authorized vehicle key is in the vehicle.

**When leaving the vehicle**, the electronic steering column lock is activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened ⇒ *Steering*.

### Switching the ignition on and off

- Briefly press the starter button once without depressing the brake pedal ⇒ .

### Emergency start feature

If an authorized remote control vehicle key is in the passenger compartment but is not detected, the remote control vehicle key battery may be weak or dead. You can still start the engine using the emergency start feature.

- Make sure the selector lever is in the Park **(P)** position.
- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Hold the remote control vehicle key to the right of the steering column trim immediately after pressing the starter button ⇒ *Fig. 119***A** or **B**.
- The ignition automatically switches on and the engine starts.

### Emergency shut-off

If the engine does not switch off by briefly pressing the starter button, emergency shut-off is necessary:

- Press the starter button twice within 3 seconds.
- **OR:** Press and hold the button longer than 1 second ⇒ .
- The engine switches off automatically.

If no authorized remote control vehicle key is identified in the passenger compartment after the engine has been switched off, the engine cannot be restarted. A related message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- Do *not* depress the brake pedal when switching on the ignition, as the engine could otherwise start immediately.

## WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorized persons may use it to lock the vehicle, start the engine, and operate vehicle systems such as the power windows, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if the ignition is on or a remote control vehicle key is also in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key also makes it possible to start the engine, or turn on the ignition and operate the windows as well as other vehicle features.
- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.



If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and the driver door is opened, a chime sounds. The chime is also a reminder to switch off the engine and turn off the ignition before leaving and locking the vehicle from the outside.



Always switch off the engine and ignition before leaving the vehicle. Read and follow any information in the instrument cluster display.



Leaving the ignition on for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery and the engine may not start.

- Always switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

## Starting the engine

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Starting the engine

#### Checklist

- ✓ Depress the brake pedal and hold it down until step 4 is completed.
- ✓ Make sure the transmission is in Park (P) or Neutral (N).

Vehicles without Keyless Access: Briefly turn the vehicle key to position ② – do not depress the accelerator pedal. Vehicles with Keyless Access: Briefly press the starter button – do not depress the accelerator pedal. An authorized vehicle key must be inside the vehicle in order to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, switch off the ignition and start again after about 1 minute. Vehicles with Keyless Access: Use the emergency start feature if necessary Emergency start feature.

- ✓ Release the electronic parking brake when you are ready to start driving Electronic parking brake.

## WARNING

Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, especially when it is in gear. The vehicle could move suddenly or some other unexpected event could occur, resulting in property damage, fire, or personal injury.

## WARNING

Starting fluids can explode and can cause a run-away vehicle condition.

- Never use starting assist fluids.

## NOTE

- You can damage the starter or the engine if you try to start the engine when the vehicle is still moving, or if you try to restart the engine right after switching it off.
- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration, and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle. Unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter and damage it. The steering column may

also be locked. Jump-start the vehicle instead while following proper and safe procedures ⇒ *Jump-starting*.

 Do not let your vehicle warm up while standing; instead, start driving right away after making sure that you have good visibility through all windows. This will help the engine reach operating temperature faster and keep down emissions.

 Major consumers of electricity are temporarily switched off when the engine is being started.

 After starting a cold engine, there may be increased operating noises for a few seconds. This is normal and harmless.

## Stopping the engine

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Stopping the engine

#### Checklist

- ✓ Bring the vehicle to a complete stop .
- ✓ Depress and hold down the brake pedal until step 4 is completed.
- ✓ Shift the transmission to Park (P).
- ✓ Set the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving Electronic parking brake.

Vehicles without Keyless Access: Turn the vehicle key to position ① in the ignition switch. Vehicles with Keyless Access: Briefly press the starter button . If the engine will not switch off, carry out the emergency shut-off procedure Emergency shut-off.

*Vehicles without Keyless Access:* Removing the vehicle key from the ignition switches off electrical equipment and activates the steering column lock.

*Vehicles with Keyless Access:* Opening the doors switches off electrical equipment and activates the steering column lock.

#### WARNING

Never stop the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash, and be seriously injured.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. More brake pedal pressure will be needed to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering system does not work when the engine is not running, and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

#### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional anti-corrosion or underbody protection products to the vehicle heat shields.

#### NOTE

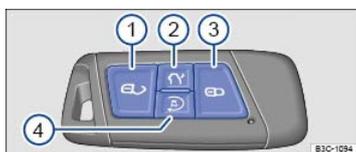
If the vehicle has been driven hard for a long time, the engine could overheat when it is stopped. To reduce the risk of engine damage, let the engine idle in Neutral for about 2 minutes before you switch off the ignition.

 The vehicle key can only be removed from the ignition when the transmission is in Park (P).

 After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may keep running for several minutes, or may start running after the vehicle has been parked for a while, even if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan shuts off automatically when the engine has cooled down enough.

 If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and the driver door is opened, a chime sounds. The chime is also a reminder to switch off the engine and turn off the ignition before leaving and locking the vehicle from the outside.

## Remote start feature



**Fig. 120 Remote control vehicle key with remote start button.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

In some vehicles, you can start the engine from outside of the vehicle with the remote start button ⇒ [Fig. 120④](#) on the remote control vehicle key. This feature helps to cool or warm the passenger compartment to about +72 °F (+20 °C) ⇒ .

## Checklist

**The following conditions must all be met *at the same time* to use the remote start feature. Otherwise, the engine will not start, the remote start feature will stop, or the engine will switch off automatically.**

- ✓ The vehicle must be ready to drive. For instance, there must be enough engine coolant Engine coolant.
- ✓ There must be enough fuel in the fuel tank, and the low fuel indicator light must not have come on before the engine was last switched off Indicator lights an fuel gauge, Refueling.
- ✓ The selector lever must be in Park (P) Automatic transmission selector lever.
- ✓ All doors, the engine hood, and the trunk lid must be completely closed and locked.
- ✓ The vehicle battery must be charged Vehicle battery.

The yellow engine Malfunction Indicator light (MIL) must not have come on before the engine was last switched off Engine control and emission control system.

- The remote start feature will not work if the yellow indicator light (MIL) comes on **during** a remote start.

### Using the remote start feature

1.	Press the  button on the vehicle key one time ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 120③</a> .
2.	Within the next 3 seconds, press the  button twice in a row ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 120④</a> .

The turn signals flash each time you press a button, and the parking lights and the daytime running lights (DRL) turn on while the vehicle is in remote start mode. When you open the driver door while the vehicle is in remote start mode, certain warning and indicator lights come on, and a driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display.

If the remote start feature is not interrupted, the engine will run for about 10 minutes. A maximum of 2 remote starts in a row are possible, regardless of how long each one is allowed to run.

To be able to run 2 remote starts again, you must switch the ignition on and then off again ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#) . All the remote start requirements must be met.

### Climate control settings for remote start mode

The following climate control settings are automatically applied during remote start, unless you change them from the controls inside the vehicle during a remote start. Some features only turn on at certain outside temperatures:

Function activated	Automatic setting
Seat heating (if equipped)	Level 2, turns on at temperatures below +59 °F (+15 °C)
Outside mirror heating	Turns on at temperatures below +68 °F (+20 °C)
Rear window defroster	Turns on at temperatures below +39 °F (+4 °C)
Climatronic	Temperature: +72 °F (+22 °C)
Manual air conditioning	Temperature: +72 °F (+22 °C)

You can use the air conditioning controls and/or the buttons for seat heating or ventilation (if equipped) while the engine is in remote start mode to adjust settings.

However, any changes will be replaced by the automatic settings during the next remote start. It is not possible to change settings in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*.

To change the automatic climate control settings, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Remote start mode overrides any personalized settings. After the driver has taken over the vehicle, personalized settings are reactivated.

### Interrupting or stopping the remote start feature

With the vehicle key:

- Press the  button ⇒ *Fig. 120* or the panic button on the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 51* to switch the engine off.

From inside the vehicle:

- Turn on the emergency flashers.
- **OR:** Press the starter button. Do not depress the brake pedal at the same time.

### Driving after a remote start

In order to drive the vehicle when the engine is running in remote start mode, you must first depress the brake pedal and press the starter button at the same time. During this process, the engine continues to run ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the remote start feature can cause fire, burns and other serious injuries.

- Always park the vehicle in a place that is vented to the outdoors and has a continuous exchange of fresh, outside air.
- Only use the remote start feature when no one is next to or inside the vehicle.
- Always make sure that you can see the vehicle when the engine is running.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, anyone who cannot help themselves, or pets in the vehicle. The doors are locked when the engine is running with the remote start feature. Vehicle occupants would be trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and rescue from the outside would be delayed.
- Never start the engine if children or animals are inside the vehicle. When the engine is running, electrical equipment including electrical seat adjustment controls can be operated and cause serious injuries.
- Never start the engine or let it run in a garage, in an enclosed or confined area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause dizziness, nausea, unconsciousness and even death.
- Always make sure that the area where the engine runs in the remote start mode is well ventilated. Carbon monoxide in a garage or other enclosed area can cause dizziness, impair the ability to drive, and even result in unconsciousness.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is covered with a protective cover. Hot vehicle components and exhaust could ignite the protective cover.
- Never start the engine near combustible or explosive materials. The exhaust could ignite flammable materials.

## ! NOTE

- Do not use the remote start feature if the yellow engine Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)  has come on, smoke or unusual smells come from the vehicle, an unusual or unexpected operating condition occurs and the condition has not been diagnosed and corrected. Please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Remote start is possible when one or more windows are open. Always remember that unauthorized access to the vehicle through open windows is possible when the engine is running in remote start mode. Always make sure that all of the windows are securely closed to help prevent unauthorized access to the vehicle, its features and contents.

 Using the remote start feature can increase fuel consumption and drain the vehicle battery.



Use of the remote start feature may be regulated or prohibited in some areas. In some areas you may be required to be able to see the vehicle when it is running in remote start mode. Please inform yourself about state and local requirements that may apply and be sure to follow them when using the remote start feature.



Various vehicle functions, such as the low beam headlights and the windshield wipers, are disabled when the engine is running during a remote start.

## Electronic immobilizer

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The immobilizer helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorized vehicle key.

There is a microchip inside the vehicle key. The chip deactivates the immobilizer automatically when an authorized vehicle key is inserted into the ignition switch or

the starter button is pressed.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the remote control vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition switch. On vehicles with Keyless Access, the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access](#) .

The engine can therefore only be started with an authorized and correctly coded genuine Volkswagen vehicle key. Coded vehicle keys are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths who are qualified to make these vehicle keys ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#) .

If an unauthorized vehicle key is used, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. The vehicle cannot be operated with this key.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#) .



Using genuine Volkswagen keys helps minimize the risk of malfunctions.

## Start-stop system

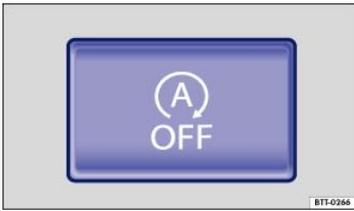


Fig. 121 In the lower center console: Button for the Start-stop system.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Switching the Start-stop system on

The feature is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on. The instrument cluster display shows current status information.

Depending on equipment, additional Start-stop status information may be displayed in the Infotainment system. Press the **i** function key on the screen in the Start-stop menu if applicable.

### Indicator lights

Lights up	Possible cause
	Start-stop available, automatic engine stop is active.
	Start-stop not available. Check whether all technical requirements have been met.
	<b>OR:</b> Start-stop has switched the engine on automatically.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### Requirements for the engine to automatically switch off

- The driver must be wearing their seat belt.
- The driver door must be closed.
- The engine hood must be closed.
- The engine must have reached minimum operating temperature.
- *For vehicles with Climatronic:* The temperature inside the vehicle must be within the pre-set temperature range and the humidity must not be too high.
- The windshield defrost function must not be switched on.
- The vehicle battery must be sufficiently charged.
- The vehicle battery temperature must not be too low or too high.
- The vehicle must not be on a steep incline.
- The vehicle must not be in reverse gear.
- The vehicle must not be in **off-road** mode.

### Requirements for the engine to automatically restart

The engine may restart automatically under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle interior becomes very hot or very cold.
- If the vehicle rolls forward or backward.
- If the vehicle battery voltage lowers.
- If the steering wheel is moved.

#### Conditions that require a manual engine start

You must restart the engine manually if:

- The driver door is opened.
- The engine hood is opened.
- The driver safety belt is unbuckled.

#### Manually activating and deactivating the Start-stop system

- Press the  button ⇒ Fig. 121 to deactivate the system. If Start-stop has been deactivated, the indicator light in the button comes on.
- Press the  button ⇒ Fig. 121 again to reactivate the system.

Every time the  button is pressed, the Start-stop system status is shown in the instrument cluster display.

If Start-stop switches the engine off, it will restart if you press the  button.

- When driving through water.
- When towing a trailer.

#### WARNING

Never stop the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash, and be seriously injured.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. More brake pedal pressure will be needed to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering system does not work when the engine is not running, and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- Switch the Start-stop system off before working in the engine compartment.

#### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

#### NOTE

The vehicle battery may be damaged if the Start-stop system is active for a long time in very hot outside temperatures.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights can result in vehicle damage



In certain situations it may be necessary to manually restart the engine. A text message will appear in the instrument cluster display.



In vehicles with Driving Mode Selection, the Start-stop system is automatically activated in the **Eco** driving mode.



Always manually deactivate the Start-stop system when driving through water or when towing a trailer.

## Automatic transmission

### Warning and indicator lights

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
		<p> <b>Do not continue driving!</b></p>
	Transmission malfunction.	<p>Allow the transmission to cool with the selector lever in the <b>P</b> position.</p> <p>If the warning does not turn off, do not continue driving. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. Otherwise, serious transmission damage could result ⇒ <i>Automatic transmission malfunction</i>.</p>
	Brake pedal not depressed.	<p>Depress the brake pedal to select a drive gear ⇒ <i>About the brakes</i>. Also refer to electronic parking brake ⇒ <i>Electronic parking brake</i>.</p>
Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	The release button in the selector lever did not engage. Vehicle movement is prevented.	<p>Engage the selector lever release button ⇒ <i>Automatic transmission selector lever</i>.</p>

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### WARNING

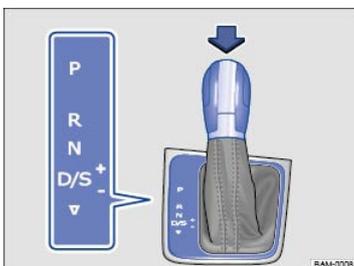
Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

### Automatic transmission selector lever



**Fig. 122 Automatic transmission selector lever with shift lever release button (arrow).**

Automatic transmission vehicles have an Automatic Shift Lock (ASL). With ASL, you must switch on the ignition, depress the brake pedal and hold it down while pressing the release button on the selector lever handle in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 122* to move the selector lever out of Park (**P**) and into a drive gear. When the selector lever is in Neutral (**N**), you also have to depress the brake pedal before you can move the selector lever to position (**D/S**), or Reverse (**R**).

If the ignition is switched on, either the current selector lever setting or the current gear is shown in the instrument cluster display.

#### **P – Park**

The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

Select only when the vehicle is *not moving*. To change the selector lever position, switch on the ignition (if it is off) and then press the selector lever release button while holding down the brake pedal.

### **R – Reverse**

The Reverse gear is engaged.

Shift into Reverse only when the vehicle is *not moving*.

### **N – Neutral**

Transmission is in Neutral position. No power is transmitted to the wheels and no engine braking is available.

### **D/S – Drive or Sport Drive**

Standard driving position **D**: All forward gears shift up and down automatically. The transmission shifts as needed depending on engine load, individual driving style and vehicle speed.

Sport driving position **S**: All forward gears automatically upshift *later* and downshift *earlier* than in position **D** to take full advantage of the engine's power reserves. The transmission shifts as needed depending on engine load, individual driving style, and vehicle speed. The system will not, however, switch to the highest forward gear.

The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style, and the vehicle speed.

### **∇ – Changing gear selection**

Switch between Drive (**D**) and Sport drive (**S**) by pulling the selector lever *once* to the rear from gear position **D/S** ⇒ Fig. 122. The selector lever always returns to gear position **D/S**.

It is possible to access Tiptronic selection from gear position **D/S** when either Drive (**D**) or Sport drive (**S**) is active ⇒ *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

### **Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)**

The Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) in Park (**P**) and Neutral (**N**) prevents drive positions from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

To release the ASL, depress and hold the brake pedal with the ignition switched on. Press the release button on the selector lever at the same time.

The ASL is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through Neutral (**N**) (e.g., when shifting from Reverse (**R**) to Drive (**D/S**)). This makes it possible to rock the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The ASL engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in Neutral (**N**) for more than about 1 second and the vehicle is traveling no faster than about 3 mph (5 km/h).

In rare cases, the ASL may not engage on vehicles with a DSG® automated transmission. If this happens, power to the drive wheels will be interrupted to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly. The green indicator light  will blink and a text message will be displayed. To engage the Automatic Shift Lock (ASL):

- Depress and then release the brake pedal. Try to engage the ASL again.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Moving the selector lever to the wrong position can cause loss of vehicle control, a collision, and serious personal injury.

- Never accelerate when moving the selector lever.
- When the engine is running and a drive position is engaged, the vehicle will start to move as soon as the brake pedal is released.
- Never shift into Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) when the vehicle is moving.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- Never get out of the driver's seat while the engine is running, especially when the transmission is in a drive gear. If you must leave your vehicle while the engine is running, always set the parking brake and shift the transmission to Park (**P**).
- Never leave the vehicle in Neutral (**N**). It will roll down hills, whether the engine is running or not.
- When the engine is running and a drive gear - Drive or Sport Drive (**D/S**) or Reverse (**R**) - has been selected, press and hold the brake pedal to keep the vehicle from moving. The vehicle may creep and move forward or backward even if the engine is idling slowly.
- Never shift into Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) when the vehicle is moving.

### **! NOTE**

Even though the transmission is in Park (**P**), the vehicle may move a couple of inches (a few centimeters) forwards or backwards if you take your foot off the brake pedal after stopping the vehicle **without** first setting the parking brake.



If the selector lever is moved into Neutral (**N**) by mistake when the vehicle is moving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine speed has

dropped to idle speed before moving the selector lever into a drive gear.



Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park (P) when the ignition is switched off can drain the 12 Volt vehicle battery.

## Gear recommendation

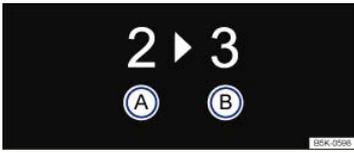


Fig. 123 In the instrument cluster display: Gear recommendation.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a gear recommendation feature. The gear recommendation displays a gear in the instrument cluster display that can help reduce fuel consumption.

The selector lever must be in the Tiptronic position ⇒ *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 123 :

- (A) Current gear.
- (B) Recommended gear.

If the optimal gear is already selected, another gear is not recommended. Only the current gear is displayed.

### ⚠ WARNING

The gear recommendation is only intended to assist the driver to select a gear for optimum fuel economy. The gear recommendation cannot take road and traffic conditions into account.

- The driver is responsible for selecting the correct gear for the current driving conditions, such as when passing or when driving on hills.

✿ Selecting the optimal gear helps to reduce fuel consumption.



The gear recommendation display turns off if you move the selector lever out of the Tiptronic position.

## Shifting with Tiptronic®

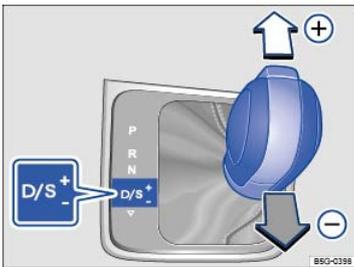


Fig. 124 Selector lever in Tiptronic position.

Tiptronic lets you upshift and downshift manually with the automatic transmission. When Tiptronic mode is used, the transmission stays in the current gear and does not upshift or downshift automatically unless the transmission senses a situation where upshifting or downshifting is necessary to keep the engine from over- or under-revving.

### Using Tiptronic with the selector lever

- Push the selector lever sideways to the right from the D/S position into the Tiptronic position ⇒ ⚠.
- Briefly push the selector lever forward ⊕ to upshift into a higher gear or backward ⊖ to downshift into a lower gear ⇒ Fig. 124.

### ⓘ NOTE

- During acceleration, the transmission will shift automatically into the next higher gear before reaching maximum engine speed (rpm).
- If you use Tiptronic to shift into a lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when doing so will not over-rev the engine.

## Driving with automatic transmission

All forward gears shift up and down automatically.

### Driving on hills

The steeper the slope, the lower the gear that must be selected. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never coast downhill in Neutral **(N)**.

- Reduce speed.
- Switch to Tiptronic mode by moving the selector lever from Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** to the right into the Tiptronic position ⇒ *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.
- Downshift by pulling the selector lever back briefly (-).

*Vehicles with Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold):* If you stop and start up again when going uphill, the Hill Start Assist feature can help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards as long as the engine is running ⇒ *Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold)*.

*Vehicles without Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold):* If you stop on a hill with the vehicle in gear, you must depress the brake pedal or engage the parking brake to keep the vehicle from rolling. Do not release the brake pedal or the parking brake until the vehicle has started to move forward ⇒ ⓘ.

### **Kick-down acceleration**

The kick-down feature permits maximum acceleration when the selector lever is in the Drive or Sport Drive **(D/S)** position or in Tiptronic mode.

If you push the accelerator all the way down, the vehicle will automatically downshift, depending on vehicle speed and engine speed (rpm). This feature lets you take advantage of the full acceleration capacity of the vehicle ⇒ ▲.

With kick-down acceleration, the transmission will stay in the current gear longer and not upshift until the engine reaches maximum rpm.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Only use the kick-down feature or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
- Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
- Note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can swerve when ASR is switched off, especially when the road is slippery.
- Once you have accelerated, switch ASR back on again.

### **ⓘ NOTE**

- When stopping on hills with the transmission in a drive gear, do not use the accelerator to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and be damaged.
- Never let the vehicle coast or roll down a hill in Neutral **(N)**, especially when the engine is not running. The transmission will not be lubricated and will be damaged.

## **Automatic transmission malfunction**

### **Emergency shift program**

If there is a system malfunction, a text message along with the yellow indicator light ⓘ will appear in the instrument cluster. The automatic transmission will then operate in the emergency shift program. Depending on the type of system malfunction, the selector lever position is still shown. The text message will disappear after a few seconds. The yellow indicator light ⓘ stays active as long as there is a system malfunction.

In any event, have the automatic transmission checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### **The vehicle does not move forward or in reverse even though a drive position is selected with the selector lever**

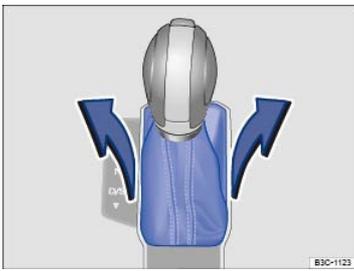
If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly. Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again.

If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

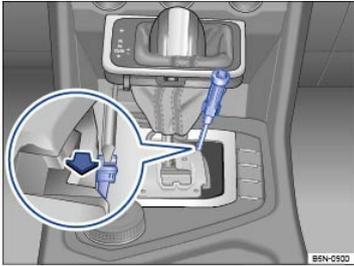
### **ⓘ NOTE**

- As soon as you get any of these warnings about transmission overheating, you must either park the vehicle in a safe place or drive faster than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- If the text message and acoustic warning repeat themselves every 10 seconds or so, you must park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as you can safely do so and stop the engine. Let the transmission cool down.
- To help prevent damage to the transmission, do not drive the vehicle again until the acoustic warning has stopped. As long as the engine is overheated, avoid stop and start driving and avoid low speeds (walking pace).

## **Emergency release for the selector lever lock**



**Fig. 125 Removing the selector gate cover.**



**Fig. 126 Releasing the selector lever lock.**

If the power supply fails (due to a dead vehicle battery, for example) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the emergency release must be used to move the selector lever to Neutral (N). You will need the screwdriver to release the selector lever → *Vehicle tool kit*.

The emergency release is located under the selector gate cover on the right side when viewed in the driving direction.

#### Preparations

- Set the parking brake. If the parking brake cannot be set, you must find another way to help prevent the vehicle from moving.
- Switch off the ignition.

#### Removing the selector gate cover

- Using your hands, pull upward on the sides of the selector lever cover to release it, then pull the selector lever sleeve upward → *Fig. 125*.
- Slip the cover up and over the selector lever → ▲.

#### Emergency release for the selector lever

- With the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, carefully push the colored release lever → *Fig. 126* in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.
- Press the release button in the selector lever handle and shift the selector lever to Neutral (N).
- Carefully press the selector gate cover back in place, making sure that the electrical wiring stays in the correct position and is not pinched or damaged.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never shift the transmission out of Park (P) without first firmly applying the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle can start to roll unexpectedly, especially on hills or inclines, and cause an accident and serious injuries.

#### ⓘ NOTE

Even with the selector lever in Neutral (N), the automatic transmission will be damaged if the vehicle is towed (or you let it coast) for an extended period or at high speed with the engine shut off.

## Steering

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Steering system information*

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical power steering system. The power steering works only when the engine is running.

The electromechanical power steering system automatically adjusts to driving speed, steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. It delivers extra steering force only when you are actually turning the wheels.

In vehicles with 4MOTION Active Control, the selected driving mode can affect the steering behavior → *4MOTION Active Control*.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Turning the steering wheel is very hard when the power steering system is not working. This makes it harder to steer and control the vehicle.

- Power steering works only when the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
 <b>Stop!</b>		
 Power steering malfunction.		Have the power steering system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
 Power steering assist is reduced.		Stop, restart the engine, and drive a short distance. If the yellow warning light does not come on again, you do <b>not</b> need to have the steering system checked.
		Otherwise, have the steering checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	Vehicle battery was disconnected and has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at about 10–12 mph (15–20 km/h).

Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
 <b>Stop!</b>		
 Electronic steering column lock malfunction.		The ignition cannot be switched on. The vehicle must not be towed! Get professional assistance.
	Steering system stiff.	Turn the steering wheel back and forth.
		Switch the ignition off and then switch it on again. Heed any messages shown in the instrument cluster display, if applicable.
 Steering column not locked/unlocked.		On vehicles with Keyless Access ⇒ <a href="#">Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access</a> , press the starter button briefly twice in a row without depressing the brake pedal.
		<b>Do not drive any farther</b> if the steering column remains locked after you switch on the ignition. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, switch off the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Park the vehicle where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Steering system information

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

To help prevent vehicle theft, you should always make sure the steering column is locked before leaving the vehicle.

### Mechanical steering column lock (vehicles without Keyless Access)

The steering column is locked if the vehicle is not moving and the vehicle key is removed from the ignition switch. Turn the steering wheel slightly until the steering column lock clicks into place.

To disengage the steering column lock, insert the vehicle key into the ignition switch. Turn the steering wheel slightly to take pressure off the steering column lock. Hold the steering wheel in this position and turn the ignition switch.

### Electronic steering column lock (vehicles with Keyless Access)

The steering column is locked if the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off. The vehicle must be standing still and the transmission must be in Park (P).

If the driver door is opened before the ignition is switched off, the electronic steering column lock is activated only after the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key bit or the emergency key, or via the sensor in the door handle.

### Power steering

Power steering automatically adjusts to driving speed, steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. Power steering works only when the engine is running.

If power steering is reduced or lost completely, it will be much harder to steer and control the vehicle.

### Counter-steering assistance

Counter-steering assistance is part of Electronic Stability Control (ESC). This feature makes it easier for the driver to control the vehicle in difficult situations. For example, if you have to brake hard on a surface that provides uneven traction, the vehicle could pull to the right or left. ESC detects this situation and helps the driver counter-steer with additional steering power ⇒ .

### Progressive steering

Your vehicle may be equipped with progressive steering, which can adjust the force of the steering movement in a driving situation. Progressive steering only works when the engine is running.

In *city traffic*, less steering input is required when parking, maneuvering, or turning sharply.

When driving on *country roads* or *highways*, the progressive steering provides a more sporty, direct steering response and a more dynamic feel.

#### WARNING

The counter-steering assistance in ESC can do no more than help the driver steer in difficult situations. The driver must still control the vehicle. The vehicle does not steer by itself with this feature!

#### NOTE

If the ignition is off, the steering column lock will engage and the vehicle cannot be steered. For this reason, you must leave the ignition on when going through an automatic car wash, for example, so that the wheels will still steer.

## 4MOTION Active Control

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *On-road Driving Mode Selection*

⇒ *Adjusting the Custom on-road driving mode*

⇒ *Off-road Driving Mode Selection*

⇒ *Adjusting the Custom off-road driving mode*

⇒ *Off-road display*

#### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when selecting a driving mode or using the Infotainment system.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use 4MOTION Active Control and the Infotainment system only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ 
	<i>When displayed in white:</i> Hill Descent Control is active. <i>When displayed in gray:</i> Hill Descent Control is not active. System is switched on, but does not regulate.
	Together with  : The <b>Offroad</b> or <b>Custom offroad</b> driving mode is active.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### WARNING

Failure to heed warning and indicator lights and instrument cluster text messages can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning and indicator lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always heed warning and indicator lights and take action where necessary.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning and indicator lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## On-road Driving Mode Selection



Fig. 127 In the lower center console: Button for Driving Mode Selection ① on the 4MOTION Active Control Knob.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

For vehicles equipped with 4MOTION Active Control, you can choose from up to four different on-road driving modes with a variety of characteristics. For

information on off-road driving modes, see ⇒ [Off-road Driving Mode Selection](#) and ⇒ [Adjusting the Custom off-road driving mode](#).

On-road driving mode	Description
<b>Normal</b>	Balanced setting for everyday use.
<b>Sport</b>	Gives the vehicle a sporty driving feel and is suited for a sporty driving style.
<b>Eco</b>	Sets the vehicle in a low consumption mode and supports the driver with more eco-friendly driving.
<b>Custom</b>	Individual systems can be adjusted to suit your personal requirements ⇒ <a href="#">Adjusting the Custom on-road driving mode</a>

The effect on the vehicle settings in the individual driving modes depends on vehicle equipment.

The driving mode can be changed while the vehicle is stationary or when it is moving. After selecting a driving mode, the vehicle settings (excluding engine settings) are switched to the new driving mode immediately.

When traffic conditions allow, briefly take your foot off the accelerator to activate the newly selected driving mode for the engine.

### Steering

In **Sport** mode, power steering is reduced and the effort required to steer the vehicle increases. The vehicle's driving response becomes more agile.

### Powertrain (engine and transmission)

The engine and transmission will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the movement of the accelerator, depending on the selected driving mode. The shift points and coasting will also change. Active cruise control can affect the acceleration response.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC, if equipped)

When the ACC is active, vehicle acceleration and deceleration can become more sporty, depending on the selected driving mode.

### Adaptive front lighting system (AFS) and Light Assist (if equipped)

AFS and Light Assist give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the current driving situation, depending on the selected driving mode.

### Front differential lock

In the **Sport** driving mode, the front differential lock provides a more agile driving response.

### Climate control

In **Eco** mode, climate control may switch to a low consumption setting.

### Displaying the on-road driving mode

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, turn the 4MOTION Active Control knob to the **On-road** setting ⇒ [Fig. 127②](#).
- Press the Driving Mode Selection button  ⇒ [Fig. 127①](#). Information about the current on-road driving mode appears in the Infotainment system and the current driving mode is shown in the instrument cluster display. The active driving mode is highlighted.
- Tap the information (i) function key to display additional information about the current driving mode.
- Tap the **X** function key to close the menu, if necessary.

The Driving Mode Selection button  lights up when a mode other than **Normal** has been selected.

### Selecting the on-road driving mode

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, turn the 4MOTION Active Control knob to the **On-road** setting ⇒ [Fig. 127①](#).
- Press the Driving Mode Selection button  and tap the function key for the selected driving mode in the Infotainment system display.
- **OR:** press the Driving Mode Selection button  to toggle through the on-road driving modes.

Some settings for the selected driving mode may stay set even after the ignition is switched off, and other settings may return to **Normal** mode. For example, if the **Sport** mode is active when the ignition is switched off, the automatic transmission may return to the **D** position when the ignition is switched back on.

To change the settings back to the selected driving mode, press the Driving Mode Selection button  and tap the function key for the selected driving mode in the Infotainment system display.

To shift to the **S** position, briefly pull the selector lever back ⇒ *Automatic transmission*. To select the **E** position, switch to **Eco** mode.

**⚠ WARNING**

Changing the driving mode can alter the vehicle handling. Never allow 4MOTION Active Control or the on-road driving modes to tempt you into taking extra risks.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**ⓘ NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



The driver can adjust certain vehicle functions, regardless of the selected driving mode. For example, the driver can shift the selector lever to Sport drive (**S**), even if the **Eco** driving mode is selected.

## Adjusting the Custom on-road driving mode

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The systems that can be adjusted to your individual requirements depend on the vehicle equipment.

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
- Turn the 4MOTION Active Control knob to the **On-road** setting ⇒ *Fig. 127*②.
- Tap the Custom function key in the Infotainment system display.
- Tap the Adjust function key to open the **Custom** menu.

If the box in the function key is checked , the function is switched on.

Tapping the function key always takes you back to the previously active menu.

### Custom menu

The following options in the **Custom** menu may vary depending on vehicle equipment.

Submenu	Settings options
Steering:	Normal
	Sport
Drive system:	Normal
	Sport
	Eco
ACC: (if equipped)	Normal
	Sport
	Eco

Submenu	Settings options
Dyn. Adapt. Frnt. Lght.: (Adaptive Front Lighting system (AFS), if equipped)	Normal
	Sport
Climate control:	Normal
	Eco
Reset mode:	Settings are reset to default.

The driving mode can be changed while the vehicle is stationary or when it is moving. After selecting a driving mode, the vehicle settings (excluding engine settings) are switched to the new driving mode immediately.

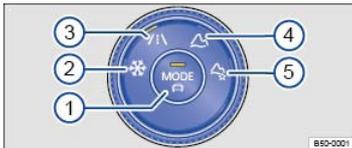
When traffic conditions allow, briefly take your foot off the accelerator to activate the newly selected driving mode for the engine.

Some settings for the selected driving mode may stay set even after the ignition is switched off, and other settings may return to **Normal** mode. For example, if the **Sport** mode is active when the ignition is switched off, the automatic transmission may return to the **(D)** position when the ignition is switched back on.

To change the settings back to the selected driving mode, press the Driving Mode Selection button  and tap the function key for the selected driving mode in the Infotainment system display.

To shift to the **(S)** position, briefly pull the selector lever back  $\Rightarrow$  *Automatic transmission*. To select the **(E)** position, switch to **Eco** mode.

## Off-road Driving Mode Selection



**Fig. 128** In the lower center console: 4MOTION Active Control knob.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first  $\Rightarrow$  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to  $\Rightarrow$  [Fig. 128](#):

- ① Driving Mode Selection button
- ② Snow mode
- ③ On-road setting
- ④ Off-road mode<sup>1)</sup>
- ⑤ Custom off-road mode<sup>1)</sup>

### Snow mode ②

When the **Snow** driving mode is activated, vehicle acceleration is more sensitive (for icy or snow-covered roads). When turning corners, handling is more controlled and power when driving on a straight road is also improved. Adaptive Cruise Control is more balanced.

It is not possible to shift into **S** position in Snow driving mode.

### On-road ③

In the **On-road** setting, you can choose between the **Eco**, **Normal**, **Sport**, and **Custom** mode options  $\Rightarrow$  [On-road Driving Mode Selection](#).

### Off-road ④

In **Off-road** mode, vehicle acceleration is more sensitive in off-road terrain. Shift points may change. In **Offroad** mode, Hill Start Assist and Hill Descent Control are active. Hill Descent Control is available at speeds below 18 mph (30 km/h) when certain requirements are met  $\Rightarrow$  [Hill Descent Control](#).

### Custom off-road ⑤

In **Custom off-road** mode, there are more settings so you can further customize off-road mode. You can select individual settings for several systems while still in off-road mode. The settings in **Custom off-road** mode are stored in the active user account.

### Selecting an off-road driving mode

- Switch on the ignition.

- Turn the knob ⇒ Fig. 128 until the driving mode you wish to select lights up.

The Driving Mode Selection menu appears in the Infotainment system display. The active driving mode is highlighted.

- Tap the **i** function key to show additional information about the selected driving mode.
- Tap the **x** function key to close the menu, if necessary.

Some settings for the selected driving mode may stay set even after the ignition is switched off, and other settings may return to **Normal** mode. For example, if the **Sport** mode is active when the ignition is switched off, the automatic transmission may return to the **(D)** position when the ignition is switched back on.

To change the settings back to the selected driving mode, press the Driving Mode Selection button  and tap the function key for the selected driving mode in the Infotainment system display.

To shift to the **(S)** position, briefly pull the selector lever back ⇒ *Automatic transmission*. To select the **(E)** position, switch to **Eco** mode.

### WARNING

Changing the driving mode can alter the vehicle handling. Never allow 4MOTION Active Control to tempt you into taking extra risks.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

<sup>1)</sup> The symbol  appears in the instrument cluster display and the  indicator light comes on when the **Off-road** driving mode is active.

## Adjusting the Custom off-road driving mode

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The systems that can be adjusted to your individual requirements depend on vehicle equipment.

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.
- Turn the knob until the Custom offroad icon lights up ⇒ Fig. 128 .
- Tap the Adjust function key to open the **Custom offroad** menu.

If the box in the function key is checked , the function is switched on.

Tapping the  function key always takes you back to the previously active menu.

### Custom menu

The following options in the **Custom** menu may vary depending on vehicle equipment.

Submenu	Settings options
Steering:	Normal
	Sport
Drive system:	Normal
	Offroad
	Normal

All-wheel:	Submenu	Settings options
		Offroad
ACC: (if equipped)		Normal
		Sport
		Eco
Dyn. Adapt. Frnt. Lght.: (Adaptive Front Lighting system (AFS), if equipped)		Normal
		Sport
Climate Control:		Normal
		Eco
Hill Descent Assist: (Hill Descent Control, if equipped)		Switch on or off
Hill Hold Assist: (Hill Start Assist, if equipped)		Switch on or off
Parking assist: (Park Distance Control, if equipped)		Switch on or off
Reset mode:		Settings are reset to the default off-road settings.

The driving mode can be changed while the vehicle is stationary or when it is moving. After selecting a driving mode, the vehicle settings (excluding engine settings) are switched to the new driving mode immediately.

When traffic conditions allow, briefly take your foot off the accelerator to activate the newly selected driving mode for the engine.

Some settings for the selected driving mode may stay set even after the ignition is switched off, and other settings may return to **Normal** mode. For example, if the **Sport** mode is active when the ignition is switched off, the automatic transmission may return to the **(D)** position when the ignition is switched back on.

To change the settings back to the selected driving mode, press the Driving Mode Selection button  and tap the function key for the selected driving mode in the Infotainment system display.

To shift to the **(S)** position, briefly pull the selector lever back  $\Rightarrow$  *Automatic transmission*. To select the **(E)** position, switch to **Eco** mode.

### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when setting, adjusting, or using the Infotainment system.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use the Infotainment system only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.

## Off-road display

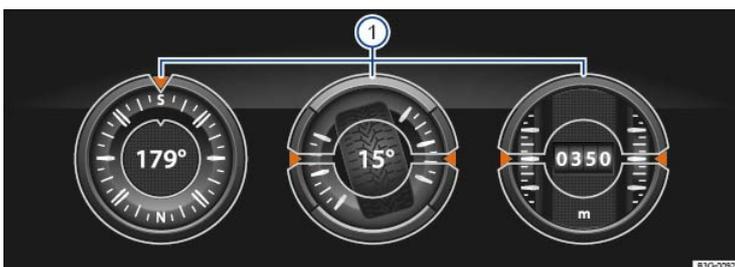


Fig. 129 In the Infotainment system: Off-road display (if equipped).

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first  $\Rightarrow$   *Introduction to the subject*

Your vehicle may be equipped with an off-road display in the Infotainment system. These digital instruments show additional information about the vehicle and its surroundings and can help you to assess the current driving situation more precisely.

### Opening the off-road display

Tap the **MENU** function key on the Infotainment system. Then tap the **Vehicle**, **Selection**, and **Offroad** function keys.

### Selecting instruments and setting units

The display can show a maximum of 3 instruments at any given time. Each instrument can be selected for each display area → Fig. 129 ①.

Swipe your finger up or down on a gauge to select a different instrument.

For some gauges, the units can be changed in the Infotainment system. See → [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

### Off-road display instruments (depending on equipment):

- **Altimeter:** The altimeter shows the current altitude above sea level (in the unit m or ft).
- **Steering angle display:** The vehicle's steering angle is displayed corresponding to the amount the steering wheel is turned. The value is positive for a left steering angle and negative for a right steering angle. If the wheel on the display is aligned vertically, the vehicle wheels point straight ahead.
- **Compass:** The compass shows the current driving direction.
- **Engine coolant temperature gauge:** The display corresponds to the engine coolant temperature display in the instrument cluster. A yellow transition range is also marked. If the needle in the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the cold range, the engine has not reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature. Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may go higher when the engine is working hard, especially in hot weather. This is not a cause for concern as long as the indicator light  does not light up or flash in the instrument cluster. See → [Engine coolant](#).
- **Engine oil temperature gauge:** If the needle in the engine oil temperature gauge is located in the cold range, the engine has not reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads until the engine has reached operating temperature. The engine has reached operating temperature when the needle moves into the center of the gauge under normal driving conditions. The needle may move farther to the right on the gauge with a heavier engine load at high outside temperatures. This is not a cause for concern as long as the indicator light  does not light up or flash in the instrument cluster. See → [Engine oil](#).

### Adapting the display areas to the driving situation

Select the three possible instruments that best correspond to the driving situation and the environmental conditions or terrain, for example:

- **Sandy terrain:** Engine oil temperature gauge, steering angle display, and engine coolant temperature gauge.
- **Inclines:** Steering angle display, engine coolant temperature gauge, and altimeter.
- **Alpine terrain:** Steering angle display, altimeter, and compass.

### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never pay so much attention to the gauges in the Infotainment system that you fail to notice what is going on around you.

### NOTE

To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.

## Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold)

Some vehicles are equipped with Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold), a feature that helps keep the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting out on a hill, for example after stopping at a traffic light. You don't have to apply and release the parking brake while depressing the accelerator. For Hill Start Assist to work, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be in Drive (**D/S**) or Reverse (**R**) and you must use the foot brake to hold the vehicle before starting to move.

Hill Start Assist keeps the brake applied for almost 2 seconds with the same force you used to prevent the vehicle from moving. This gives you time to take your foot off the brake and gently depress the accelerator to get the vehicle moving again. If you do not depress the accelerator pedal and get the vehicle moving again within this time, the brakes will release and the vehicle will roll downhill. Furthermore, if any requirement for engaging Hill Start Assist is no longer met while the vehicle is stopped, Hill Start Assist disengages and the brakes are automatically released and will no longer hold the vehicle.

### Hill Start Assist is activated automatically when the following points are met at the same time:

- Hold the **stopped** vehicle on an incline with the foot or parking brake.
- The engine must be running smoothly.
- All four wheels must have sufficient contact with the road.
- The vehicle must be in Drive or Sport Drive (**D/S**) if headed up a hill or Reverse (**R**) if backing up a hill, and the foot brake must be depressed to keep the vehicle from moving.

To drive off, take your foot off the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator within 2 seconds.

#### Hill Start Assist is immediately deactivated:

- If any requirement listed in the table above is no longer met.
- If the engine is not running smoothly or the engine malfunctions.
- If the engine stalls or is switched off.
- If the transmission is in Neutral (N).
- If a tire does not have enough road contact (such as when the vehicle is tipped or at an angle).

#### WARNING

The intelligent technology of Hill Start Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics. Never let the increased convenience provided by Hill Start Assist tempt you into taking risks.

- The Hill Start Assist feature cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations (for example, if the surface is icy or slippery).
- Hill Start Assist can only help keep the vehicle from moving for less than 2 seconds. After that, the brakes will be released and the vehicle can roll down the hill.

## Hill Descent Control

Lights up

Possible cause or meaning

*When displayed in white in the instrument cluster display:*

The **Offroad** driving mode is on, Hill Descent Control is regulating ⇒ [Off-road Driving Mode Selection](#).



*When displayed in gray in the Infotainment system:*

The **Offroad** driving mode is off and Hill Descent Control is off ⇒ [Off-road Driving Mode Selection](#).

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Hill Descent Control helps the driver on steep downhill grades by actively braking the all four wheels to limit the speed when driving forward or reversing on steep slopes. The wheels do not lock as the ABS remains active ⇒ .

If you enter a downhill slope traveling at a speed below 18 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle speed will be limited to a speed between about 1-18 mph (2-30 km/h). The driver can use the accelerator pedal and the brakes to adjust the speed within this range. The feature is interrupted and restarted each time.

One requirement for speed regulation is that the tires must have a sufficiently good grip on the ground underneath. For example, Hill Descent Control **cannot** perform its function on icy slopes or on slopes with a slippery road surface.

An indicator light  comes on in the instrument cluster display whenever Hill Descent Control is active.

Hill Descent Control only regulates the brakes when certain requirements are met.

#### Hill Descent Control regulates automatically if all of the following conditions apply:

- An **Offroad** driving mode is selected ⇒ [Off-road Driving Mode Selection](#)
- The indicator light  is on (in the instrument cluster display).
- The vehicle's engine is running.
- The vehicle speed is under 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The downhill grade is at least 10% when driving forward or 9% when reversing.
- The driver does not press the gas or brake pedals.

#### Hill Descent Control does not regulate vehicle speed if one of the following occurs:

- The downhill grade is less than 10%.
- **OR:** The vehicle speed is over 18 mph (30 km/h).
- **OR:** The driver brakes or accelerates.

Hill Descent Control begins regulating speed again the next time the requirements are met.

## WARNING

The intelligent technology of Hill Descent Control cannot overcome the laws of physics. Never let the increased convenience provided by Hill Descent Control tempt you into taking risks.

- Always adjust your speed, driving style, and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.
- Hill Descent Control is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- Hill Descent Control cannot slow the vehicle down in all situations (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

## WARNING

Always be ready to apply the brakes. Otherwise accidents and injuries can occur.

- Hill Descent Control is merely a driving aid and cannot always slow the vehicle down enough on all downhill grades.
- The vehicle may pick up speed despite the use of Hill Descent Control.

## WARNING

Driving with too little fuel in the fuel tank increases the risk of stalling, especially when driving up and down hills.

- If your vehicle stalls suddenly, this can cause an accident and serious personal injuries.
- Driver assistance and braking assistance systems can malfunction when there is too little fuel in the tank and cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is almost empty.



The Hill Descent Control also works when backing down a hill.

## Off-road driving

### Some basics

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Technical terms explained*

⇒ *Before driving off-road*

⇒ *General rules and good driving practices*

⇒ *Rollover warning*

⇒ *Useful off-road driving equipment*

⇒ *Safety and off-road driving*

⇒ *Selecting the right gear*

⇒ *Driving in rough terrain*

⇒ *Driving through water*

⇒ *Driving over snow-covered terrain*

⇒ *Driving in sand and mud*

⇒ *Driving in steep terrain*

⇒ *Driving crosswise on a slope*

⇒ *Avoiding deep ruts and depressions*

⇒ *Crossing ditches*

⇒ *If the vehicle is stuck*

⇒ *After driving off-road*

Vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) can be driven on and off-road. In this chapter you will find important information on driving your vehicle. It is very important to review this chapter before taking your vehicle off-road.

Driving off the beaten path is challenging - for the driver, the passengers, and the vehicle itself.

It requires special knowledge and skills different from those needed for highway driving. Successful off-roading comes from a combination of theory and practice. This includes knowing the right way to handle the expected and the unexpected ⇒ ▲.

Safety must always have top priority. Never overestimate your own abilities or underestimate the difficulties that come with driving off-road. Never let determination get the better of your common sense. If the going gets too difficult, turn back and find a better route to your destination.

The wide range of terrain you can come up against, and the many risks and dangers the terrain may hide, make it impossible to foresee and deal in this Manual with every conceivable off-road situation you may face. For this reason, it is vital for you to know what lies ahead and evaluate possible dangers before trying to drive over difficult or unfamiliar terrain.

The vehicle is not designed for trips with an expedition-like character.

### WARNING

Inadequate experience and knowledge of the demands of off-road driving can lead to critical situations and cause serious personal injury.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on, or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- The intelligent technology of the vehicle cannot change the laws of physics. Despite the ABS, adverse terrain can cause instability through blocked wheels – for example, if you brake hard when driving on a loose gravel road. Difficult terrain may also prevent the ESC from doing its job.
- Never operate the vehicle at the limit of its performance ability. Always leave a good safety margin.
- To reduce the risk of loss of control and serious personal injury, never use the cruise control when driving off-road.
- Even terrain that looks easy can be difficult and dangerous, putting you and your passengers in a critical situation. It is often best to check an area out on foot first.
- Drive with special care and think ahead in off-road terrain. If you drive too fast, or fail to maneuver the vehicle properly, you could cause personal injury and damage the vehicle.
- Never drive faster than is appropriate for the prevailing terrain and the road, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Never drive too fast across embankments, ramps, or slopes. The vehicle could become airborne. If that happens, you will not be able to steer and can lose control.
- If your vehicle becomes airborne, always keep the front wheels pointing straight ahead. If the wheels are not pointing straight ahead when the vehicle lands, it could roll over.
- Never allow people to stand in front of or behind the vehicle if you have put items such as stones or pieces of wood under the wheels to improve traction on slippery ground. Spinning wheels can turn these items into dangerous flying objects causing serious personal injury.
- Even areas that look harmless can be dangerous. Potholes, ditches, trenches, drop-offs, different kinds of obstacles, and soft or swampy ground often cannot be seen and can be partially or fully covered by water, grass, branches, or other things. Driving over such terrain can cause accidents and severe injuries. Before crossing an unknown area, carefully explore the route you plan to take on foot.

### WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.
- Your vehicle has a higher center of gravity and an increased risk of rollover while driving than a standard passenger vehicle that is not suitable for occasional off-road use.
- Never drive too fast, particularly through curves, and never attempt extreme driving maneuvers.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, terrain, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Transporting luggage or other objects on top of your vehicle raises the center of gravity and can further increase the risk of rollover.
- Always avoid driving crosswise on a slope.
- If stopped crosswise on a slope, never get out of the vehicle using the doors that face downhill. The combined center of gravity of the vehicle and its contents (passengers and load) can shift, causing the vehicle to tip over and roll down the slope. Always exit the vehicle calmly using the doors that face uphill.

### WARNING

The cruise control system ⇒ *Cruise control* and Front Assist system ⇒ *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)* are designed for highway use. They are completely unsuitable for off-road situations and can even be dangerous when used off-road.

- To reduce the risk of loss of control and serious personal injury, never use the cruise control system or Front Assist system when driving off-road.

### ⚠ WARNING

Never drive off-road if you are low on fuel. Too little fuel in the tank can cause an accident and serious injuries. You can also run out of fuel in a remote area where getting help is difficult or impossible.

- When the fuel tank is almost empty, fuel supply to the engine can be interrupted, especially when driving over bumps, across slopes, and up and down hills. The interruption in fuel flow could stall the engine during a maneuver in difficult terrain and make you lose control of the vehicle.
- Steering and braking assistance as well as ESC and related systems will not work if the engine sputters or stalls due to lack of fuel. This can cause loss of vehicle control, especially in difficult terrain.
- Always refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel.

### ! NOTE

If the power sunroof or the windows are open when it rains or snows, the interior of the vehicle will get wet and the vehicle may be damaged. Always keep the windows and the power sunroof closed when driving off-road.

## Technical terms explained

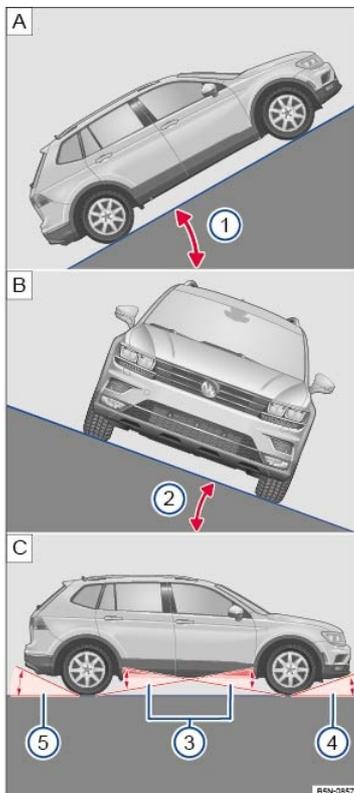


Fig. 130 Important angles to know for off-road driving.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 130 :

- ① Gradient angle
- ② Lateral angle
- ③ Breakover angle
- ④ Approach angle
- ⑤ Departure angle

- **Center of gravity:** The vehicle's center of gravity affects its rollover characteristics. Since the vehicle has higher ground clearance for off-road driving, its center of gravity is also higher than that of standard passenger cars. The higher center of gravity increases the risk of vehicle rollover while driving. Always keep this in mind when driving. Heed the safety information and warnings in this Manual ⇒ ⚠.

- **Ground clearance:** The vertical distance between the level ground and the lowest part on the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

- **Gradient angle:** The number of feet (meters) in altitude gained when traveling about 328 ft (100 m) is given as a percentage or in degrees ⇒ Fig. 130①. The

gradient angle indicates the maximum slope the vehicle can climb unassisted (depends on road surface and engine power).

- **Lateral angle (vehicle slope):** The maximum angle the vehicle may be driven across terrain without the vehicle rolling over (depends on height of center of gravity) ②.
- **Breakover angle:** Maximum permitted angle given in degrees that a vehicle driven at low speed can clear a ramp without the underbody of the vehicle scraping the ramp ③ ⇒ ▲.
- **Approach/departure angles:** The approach ④ and departure ⑤ angles are the transition from flat ground to a slope, or from a slope to flat ground. The maximum angles (in degrees) the vehicle can be driven at low speed along an embankment without the bumper or underbody scraping ⇒ ▲.
- **Fall line:** The vertical drop route.
- **Articulation:** Articulation capability of the vehicle while driving on one side over an object.

## ⚠ WARNING

Never exceed the recommended maximum values listed for the vehicle ⇒ *Dimensions*. Exceeding these values will result in serious personal injury and/or damage to your vehicle.

- All values listed are for ideal conditions and assume firm, even surfaces that are dry and not slippery.
- Off-road conditions will always be less than ideal. Always reduce the maximum values listed to allow an adequate margin of safety between the ideal maximum value and your vehicle's actual off-road situation.

## Before driving off-road

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

### Checklist

For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out each of the following steps in the order listed before every off-road trip ⇒ ▲ :

- ✓ Inform yourself thoroughly before exploring nature and the terrain you plan to visit.
- ✓ Do not plan extensive day trips. Consider the increased fuel consumption during off-road driving.
- ✓ Fill the fuel tank completely. Off-road driving consumes significantly more fuel than driving on the road.
- ✓ Check whether the tires are suitable for the off-road trip you are planning. For difficult terrain, always use special off-road tires.
- ✓ Check, and if necessary correct, the cold tire inflation pressure in all tires, including the collapsible spare tire (if any).
- ✓ Fill engine oil up to the MAX mark so the engine can be properly lubricated. This is especially important when driving through potholes and up and down hills.
- ✓ Completely refill the windshield washer reservoir with water and window washer fluid.
- ✓ Install a towing eye in the front of the vehicle. Once the vehicle gets stuck, it may no longer be possible to install a towing eye.
- ✓ Check the vehicle tool kit. Add tools and other gear based on the special requirements of the trip you will be taking Vehicle tool kit.
- ✓ Stow luggage as low and flat as possible in the vehicle. Safely secure all loose objects.

### Before driving off-road the first time

Before you drive your vehicle off-road, we urge you to take an appropriate off-road driving course. Taking a course is especially important if you have little or no experience driving off-road. Even more experienced off-roaders can benefit from an off-road driving course.

A good course can show you how to handle the vehicle in a wide range of off-road situations and how to more safely deal with difficult terrain. Driving off-road demands a different attitude and very different skills compared with highway driving. Your safety and that of your passengers will depend on your knowledge, skill, and caution as a driver ⇒ ▲.

## ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist above. Follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense.
- All occupants must sit properly and wear safety belts whenever the vehicle is moving.

## General rules and good driving practices

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

### Off-road rules of conduct

Always be responsible and respect the environment when driving off-road. Driving through undergrowth and over meadows can destroy areas where animals live.

- Only drive where it is permitted.

- Keep noise and dust to a minimum.
- Leave nature as you found it.
- Always stay on designated trails and paths.
- Avoid sensitive natural habitats.
- Yield to drivers who are driving uphill or passing.

### Good driving practices

Special rules apply to off-road driving ⇒ ▲:

- Never drive off-road alone. At least 2 off-road vehicles should travel together. Unexpected situations can occur. For this reason, take along the equipment you need to call for help in case of an emergency.
- Stop and explore the route on foot wherever necessary and always before traveling over difficult trails or terrain.
- Drive over hill crests slowly. Otherwise, the vehicle can tip and be damaged and disabled.
- Drive slowly through difficult terrain segments. On slippery surfaces, upshift and keep the vehicle moving.
- Look for terrain that is firm and stable. Off-road ground is frequently soft, and the tires can sink into it. This reduces ground clearance and fording depth.
- Even at low speeds, always follow other vehicles at a safe distance. If the first vehicle suddenly gets stuck, the second vehicle can still stop in time without getting stuck as well.

### ⚠ WARNING

Off-road driving can be dangerous, can lead to accidents, vehicle damage, stranding in remote areas, and serious personal injury.

- Never drive too fast or for terrain and weather conditions.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, terrain, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Always avoid sudden, sharp maneuvers that increase the risk of loss of vehicle control or getting stuck.
- When driving off-road look and think ahead, expect the unexpected.
- To reduce the risk of loss of control and serious personal injury, never use the cruise control system ⇒ *Cruise control* or the Front Assist system ⇒ *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)* when driving off-road. Cruise control and Front Assist are designed for highway use. These systems are completely unsuitable for off-road situations and can even be dangerous when used off-road.

### ⓘ NOTE

Always make sure the vehicle has enough ground clearance. Severe damage to the underbody can occur if the vehicle bottoms out. The damage could disable the vehicle and leave you stranded.

🌸 Tread lightly is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Volkswagen supports the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to preserve our national forests and other public and private lands by treading lightly.

## Rollover warning

📖 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

A vehicle's **center of gravity** affects its rollover characteristics. Since vehicle has higher ground clearance for off-road driving, its center of gravity is also higher than that of standard passenger cars. The higher center of gravity increases the risk of vehicle rollover while driving. Always keep this in mind when driving. Heed the safety information and warnings in this Manual.

### ⚠ WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.
- Your vehicle has a higher center of gravity and an increased risk of rollover while driving than a standard passenger vehicle that is not suitable for occasional off-road use.
- Never drive too fast, particularly through curves, and never attempt extreme driving maneuvers.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, terrain, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Transporting luggage or other objects on top of your vehicle raises the center of gravity and can further increase the risk of rollover.
- Always avoid driving crosswise on a slope.
- If stopped crosswise on a slope, never get out of the vehicle using the doors that face downhill. The combined center of gravity of the vehicle and its contents (passengers and load) can shift, causing the vehicle to tip over and roll down the slope. Always exit the vehicle calmly using the doors that face

uphill.

## Useful off-road driving equipment

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The checklist lists only a few of the items that could be very helpful when driving off-road ⇒ [▲](#). If you have user's manuals or assembly instructions for the listed extra equipment, take them with you off-road and heed them.

### Checklist

**Useful off-road driving equipment** ⇒ [▲](#) :

- ✓ Water, compass, maps, flashlight and spare batteries.
- ✓ Cable winch, tow rod or tow rope strong enough for your vehicle.
- ✓ Mobile phone, shovel, blankets, and rubber boots, tape measure, and yardstick.
- ✓ Electric air compressor to connect to the 12 volt outlet in the vehicle for inflating the tires.
- ✓ A wooden plank about 2 inches thick and 3 feet long or similar aluminum frame as traction aid for a stuck vehicle or as a base for the vehicle jack.
- ✓ Snow chains for all 4 tires, additional spare tires, and vehicle tool kit.

### WARNING

Accidents and severe personal injury can result from the improper use of tools or equipment as well as from the use of tools or equipment that are damaged or not right for the job to be done.

## Safety and off-road driving

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Proper seating position and safety belt use is always important, regardless of whether you are on the highway or driving off-road.

- Every person in the vehicle must sit properly and wear his or her safety belt whenever the vehicle is moving ⇒ [Sitting properly and safely](#).
- Every occupant must properly fasten the safety belt belonging to the seat he or she occupies and keep the belt properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies to the driver and all passengers, even when driving off-road ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

Safety belts save lives – on the road and off.

### Distance to the steering wheel

When driving off-road, you may want to sit a little differently than you would for normal highway driving.

Depending on the terrain, you may need more strength to control the steering wheel because of the higher forces that can come up from the front wheels.

Sit so that you can clearly see the terrain in front of you, especially when you are driving up or down slopes. Never sit so that the distance from the center of your breast bone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel is less than 10 inches (25 cm) ⇒ [Sitting properly and safely](#).

### Suitable shoes

Never wear shoes with a slippery sole or high-heels when driving off-road, and never drive off-road barefoot. Always wear shoes that support your feet properly and give you a good feel for the pedals.

### WARNING

Not wearing safety belts, or wearing them improperly will increase the risk of serious injuries when driving off-road. Holding the steering wheel improperly will reduce your ability to control the vehicle and can also increase the risk of injury when driving off-road.

- Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death during sudden braking or driving maneuvers and in automobile accidents. For this reason, always wear your safety belt properly and make sure all passengers wear their safety belts properly as well whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Never wrap your thumbs around the steering wheel rim. When driving off-road, obstacles in front of the wheels can make the steering wheel jerk suddenly in your hands and cause personal injury. Rest your thumbs pointing up on the surface of the steering wheel at the 3 and 9 o'clock positions.

## Selecting the right gear

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Different kinds of terrain require different gears. Selecting the right one helps you to get through safely.

Before driving over a difficult section, think carefully about which gear you should select. With time, you will learn which gear is best for various types of terrain.

### Basics

- If you select the right gear you will usually not have to slow the vehicle down with the foot brake when driving down slopes - the engine will help brake the vehicle. You will then only have to use the brake when the braking power of the engine is not enough.
- Never accelerate more than necessary when driving off-road. If you accelerate too hard, the wheels could lose traction and you could lose control of the vehicle.

### Automatic transmission

- Use selector lever position **(D)** when driving on ordinary level areas.
- Use Tiptronic mode and put the vehicle in **2nd** or **3rd** gear when driving through moderately difficult off-road terrain, for example mud, sand, water, or hills ⇒ *Automatic transmission*.
- Use Tiptronic mode and shift into **1st** gear when driving up or down steep hills ⇒ *Automatic transmission*. Use Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold) ⇒ *Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold)*.
- On soft or slippery surfaces, drive at an appropriate speed and in the highest possible driving range of the Tiptronic.

## Driving in rough terrain

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Driving tips

- Use **Off-road** mode ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*
- Drive no faster than a crawl over rocky sections.
- Drive around obstacles such as rocks wherever possible. If this is not possible:
- Carefully advance until one front wheel is *on* the rock and then slowly drive over it ⇒ .

### NOTE

- If you are facing a large rock or tree stump or other large obstacle, do not attempt to drive straight over it or to climb over it with just 2 wheels. A rock or other obstacle that is too high for your vehicle to clear will damage and may disable the vehicle if you try to drive over it. You could be stranded far away from help. Never let large obstacles pass under the vehicle. If there is no way around them and they are too large to drive over, back up and find another route.
- Even obstacles that are lower than your vehicle's ground clearance can come into contact with the underbody and damage or disable your vehicle. Such obstacles are especially dangerous when the ground around them is soft or there is a dip right in front of or behind them. They are also dangerous if you drive over them too quickly and the shock absorbers are compressed.

 Leaking engine oil and brake fluid can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Driving through water

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Important factors when deciding whether to drive through water:

- Water depth.
- Strength of the current.
- Firmness of stream bed and bank.
- Shape of the bank.
- Objects in the water.
- Maximum fording depth of the vehicle ⇒ *Dimensions*.

### Before driving through water

Stop, get out of the vehicle, and assess the situation ⇒ .

- Measure water depth from one side to the other. Check the firmness of the bed and banks; check for drop-offs and obstacles in the water ⇒ .
- Make sure it is possible to enter and exit the water safely.
- Check the angle of the embankment and the firmness of the ground on each bank.
- Switch to off-road mode.

## Driving through standing and slow-moving water

The vehicle can drive through standing water if the ground under the water is firm enough ⇒ ⚠. Never exceed maximum fording depth ⇒ *Dimensions*.

- Drive slowly into a river in the direction of the flow. Never exceed the departure/approach angle and lateral angle (vehicle slope).
- Always drive at a constant speed to the other side.

This will help prevent engine damage from the water. It also allows an air pocket to form in front of the engine that can supply it with the necessary air.

Entering the water quickly or driving too fast through the water will create a bow wave. A bow wave can force its way into the engine air intake duct and seriously damage the engine.

## Driving through fast-moving water

Driving through fast-moving water is very dangerous ⇒ ⚠.

The vehicle can be swept away by the current. Even vehicles with high ground clearance can get stuck if the ground is washed out from under the tires. Fast-moving water will build up against the side of your vehicle. This will make the water deeper. Always think about this before entering the water. Water volume, speed and depth can be very unpredictable and dangerous.

If you are uncertain how fast the water is flowing, look for a shallower place where you can cross in safety. If you cannot find a safe place to cross, turn back.

## After driving through water

- After crossing through deep water, stop the engine and check the oil dipstick. If there are beads of water on the oil dipstick or the oil level has increased, do not start the engine. Change the engine oil immediately. Depending on the amount of water in the oil, running or starting the engine can result in engine failure or serious engine damage.
- Always dry the brakes by braking a couple of times.
- After driving through water, have the vehicle drive train and electrical system thoroughly inspected for damage by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## ⚠ WARNING

Flowing water is very powerful and can sweep your vehicle away. This can lead to an extremely dangerous situation and cause an accident with serious personal injuries.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- Never stop in the water.
- If water gets into the engine, your vehicle can break down. You will lose control of a broken down vehicle, and it can be swept away.
- Soft surfaces, mud, underwater obstacles, and holes can cause accidents and can cause the vehicle to break down in the water. This can lead to extreme danger.
- Rapidly flowing water can develop strong forces that can pull the vehicle downstream. This can cause accidents and fatal injuries.
- Drive through water only where the banks and bottom are firm enough and the water is shallower at all points than the maximum permissible fording depth for your vehicle ⇒ *Dimensions*.

## ! NOTE

- Vehicle components such as the engine, drive train, suspension or electrical system may be severely damaged by driving through water.
- Avoid stopping in deep water. This can let water get inside the vehicle.
- On soft ground, the tires dig into the surface. This reduces fording depth. Make sure that the ground is sufficiently firm.
- Avoid creating a bow wave in front of the vehicle while driving through water. A bow wave could force its way into the engine air intake duct and seriously damage the engine.
- If you even briefly exceed the maximum fording depth when driving through water, severe engine damage will result. This engine damage will lead to a vehicle breakdown. This can disable the vehicle in the water.
- Never drive over salt flats or through salt or salty water. Salt causes vehicle corrosion. Rinse all parts of the vehicle that were exposed to salt or salt water right away with fresh water.

## Driving over snow-covered terrain

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Install snow chains **only on the front wheels** before driving over snow-covered terrain.

Snow-covered terrain may look harmless but the snow can hide many dangers. This is particularly true for stretches where you can't see the tracks left by other

vehicles.

## WARNING

Driving through snow-covered terrain is very dangerous.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- Potholes, ruts, ditches, drop-offs, and other obstacles are often partially or completely hidden by the snow, especially when it is deep.
- Snow-covered dangers can lead to an accident, serious personal injury, or stranding under extreme weather conditions.
- Always adapt driving speed and style to load, terrain, visibility, and weather conditions.

## Driving in sand and mud

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Always drive at a constant speed through sand and mud; do not shift gears manually and do not stop.

- Check whether ESC is active. The indicator lights , **ESC OFF**, and  in the instrument cluster must all be off ⇒ [Braking assistance systems](#).
- Always keep the vehicle moving.
- Use **Off-road mode** ⇒ [4MOTION Active Control](#).
- Select a suitable gear and remain in this gear until solid ground is reached ⇒ [Selecting the right gear](#).

Never drive too fast through sand and mud. The wheels may spin and the vehicle can get stuck. If the tires no longer grip, turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly in short, quick movements. This can improve front wheel traction when driving in sand and mud.

### Driving through sand

Never reduce tire inflation pressure before driving through sand ⇒ . If you have reduced the tire pressure to drive through sand, make sure to correct the tire pressure afterwards before driving any farther. Driving with reduced tire pressure can make you lose control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries.

### Driving through mud

Do not change your speed or your direction. The tires can lose their grip in mud. If the vehicle skids, steer in the direction the vehicle is sliding to try to get it back under control.

## WARNING

Driving through sand and mud can be dangerous. The vehicle can skid out of control and crash, causing serious injuries. Always drive carefully when driving in sand and mud.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a different route.

## WARNING

Driving on tires that are not inflated to the correct cold tire inflation pressure can cause an accident with serious or fatal injuries.

- If the tires are not inflated to the correct pressure, they will wear out faster and the vehicle will not handle as well.
- Incorrect tire pressure can make tires overheat, resulting in tire damage including tire tread separation and sudden blowouts that can make you lose control of the vehicle.

## Driving in steep terrain

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Driving on slopes

**Before** driving up or down a slope, get out of the vehicle, explore the terrain, and assess the situation.

- Walk the grade you intend to drive, check the stretch for firmness and obstacles or other hidden dangers ⇒ .
- Find out how the route continues at the end of a steep angle.
- If the route is too steep or too uneven or the ground is too loose, do not drive this route. Find an alternative.
- Drive at a slow, constant speed straight up or down a slope.
- Use just as much power as needed to get up the slope. Too much power makes the tires slip, spin, or lose traction. This can increase your risk of losing control. However, too little power will increase the likelihood of stalling.

- Never stop or try to turn around on a slope.
- Do not let the engine stall.
- Do not change gears while climbing the slope.
- Use the **Off-road** mode ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*.

#### If you get stuck while driving up a slope

- Never try to turn around.
- If your engine stalls, apply the foot brake and restart the engine.
- Shift into reverse and back your vehicle carefully straight down the slope.
- Use the brake to keep the speed steady when backing down to a safe place.

#### Driving down a slope

Never exceed the vehicle's maximum lateral angle (vehicle slope). If an emergency forces you to cross the slope and the vehicle threatens to roll over, immediately steer the vehicle downhill along the fall line.

There is an increased risk of rollover when driving down a slope. For this reason, concentrate on steering safely down the slope.

Use the **Off-road** mode on steep descents ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*.

- Drive down steep slopes in first gear.
- Gently apply the foot brake to help keep the vehicle under control.
- If it is possible and if it is not dangerous, drive straight down the fall line (maximum slope).
- Do not shift into Neutral **(N)**.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

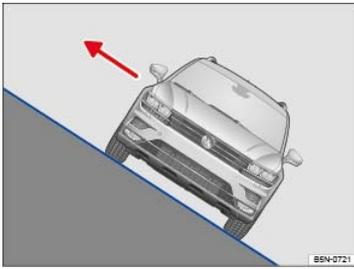
Never try to drive up or down slopes that are too steep for your vehicle. The vehicle could slide away, tip over, or roll over.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- The lateral angle must never be more than the maximum angle approved for the vehicle.
- Always drive along the fall line when driving up or down a slope.
- Never try to turn the vehicle around on a slope. The vehicle could tip over or roll down the slope.
- If the engine stalls or you can no longer drive up the slope for any reason, stop and apply the foot brake. If stalled, apply the foot brake and restart the engine. Then shift into Reverse **(R)** and carefully back your vehicle straight down the slope along the fall line. Keep the vehicle speed slow and even.
- If the engine will not restart, apply constant pressure to the foot brake and carefully back straight down the slope the same way you drove up. Keep the vehicle speed slow and even.
- If the engine is running, select Reverse and carefully back straight down the slope the same way you drove up. Use engine braking power and the foot brake to keep the vehicle speed slow and even.
- Never just roll down a slope with the transmission in Neutral **(N)**. You could lose control of the vehicle.

#### Driving crosswise on a slope



**Fig. 131** Steer downhill along the fall line.



**Fig. 132** On a slope, always exit on the uphill side of the vehicle.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Driving crosswise on a slope is one of the most dangerous off-road driving situations ⇒ .

Even if it seems harmless, never underestimate the difficulties and hazards when driving crosswise on a slope. A vehicle perpendicular to the slope of the hill can become uncontrollable and slide away, tip, or roll over. This could cause severe or fatal injuries to all occupants.

### Driving at an angle to the slope

**Before** driving crosswise on a slope, check whether there is a different, safer route.

If you have to drive across a slope, first make sure the ground is firm and even along your route. If the ground is soft or slippery, the vehicle is more likely to slip away to the side. Make sure that the angle does not become too great due to surface unevenness. This can make the vehicle tip and roll over.

The steeper the slope across which the vehicle is moving, the more important it becomes to make sure the wheels on the lower side do not run over holes or depressions. The wheels on the high side must never run over protruding rocks, tree stumps, or other obstacles.

If the vehicle threatens to tip, immediately steer downhill into the fall line and gently accelerate ⇒ [Fig. 131](#). If it is not possible to steer down the fall line, steer uphill and gently accelerate.

The vehicle center of gravity should be as low as possible. The weight of all passengers should be evenly distributed. Taller or heavier passengers should sit on the higher side of the vehicle. Luggage on the roof should be removed and heavy objects should be secured, as the vehicle could tilt due to the sudden shifting of objects in the vehicle ⇒ .

While driving across the slope, passengers on the rear seats should always sit on the uphill side of the vehicle. In extreme cases, passengers on the downhill side must get out of the vehicle until the hill has been safely crossed.

### Exiting on a hillside

If the vehicle comes to a standstill at a significantly tilted angle on the hillside, all passengers should exit the vehicle on the uphill side ⇒ [Fig. 132](#). This applies even if the uphill door is hard to open. The uphill-side door may swing shut due to its weight or carelessness.

## WARNING

Never try to drive crosswise on a slope, especially one that is too steep for your vehicle. The vehicle could slide sideways and tumble down the slope. To reduce the risk of accidents and serious injuries:

- Never underestimate the difficulties and dangers of driving crosswise on a slope. Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a different route.
- When driving crosswise on a hill, the vehicle can lose its hold, slide sideways, tip or turn over and roll down the hill.
- Make certain that the wheels on the downhill side of the vehicle do not run over holes or depressions. Make certain that the wheels on the high side of the vehicle do not run over rocks, tree stumps, or protruding objects.
- Before driving crosswise on a hill, check whether it is possible to steer into the fall line along the selected route. If this is not possible, select a different route. If the vehicle threatens to tip, immediately steer downhill into the fall line and gently accelerate ⇒ [Fig. 131](#).
- If the vehicle is stopped on a hillside and is laterally tilted, avoid sudden and uncontrolled movement in the vehicle. The vehicle can lose its hold, slide sideways, tip, or turn over and roll down the hill.
- If the vehicle is stopped while pointed crosswise on a steep slope, make certain that no one exits the vehicle through a door on the downhill side. This can shift the vehicle center of gravity to the downhill side. The vehicle can tilt or roll over and roll down the hill. To help minimize this risk, always exit the vehicle through the doors that are facing uphill ⇒ [Fig. 132](#).
- When getting out, make certain that doors opened on the uphill side are not closed carelessly and do not swing shut due to their own weight and injure anybody.

## Avoiding deep ruts and depressions

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Ruts are very common on forest trails, in grassland and fields, as well as on much-used cross-country lanes.

If the ruts and depressions are firm and shallow, simply follow the ruts.

Do not drive in ruts and depressions that are too deep ⇒ ⓘ. If deep ruts and depressions cannot be avoided, turn around.

#### ⓘ NOTE

If ruts and depressions become too deep, the vehicle underbody can bottom out and get stuck. This can damage or even disable the vehicle.

## Crossing ditches

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

- Check whether the approach/departure angle and the lateral angle (tilt) are small enough to allow the vehicle to cross the ditch.
- If possible, cross the ditch at an acute angle ⇒ ⓘ.
- This is only possible if the lateral angle (side-to-side tilt) is not too large.

#### ⚠ WARNING

If the approach/departure angle or the lateral angle of the ditch is too steep for the vehicle, do not attempt to cross the ditch. The vehicle can fall over on its side, slide sideways, or turn over.

#### ⓘ NOTE

If you enter at right angles to the ditch, the front wheels will fall into the ditch. The underbody of the vehicle can get stuck and the vehicle can be damaged or disabled. Getting out of a ditch without assistance is rarely possible, even with all-wheel drive.

## If the vehicle is stuck

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

It takes experience and a fine touch to rock a vehicle back and forth to get it going when it is stuck.

If you go about it the wrong way, you'll dig the vehicle in even deeper and need someone to tow you free.

### If the vehicle won't budge

- Carefully dig out all 4 wheels and make sure that no other parts of the vehicle are stuck in the sand.
- Select reverse gear.
- Carefully accelerate and try to back up in your own track.

If this doesn't help, try placing brushwood, floor mats, or burlap sackcloth directly in front of the tires to improve grip and traction ⇒ ⚠.

### Rocking the vehicle free

Don't spin the wheels. It's unlikely to help you get going and all but certain to dig you in even deeper if you do it too much ⇒ ⚠.

- Switch off Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) ⇒ *Braking assistance systems*.
- Switch to **off-road** mode.
- Turn the steering wheel so that it points straight ahead.
- Shift into reverse and accelerate just to the point where the wheels first start to spin.
- Immediately engage first gear and accelerate again until the wheels just begin to spin.
- Repeat this process to get the vehicle to rock back and forth and then hopefully develop enough forward momentum to get going again.
- Once the vehicle is free, switch ASR back on ⇒ *Braking assistance systems*.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure there are no people or animals in front of or behind the vehicle, especially when it is stuck and you are trying to rock it loose.

- Stones, brush, pieces of wood, and other objects under the wheels can be thrown at high speed and great force when they spin. This can cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- If the stuck vehicle suddenly regains traction, it will lurch forward and can run over anybody who is standing too close to it in the front or in the back.

## After driving off-road

After an off-road drive, you always need to check the vehicle's underbody for damage and may need to clean the radiator grille ⇒ .

## Checklist

**Checklist: Perform after every off-road drive** ⇒  :

- ✓ Clean the turn signal lights, the headlights and taillights, the license plate, and all windows.
- ✓ If required, remove the snow chains.
- ✓ Check tires, suspension struts, and axles for damage and remove coarse dirt, stones, and foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ✓ Examine the vehicle underbody and remove objects such as twigs, leaves, or bits of wood that have gotten stuck in the brake system, the wheels, the suspension, the exhaust system, of the engine . If damage or leaks are detected, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- ✓ Remove coarse dirt from the radiator grille and the vehicle underbody Exterior care and cleaning.
- ✓ Check the engine compartment to for dirt that interferes with engine operation In the engine compartment.
- ✓ After driving in sandy or dusty areas, have the air cleaner checked, and if necessary cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility so that dust, sand, and grit does not get drawn into the engine.
- ✓ Turn the 4MOTION Active Control knob in the front center console back to On-road mode 4MOTION Active Control.
- ✓ Switch ASR/ESC back on Braking assistance systems.

### WARNING

Objects trapped under the vehicle floor can damage the brake system, fuel lines, gaskets, and other underbody parts. Such objects can also ignite on contact with hot vehicle components. You must check after each off-road outing to see whether any foreign objects have gotten stuck in the vehicle underbody.

- Never drive the vehicle if any foreign objects are stuck in the brake system, the wheels, the suspension, the exhaust system, or the engine or engine compartment.
- Flammable materials such as dry leaves or twigs can catch fire from contact with hot vehicle components. A fire can cause serious personal injuries.
- Trapped objects can damage or block the fuel lines, the brake system, gaskets, and other parts of the suspension system. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

### NOTE

Dust, sand, grit, and other material that has collected in the air filter after driving in certain kinds of off-road terrain can be drawn into the engine and cause expensive damage. After driving off-road where it is very dusty or sandy, be sure to have the air filter checked and, if necessary, cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Driver assistance systems

### Cruise control

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Display and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Cruise control operation](#)

Cruise control helps maintain an individually stored constant speed when driving above about 15 mph (20 km/h).

Cruise control slows down the vehicle only by reducing the flow of fuel to the engine, not by braking ⇒ .

### WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injuries.

- Never use cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic or when you cannot keep a safe distance between you and the vehicles ahead of you.
- Never use cruise control on steep, winding, or slippery roads (such gravel roads, wet roads, or snowy or icy roads) or on roads with standing water.
- Never use cruise control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- To help prevent unintended operation of cruise control, switch the system off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.

- When going downhill, the cruise control may not be able to maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will speed up because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.

## Display and indicator lights



Fig. 133 In the instrument cluster display: Cruise control status indications.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Display

Different cruise control versions are available. The stored speed is shown in the instrument cluster display on some equipment versions.

Status ⇒ [Fig. 133](#)

- (A) Cruise control temporarily deactivated. Stored speed displayed in a darker shade or in smaller numbers.
- (B) System malfunction. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- (C) Cruise control activated. No speed stored in memory.
- (D) Cruise control is active. Stored speed displayed in white or in larger numbers.

### Indicator lights

Lights up	Possible cause
	Cruise control is regulating the vehicle speed.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



If the cruise control is switched on when the ignition is switched off, it may be switched on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on, depending on vehicle equipment. No speed is stored for the cruise control.



The displays may vary depending on vehicle equipment.

## Cruise control operation



Fig. 134 Left-hand side of the multi-function steering wheel: Buttons for operating the cruise control.

In order to:	You must: ⇒ Fig. 134	Result:
Switch on cruise control.	Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.	System is switched on, but does not regulate vehicle speed until a speed is set.
Set cruise control to current vehicle speed.	Press the <b>SET</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.	Current vehicle speed is set; cruise control helps to maintain this speed.
Temporarily deactivate cruise control.	Press the <b>CNL</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <b>OR:</b> Briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <b>OR:</b> Depress the brake pedal.	Cruise control is temporarily deactivated. The speed is still stored in the memory.
Resume speed stored in cruise control.	Press the <b>RES</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.	Cruise control resumes speed previously set.
Increase set speed (while cruise control is actively controlling vehicle speed).	Press the <b>+</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <i>Press briefly</i> to increase the speed by 1 mph (1 km/h) and store it.  <i>Press and hold</i> to increase the stored speed continuously until you release the button.	The vehicle will accelerate until the new higher speed is reached and saves the new higher speed in the memory.
Reduce set speed (while cruise control is actively controlling vehicle speed).	Press the <b>-</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <i>Press briefly</i> to reduce the speed by 1 mph (1 km/h) and store it.  <i>Press and hold</i> to reduce the stored speed continuously until you release the button.	Cruise control will slow the vehicle down <i>without braking</i> by reducing the flow of fuel to the engine until the new lower speed is reached and saves the new lower speed in the memory.
Switch off cruise control.	Briefly press the  button <i>twice</i> on the multi-function steering wheel with active regulation.  <b>OR:</b> In any operating mode, press <i>and hold</i> the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.	System is switched off. The set speed is deleted.

### Driving downhill with cruise control

If cruise control cannot maintain constant speed while driving downhill, slow the vehicle with the foot brake and downshift if necessary.

### Automatic deactivation

Cruise control speed regulation is automatically deactivated or temporarily interrupted:

- If the system detects an error that could affect the function of the cruise control.

- If the vehicle has accelerated and goes faster than the stored speed for a longer time.
- If the brake pedal is depressed.
- If regulation related to driving dynamics is taking place, for example, through ESC.
- If an airbag deploys.
- If the selector lever is shifted to Neutral (N). The cruise control will not deactivate when shifting between D/S and Tiptronic mode.
- If there is an automatic braking maneuver from the Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) system ⇒ *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)* .

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Display, warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Radar sensor*

⇒ *Using ACC*

⇒ *When to temporarily switch off ACC*

⇒ *Special driving situations*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Adaptive Cruise Control system (ACC), which helps maintain an individually stored constant speed between about 20 mph (30 km/h) and 95 mph (150 km/h) and a previously set speed-dependent distance interval between your vehicle and those in front of you.

The vehicle may be braked, if the situation so requires, **to a standstill** by an **active braking maneuver** ⇒ .

The ACC system works together with the Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) system, if equipped ⇒ *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)* . Both systems use the same radar sensor at the front of the vehicle to monitor the traffic situation ⇒ *Radar sensor* .

### Driving with ACC

You can override control by ACC at any time. Control will be interrupted if you brake. If you accelerate, control will be interrupted while you are accelerating and the resumed.

### Driver intervention warning

Adaptive Cruise Control has system-specified limits. As a driver, you must control the speed and the distance to other vehicles under some circumstances. If that is necessary, the system requests the driver to take over using a visual and audible warning , even if the vehicle can be braked to a standstill by an active braking maneuver.

### WARNING

Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has limits – Using Adaptive Cruise Control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Adaptive Cruise Control will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control on steep, winding, or slippery roads (such gravel roads, wet roads, or snowy or icy roads) or on roads with standing water.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when driving in heavy or varying stop-and-go traffic.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has a braking power that is only about 30% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability, under certain circumstances the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a stop in time.
- Always turn off Adaptive Cruise Control when entering turn lanes, exit lanes and construction zones or in similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed when the road ahead is clear.
- To help prevent unintended operation of Adaptive Cruise Control, switch the system off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.
- When traveling downhill, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will speed up because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.

- Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.
- If a driver intervention warning or Front Assist warning appears in the instrument cluster display, immediately take over the control of the brake and gas pedals and slow down the vehicle or bring it to stop when necessary and according to the traffic situation.
- Always be prepared to take over the control of the brake and the gas pedal in every situation.

#### NOTE

If you suspect that ACC doesn't work properly or the sensors are damaged, switch off ACC immediately.

- See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the ACC system checked.



The ACC restricts the vehicle speed to 95 mph (150 km/h).



If the ACC is active, you may hear noise during the automatic braking procedure. This is normal; the noises are caused by the braking system.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

### Display, warning and indicator lights

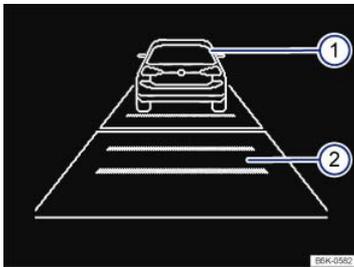


Fig. 135 In the instrument cluster display: ACC deactivated temporarily; vehicle detected ahead, time interval set (displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display).

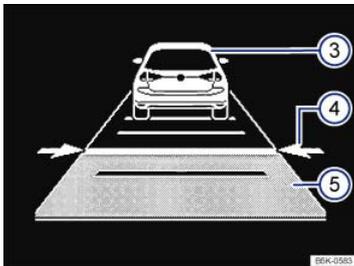


Fig. 136 In the instrument cluster display: ACC active, vehicle detected ahead, time interval is being set (displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Displays

Key to ⇒ Fig. 135 or ⇒ Fig. 136 :

- ① Vehicle detected ahead (ACC inactive)
- ② Selected distance range (ACC inactive)
- ③ Vehicle detected ahead when ACC is active
- ④ Setting the time interval to the vehicle ahead while traveling at the stored speed
- ⑤ Time interval to the vehicle ahead while traveling at the stored speed has been set

#### Warning and indicator lights

Lights up

Possible cause and action, if necessary ⇒

The deceleration of the ACC automatic braking system is not sufficient to bring the vehicle to a full stop in time.



**Depress the brake pedal!** Driver intervention warning!

ACC currently not available.



Park your vehicle and turn the engine off and on again. Check the sensor for damage or soiling. If the system is still not available, have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

*When displayed in white:* ACC is active. No vehicle has been detected ahead. The system is regulating vehicle speed.



*When displayed in gray:* ACC not active. No vehicle has been detected ahead. System switched on, does not regulate.

*When displayed in white:* ACC is active. Vehicle detected ahead. ACC regulates the speed and the distance from the vehicle ahead.



*When displayed in green (vehicles with Volkswagen Digital Cockpit):* ACC active. Vehicle detected ahead. ACC regulates the speed and the distance from the vehicle ahead.

*When displayed in gray:* ACC not active. Vehicle detected ahead. System switched on, does not regulate.



ACC is switched on and active.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

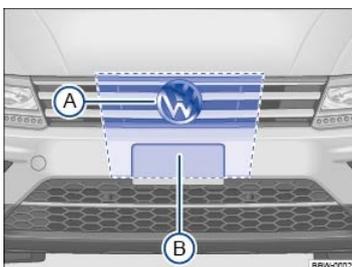
### ⓘ NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



When the ACC is switched on, the display in the instrument cluster can be overwritten by other functions, for example, incoming telephone calls.

## Radar sensor



**Fig. 137** Behind the Volkswagen emblem: Radar sensor **A** and area around the radar sensor to be kept clean and free of obstructions **B**.

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject**

Vehicles equipped with ACC and Front Assist ⇒ *Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)* have a radar sensor behind the Volkswagen emblem to monitor the traffic situation ⇒ **Fig. 137A**. The sensor can detect moving vehicles up to about 130 yards (120 m) in front of your vehicle.

The radar sensor function can be impaired by things such as mud, slush, or snow, or by conditions such as heavy rain or spray. In cases like these, the ACC and Front Assist may not work. The driver message **ACC not available** or **Front Assist: no sensor view!** appears in the instrument cluster display. Clean the radar sensor as required ⇒ ⓘ.

The ACC and Front Assist will automatically be available again as soon as the radar sensor is no longer impaired. The message in the instrument cluster display turns off.

The area in front of and around the radar sensor ⇒ [Fig. 137](#) must not be covered by objects such as stickers, additional headlights, non-standard license plate brackets, or other things, as these items can impair the function of the ACC system.

Any structural modifications to the vehicle, for example, lowering the vehicle or alterations to the front end trim, can impair the function of the ACC and Front Assist systems. Structural modifications should only be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇒ [Parts, accessories, repairs, and modifications](#). Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

The Volkswagen emblem affects the function of the radar sensor. Use the original Volkswagen emblem only.

Incorrectly performed repairs to the front end of the vehicle can change the position of the radar sensor and therefore impair the function of the ACC and Front Assist systems. Repair work should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## NOTE

If you notice that the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or Front Assist doesn't work properly, or if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged or if its position has been changed, switch off ACC and Front Assist immediately. This can help prevent further damage. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the radar sensor realigned.

- The radar sensor can become misaligned if it is hit, for example, when parking the vehicle. Readjusting the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to switch off.
- Repairs to the radar sensor require special knowledge and tools. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
- Remove snow with a brush, and remove ice with a solvent-free deicer spray.
- A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found on ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).

## Using ACC



**Fig. 138** Left-hand side of the multi-function steering wheel: Buttons for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is switched on, the green indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster, and the ACC speed memory and status are shown in the display ⇒ [Fig. 135](#).

### Conditions for starting the Adaptive Cruise Control

The selector lever must be in **D/S** or the Tiptronic position.

### Controlling speed

When switched on, the speed can be stored and set. The stored speed can vary from the speed actually being driven if the distance is being actively controlled.

In order to:	You must: ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 138</a>	Result:
Switch on ACC	Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.	The ACC is switched on, but not activated.
Activate ACC	Press the <b>SET</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.	The current speed is stored and controlled.
Temporarily deactivate ACC	<p>Briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> Depress the brake pedal.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> Press the <b>CNL</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.</p>	Speed regulation is temporarily deactivated. The set speed is still stored.

In order to:	You must: ⇒ Fig. 138	Result:
Resume speed regulation (reactivate ACC)	Press the <b>RES</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.	The speed regulation resumes at the stored speed value.  If no speed has yet been stored, the current speed is stored and controlled.
Increase set speed (while ACC is actively regulating vehicle speed)	Press the <b>+</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <i>Press briefly</i> to increase the speed by 1 mph (1 km/h) and store it.  <i>Press and hold</i> to increase the stored speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) until you release the button.	The vehicle accelerates until the new higher speed is reached and saves the new higher speed in the memory.
Reduce set speed (while ACC is actively regulating vehicle speed)	Press the <b>-</b> button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <i>Press briefly</i> to reduce the speed by 1 mph (1 km/h) and store it.  <i>Press and hold</i> to reduce the stored speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) until you release the button.	Speed is reduced by accelerator release or automatic braking until the new lower speed is reached.
Switch off ACC	<i>Press and hold</i> the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.  <i>Briefly press</i> the  button on the multi-function steering wheel if the ACC is temporarily switched off.	The system is switched off and the stored speed is canceled.

### Setting the distance interval

You can set the speed-dependent distance from the vehicle ahead to one of 5 levels.

In wet road conditions, you should always set a larger distance than when driving in dry road conditions.

The following distances can be selected:

- Very close
- Close
- Medium
- Far
- Very far

The distance interval to the vehicle ahead is set using the  button on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 138. The ACC display appears when the button is pressed ⇒ *Display, warning and indicator lights*. To set the distance interval, press the  button.

When the largest interval is reached, the distance returns to the shortest interval when the button is pressed again.

The distance interval can also be set using the **+** or **-** buttons on the multi-function steering wheel immediately after the  button on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 138 has been pressed.

In the Infotainment system, you can set the distance level that should be selected when ACC is switched on by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, and Assistance systems function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

## Selecting the driving mode or drive program

*Vehicles with Driving Mode Selection:* Vehicle acceleration and deceleration can become more sporty, depending on the selected driving mode ⇒ *4MOTION Activ Control*.

*Vehicles without Driving Mode Selection:* The drive program can influence the way the vehicle accelerates when ACC is active. On appropriately equipped vehicles you can select the following drive programs in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Assistance systems function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays* :

- Eco
- Comfort
- Normal
- Sport

### The following conditions could prevent the ACC from reacting, or delay its ability to react:

- When driving in tight curves.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- When Front Assist is switched off or if there is a fault.
- When no gear is selected.
- When the ESC is taking corrective action.
- When the driver safety belt is not buckled.
- When several brake lights on the vehicle or trailer are faulty.
- When the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- When the vehicle is in Reverse **(R)**.
- When weather conditions are poor.
- When narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles, are moving in front of your vehicle.
- When vehicles are traveling slightly offset to the left or right in front of your vehicle.
- When there is strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, for example, in multilevel parking structures.
- When the system cannot detect the traffic situation clearly.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles in front of your vehicle protrude to the side, rear, or above the normal vehicle dimensions.
- When the vehicle is traveling faster than about 95 mph (150 km/h).
- When the original Volkswagen emblem is not installed.

### ACC system limitations

The ACC radar sensor can only detect vehicles that are moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Objects that cannot be detected by the radar sensor include:

- People.
- Animals.
- Stationary vehicles, such as a broken-down vehicle.
- Vehicles crossing in front of your vehicle.
- Oncoming traffic in your lane.
- Other stationary objects.

### DANGER!

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury or even death.

- Always obey applicable traffic laws when setting the distance to the vehicles ahead in traffic.
- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention or traffic.
- Always use good judgment and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control on narrow or winding roads or under poor road conditions (snow, ice, streets covered with standing water or gravel, for example) or when visibility is poor, especially when it is foggy.
- Always select a greater following distance to the vehicle ahead on wet roads than on dry roads.

## WARNING

Improper use of the Adaptive Cruise Control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has limits – it will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle.
- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
- Never drive at speeds that are too fast for traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has a braking power that is only about 30% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability, and the automatic braking function may not be able to bring the vehicle to a stop in time.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when you cannot drive safely at a steady speed, including on city streets, on winding roads or when road conditions are poor (for example, on ice, gravel, in fog, heavy rain or on wet roads that increase the risk of hydroplaning).
- The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy road spray. These and similar conditions can prevent vehicles up ahead from being accurately detected and in some cases they may not be detected at all. Do not use ACC when the radar sensors cannot accurately detect vehicles moving ahead of you in traffic.
- Always turn off Adaptive Cruise Control when entering turn lanes, exit lanes and construction zones or in similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed when the road ahead is clear.
- Never rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, especially when the Adaptive Cruise Control is being used because doing so will override the braking function.
- Always pay attention to traffic, especially when Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on.
- Always maintain a safe speed and distance between your vehicle and other vehicles while considering the traffic situation. This is the duty of the driver. Adaptive Cruise Control is merely an aid to the driver.
- To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for existing road, traffic or weather conditions.
- Always select a speed and distance to traffic ahead that is safe and appropriate under the prevailing traffic, road, weather and lighting conditions.
- Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.



The stored speed is canceled when the ignition or the ACC is switched off.



ACC is automatically deactivated when ASR is switched off.

## When to temporarily switch off ACC

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

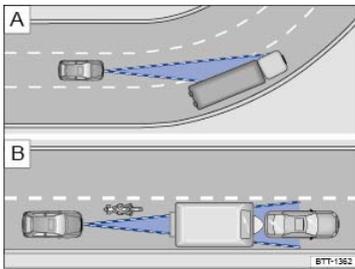
Please deactivate ACC under following conditions due to system limitations ⇒  :

- When driving around curves, turn lanes, highway ramps, or construction sites; to prevent unwanted acceleration of the vehicle.
- When driving through tunnels.
- On roads with more than one lane, if other vehicles are driving more slowly in the fast lane. Vehicles in other lanes will normally not be detected and will, in this case, be passed from the slow lane.
- Under bad weather conditions or bad visibility, for example, in heavy rain, snowfall, or fog.

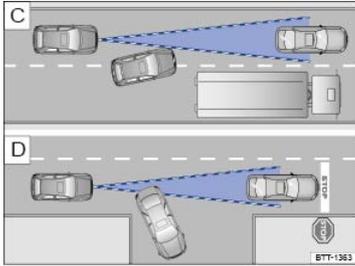
## WARNING

Not deactivating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) in the situations mentioned above can cause collisions, other accidents, and serious personal injury.

## Special driving situations



**Fig. 139** Driving in a curve. Motorcycle traveling ahead outside of the sensor range.



**Fig. 140** Vehicle changing lanes. A turning and a stationary vehicle ahead.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Adaptive Cruise Control has physical and system-related limits. The driver may therefore feel that, in certain circumstances, some Adaptive Cruise Control reactions are unwanted or occur with a delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle whenever necessary.

### ACC stop-and-go

ACC will brake your vehicle to a standstill if the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill. The vehicle is then held stationary by the brakes. As long as the text message **ACC is ready** appears in the instrument cluster display (which lasts no longer than a few seconds), ACC will resume speed regulation as soon as the vehicle in front starts moving again.

To drive forward again after the message **ACC is ready** has disappeared from the instrument cluster display, press the **RES** button or depress the accelerator.

ACC will not resume speed regulation after pressing the **RES** button in the following situations:

- The vehicle standstill lasts longer than about 3 minutes.
- A vehicle door is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.

### Driving around curves and traffic circles

When driving into a curve and driving out of a long curve, the radar sensor may react to a vehicle in the next lane ⇒ [Fig. 139 A](#). In such situations, the vehicle may decelerate unnecessarily or not react to the vehicle in front. In this case, you must either override the ACC by depressing the accelerator, interrupt the braking procedure by depressing the brake pedal, or press the button on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒ [Using ACC](#).

### Driving through tunnels

The function of the distance radar may be limited when driving in tunnels. Switch off ACC when driving through tunnels.

### Narrow vehicles and vehicles offset to one side

Narrow vehicles and vehicles traveling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle can only be detected by the radar sensor when they are within sensor range ⇒ [Fig. 139 B](#). This applies especially to narrow vehicles such as motorcycles. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles traveling ahead of you, are often detected late or not at all under some circumstances.

### Vehicles with oversize loads or special equipment

Under certain circumstances, ACC will not correctly recognize vehicles carrying oversize loads or loads that exceed the vehicle dimensions, like flatbed trailer trucks.

Switch off ACC when driving behind or while passing such vehicles. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

### Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change into your lane within a short distance can only be detected by the radar sensor once they are within sensor range ⇒ [Fig. 140 C](#). The result is a delayed reaction by the Adaptive Cruise Control. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

### Stationary vehicles

The ACC will not detect stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam or a broken down vehicle, or a vehicle approaching you in the same lane.

If a vehicle detected by Adaptive Cruise Control turns or changes lanes and there is a stationary vehicle in front of that vehicle, the system will not react to the stationary vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 140](#). If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

### Oncoming vehicles

ACC does not detect oncoming vehicles in your lane.

### Metal objects on the road

Metal objects on the road, such as tracks or metal plates, can lead to unwanted reactions of the system, such as abrupt braking maneuvers.

### Possible radar sensor function impairments

If the radar sensor function is impaired by heavy rain, spray, snow or mud, Adaptive Cruise Control switches off temporarily. A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display. Clean the radar sensors as required.

The Adaptive Cruise Control will automatically be available again as soon as the radar sensor is working properly. The message in the instrument cluster display switches off, and the Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, for example, in multilevel parking structures, can impair the function of the radar sensor.

### Overheated brakes

Adaptive Cruise Control may switch off temporarily if the brakes overheat significantly, for example from braking maneuvers or driving down steep slopes. A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display. Adaptive Cruise Control cannot be activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control can be activated again once the temperature of the brakes decreases sufficiently. The message in the instrument cluster display switches off. If the message does not go out for a long time, there is a fault.

If the message **ACC not available** does not switch off, there is a malfunction. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Trailer towing

When towing a trailer, ACC and Front Assist may work only with limited functionality.

#### WARNING

As long as ACC is ready appears in the instrument cluster display, your vehicle will start moving again automatically as soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again. In some cases the radar sensor may be unable to detect obstacles in the vehicle's path. This can result in serious injury and accidents.

- Always check the road ahead before the vehicle pulls away. If necessary, cancel the pulling away procedure by depressing the brake pedal.

#### WARNING

The *view* of the radar sensor can be impaired by rain, snow or heavy spray. Under certain circumstances, this could result in the vehicle ahead being detected inadequately or not at all. Take over yourself if necessary!

- Switch Adaptive Cruise Control off when driving through tunnels because the function of the system could be impaired.
- Adaptive Cruise Control distance regulation will not work if the sensors are covered by heavy rain, spray, snow, etc. A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Adaptive Cruise Control switches off temporarily if the brakes overheat too much. **ACC not available** appears in the instrument cluster display.

## Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking](#)

⇒ [Using Front Assist](#)

⇒ [When to temporarily deactivate Front Assist](#)

⇒ [Pedestrian Monitoring](#)

⇒ [System limits](#)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist), which includes Autonomous Emergency Braking and a Pedestrian Monitoring system.

The Forward Collision Warning system, when switched on, uses a radar sensor to help prevent rear-end collisions by providing a warning of a possible collision with a vehicle on the road ahead within physical and technical limits of the system ⇒ [Radar sensor](#).

When Front Assist is switched on, the Autonomous Emergency Braking system can automatically apply the brakes within the Front Assist speed range to help minimize the effects of a collision.

**The Front Assist system is not a substitute for the driver's full concentration.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The Front Assist system technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and system-related limits. Do not allow the increased convenience Front Assist can provide tempt you into taking extra risks. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. If the Front Assist system issues a warning, immediately apply the brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle, depending on the traffic situation.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- The Front Assist system cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- The Front Assist system can issue unnecessary warnings in certain complex driving situations, for example, when driving in tight curves.
- The Front Assist system can issue unnecessary warnings when its function is impaired, for example, if the radar sensor is dirty or if the position of the radar sensor has been changed.
- The Front Assist system does not react to animals or vehicles crossing your path or approaching in the same lane.
- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.

#### **! NOTE**

If you notice that Front Assist doesn't work properly or the sensor is damaged, switch off Front Assist immediately.

- See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the Front Assist system checked.



If Front Assist initiates a braking maneuver, the braking system is under pressure. In this case the brake pedal will feel harder.



Automatic braking maneuvers can be interrupted by depressing the accelerator pedal, or by moving the steering wheel.



Deactivate the Front Assist system if it does not work as described in this chapter, for example, if multiple unwanted warnings or braking maneuvers occur. Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



When the Front Assist system is switched on, the instrument cluster display can be overwritten by displays related to other functions, for example, an incoming telephone call.



The Autonomous Emergency Braking system can slow your vehicle down to a standstill, but not keep your vehicle stopped for a long time. If necessary, apply the vehicle brakes!



Front Assist is automatically deactivated when ASR or ESC are switched off.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature → [Driver personalization](#).

## **Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking**



**Fig. 141** In the instrument cluster display: Advance warning.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Distance warning

If the vehicle is traveling within a speed range of about 40–155 mph (65–250 km/h), the system warns the driver with the  symbol in the instrument cluster display if it detects that the vehicle is driving too close to the vehicle ahead ⇒ . No acoustic warning will sound.

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and your driving style.

**Increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.**

### Advance warning

If the vehicle is traveling within a speed range of about 18–155 mph (30–250 km/h), the system warns the driver with a warning chime and a message in the instrument cluster display (⇒ [Fig. 141](#)) if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle or a pedestrian crossing your path up ahead ⇒ .

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and your driving style.

**Brake or take action to avoid the vehicle ahead!**

However, do not rely solely on Front Assist. Under certain conditions, the reactions of Front Assist may be unexpected or delayed from the driver's viewpoint. Always pay attention and take over if necessary ⇒ .

### Immediate warning

If you fail to react accordingly to the advance warning within a speed range of about 18–155 mph (30–250 km/h), Front Assist may initiate a short active braking maneuver. In this case you will notice brief, jerky braking of the vehicle to warn you of an impending collision.

The timing of this alert can vary, depending on the traffic situation and the driving behavior.

### Autonomous Emergency Braking

If you should also fail to react to the immediate warning, within a speed range of about 3–155 mph (5–250 km/h), Front Assist can initiate an automatic braking maneuver that will **abruptly decelerate the vehicle** with an increased braking force. The emergency braking maneuver occurs shortly before a potential collision to reduce vehicle speed and help to minimize the effects of a collision.

### Autonomous Emergency Braking below 18 mph (30 km/h)

In case of an impending collision, within a speed range of about 3–18 mph (5–30 km/h), Front Assist can initiate an automatic braking maneuver without the advance or immediate warnings to reduce vehicle speed and help to minimize the effects of a collision ⇒ .

The automatic braking maneuver occurs **simultaneously** with a warning in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Fig. 141](#).

### Braking support

Front Assist can help to minimize the effects of a collision by providing additional braking force in case of an emergency braking situation within a speed range of about 3–155 mph (5–250 km/h), should the system detect that the force applied to the brake pedal by the driver is not sufficient to avoid a collision. In order for Front Assist to provide this additional braking assistance, it must have detected an impending collision with another vehicle ahead of yours and the brake pedal has to be hit hard and suddenly. However, this support only works as long as the brake pedal is depressed.

Front Assist considers the driver's response time to give warnings in time. This response time decreases automatically when the system, for example, detects movement of the accelerator or steering wheel. The system thus prevents unnecessary brake interventions, for example, when the driver passes another vehicle.

Front Assist cannot react when approaching standing objects ahead of you, for example, when driving up to a line of stopped vehicles in heavy traffic.

### System deactivated

If the system is switched off, a text message and the  symbol appear in the instrument cluster display. The yellow central caution light  may also light up.

## Using Front Assist

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Front Assist system and the advance warning are automatically active once the ignition is switched on ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#).

The advance warning and distance warning are automatically switched off when the Front Assist system is switched off.

Volkswagen recommends that the Front Assist system be switched on at all times, except in the specific situations described in this Manual ⇒ [When to temporarily deactivate Front Assist](#).

### Turning Front Assist on or off

- You can turn Front Assist on or off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Assistance systems function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

- **OR:** In the **Assist systems** menu in the instrument cluster display, select **Front Assist** ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.
- **OR:** Press the driver assistance systems button on the turn signal lever (if equipped) and select **Front Assist** ⇒ *Driver assistance systems button*.

If the system is switched off, a text message and the  symbol appear in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking*. The yellow central caution light  may also light up.

### Turning the distance warning and advance warning on or off

You can turn the distance warning and the advance warning on or off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the *Vehicle*, , and Assistance systems function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays*.

Via this menu, you can also adjust the warning period for the advance warning to one of three settings:

- Early
- Medium
- Late

Volkswagen recommends that the distance and advance warnings be switched on at all times.

## When to temporarily deactivate Front Assist

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Front Assist should be switched off in the following situations due to system limitations ⇒ :

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a dynamometer test bed.
- If the vehicle is not being driven on public roads, for example, off-road or on a track.
- If the radar sensor malfunctions.
- If external force has affected the radar sensor, for example, after a rear-end collision.
- If the radar sensor is covered (even temporarily) by any accessories or other equipment, for example, auxiliary headlights.
- If the vehicle is being loaded onto a truck, ferry, or train.

### **WARNING**

Failure to switch off Front Assist in the situations mentioned can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

## Pedestrian Monitoring

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Pedestrian Monitoring feature that can help prevent accidents with pedestrians crossing the street or help minimize the outcome of an accident.

The system alerts you of an impending collision, prepares the vehicle for emergency braking, provides support when braking, or performs an automatic braking maneuver.

If the system gives the driver an advanced warning, a message appears in the instrument cluster to warn the driver of an impending collision ⇒ *Driver warnings and Autonomous Emergency Braking*.

If the Front Assist system is switched on ⇒ *Using Front Assist*, then Pedestrian Monitoring is also active within a speed range of about 3–40 mph (5–65 km/h).

### **WARNING**

The Pedestrian Monitoring technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and system-related limits. Never let the increased convenience provided by the Pedestrian Monitoring system tempt you into taking extra risks. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. If the Pedestrian Monitoring system issues a warning, immediately apply the brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the pedestrian, depending on the traffic situation.

- Always adjust your speed, driving style, and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings in certain complex driving situations, for example, when driving in tight curves.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings or braking maneuvers when its function is impaired, for example, if the radar sensor is dirty or if the position of the radar sensor has been changed.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system does not react to animals.

- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.



Automatic braking maneuvers can be interrupted by depressing the accelerator pedal or by moving the steering wheel.



Deactivate the Front Assist system if it does not work as described in this chapter, for example, if multiple unwanted warnings or braking maneuvers occur. Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## System limits



**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Front Assist has physical and system-related limits. The driver may therefore find that, in certain circumstances, some Front Assist reactions are unwanted or occur with a delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle whenever necessary.

### The following conditions can prevent Front Assist from reacting, or delay its ability to react:

- When driving in tight curves.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- When Front Assist is switched off or if there is a fault.
- When the ASR or the ESC are manually switched off.
- When the ESC is taking corrective action.
- When several brake lights on the vehicle or on a trailer connected to the vehicle electrical system are faulty.
- When the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- When the **Off-road** driving mode is switched on.
- When the vehicle is in Reverse (**R**).
- When the vehicle is quickly accelerating.
- When weather conditions are poor.
- When narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles, are moving in front of your vehicle.
- When vehicles are traveling slightly offset to the left or right in front of your vehicle.
- When vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- When there is oncoming traffic.
- When pedestrians are standing, moving toward you, or moving in the direction of travel.
- When the system cannot detect the traffic situation clearly.
- When there are metal objects, for example, tracks or metal plates in the road.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles in front of your vehicle protrude to the side, rear, or above the normal vehicle dimensions.

## Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)



### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Display and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [How Lane Assist works](#)

⇒ [When to temporarily deactivate Lane Assist](#)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Lane Assist system, which can warn you if your vehicle unintentionally leaves the current drive lane.

### WARNING

Always remember that Lane Assist has limits – using Lane Assist when it is not possible to drive safely can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to react – Lane Assist will not release you from the responsibility to control your vehicle.
- Always pay attention to the messages in the instrument cluster display and act accordingly.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around your vehicle.

## ⚠ WARNING

Under certain circumstances, Lane Assist may not be able to recognize all lane markings. Bad or wet roads, worn markings, or objects on the road can prevent the Lane Assist from recognizing lane markings or recognizing them correctly.

- Always switch off Lane Assist under these conditions.

## ⚠ WARNING

If the camera's field of view is covered or dirty, Lane Assist may not work properly.

- Always make sure that the camera area is free of dirt or snow and not covered.

## ! NOTE

In order to help keep Lane Assist working properly:

- Always keep the windshield area in front of the camera free of ice, dirt, snow, and other things that could reduce its field of view.
- Regularly check the windshield and especially the area around the camera for damage.
- Never attach or mount any accessories or other items to the steering wheel.



Lane Assist has been developed only for on-road driving.



If Lane Assist does not work properly and as described here or if there is a system fault, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

## Display and indicator lights

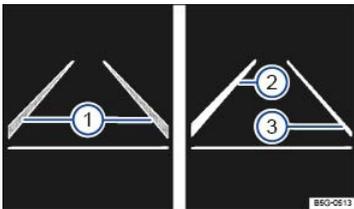


Fig. 142 In the instrument cluster display: Lane Assist display (displayed in color on an instrument cluster with color display).

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Displays

Display fields ⇒ Fig. 142 :

- ① Lane marking detected (shown in gray). No regulation is necessary.
- ② Lane marking detected (shown in white). System is actively regulating.
- ③ No lane marking detected. System is not regulating.

### Indicator lights

Lights up	Possible cause
	Lane Assist is switched on but not active.
	The system cannot clearly detect the lane. Refer to ⇒ <i>How Lane Assist works</i> .
	Lane Assist is switched on and active.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal

injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## How Lane Assist works

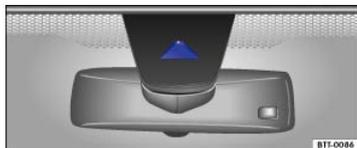


Fig. 143 In the front windshield: Area of the Lane Assist camera.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

With the help of a camera ⇒ Fig. 143, Lane Assist can recognize certain lane markings for the lane in which the vehicle is moving. Should the vehicle leave this area unintentionally, for example, when leaving the lane without activating a turn signal, the system will warn you with a *steering correction*. The driver can override the steering correction at any time.

Lane Assist will not warn you of a lane change if you activate the turn signal, because the system will assume that the lane change is intended.

### Reminder to resume steering

If the system does not detect steering activity by the driver, a warning chime and a message in the instrument cluster display remind you to resume steering the vehicle.

### Active Blind Spot Monitor

Vehicles with both Lane Assist and Blind Spot Monitor have the additional Active Blind Spot Monitor feature ⇒ [Blind Spot Monitor](#).

### Steering wheel vibration

Certain situations will cause the steering wheel to vibrate and demand active steering intervention by the driver:

- If the corrective steering intervention is not sufficient to keep the vehicle in its lane.
- If the system no longer detects a lane during a strong corrective steering intervention.

### Switching Lane Assist on and off

- In the **Assist systems** menu in the instrument cluster display, select **Lane Assist** ⇒ [Assist systems menu](#).
- **OR:** Press the driver assistance systems button on the turn signal lever and select **Lane Assist** ⇒ [Driver assistance systems button](#).
- **OR:** You can turn Lane Assist on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the **Vehicle**, and **Assistance systems** function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows the status of the system.

**Automatic deactivation:** The Lane Assist system can switch off automatically if there is a system fault. The indicator light goes out.

### Automatic deactivation of Lane Assist (yellow indicator light comes on)

Under certain circumstances Lane Assist can be deactivated automatically:

- When the speed of your vehicle is less than about 40 mph (65 km/h).
- If the system cannot recognize lane markings correctly, for example, in construction zones, on bad roads, when visibility is bad, or when the camera area is covered.
- When ESC is switched off or when ESC Sport mode is switched on ⇒ [Switching Anti-Slip Regulation \(ASR\) and ESC Sport mode on and off](#).
- If there is no lane marking or if the distance to the nearest lane marking is too great.
- In narrow curves.
- If your driving style is very sporty or dynamic (the system may switch off temporarily).
- If the system does not detect any clear steering activity by the driver over an extended period.



Before starting to drive, always make sure that the area of the camera ⇒ Fig. 143 is not covered. Keep this area clean at all times.

## When to temporarily deactivate Lane Assist

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Please deactivate Lane Assist under following conditions ⇒ :

- In complex traffic situations when it is necessary for the driver to pay special attention.
- When driving with a sporty or dynamic driving style.
- Under bad weather conditions and/or poor visibility.
- On bad roads or on roads with no or barely visible side markings.
- When the vehicle is off road, for example, in construction zones or on race tracks.
- If the camera's field of view is covered by dirt, ice, or snow. In this case, clean the area in front of the camera as soon as possible or deactivate the system.
- Before the top of a hill.

### WARNING

Not deactivating Lane Assist in the situations mentioned above can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

## Blind Spot Monitor

 [Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator lights](#)

⇒ [How Blind Spot Monitor works](#)

⇒ [Driving situations](#)

⇒ [Using the Blind Spot Monitor](#)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with the Blind Spot Monitor system.

The Blind Spot Monitor assists the driver by using radar sensors to monitor the traffic in the blind spot detection area as well as traffic behind the vehicle.

The Blind Spot Monitor is only designed for use on paved roads.

### WARNING

The Blind Spot Monitor technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Blind Spot Monitor may result in accidents and serious injuries.

- The Blind Spot Monitor is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- Always adjust your driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep both hands on the steering wheel so that you are prepared to steer at any time.
- Pay attention to and heed the indicator lights in the outside mirrors and in the instrument cluster display.
- The Blind Spot Monitor may react to certain equipment installed on the side of the road, such as high or offset guardrails. False warnings may result.
- Never use the Blind Spot Monitor on unpaved roads. The Blind Spot Monitor was designed only for paved roads.
- Always pay attention to the area surrounding your vehicle.
- Never use the Blind Spot Monitor if the radar sensors are dirty, obstructed, or damaged; the function of the system may be impaired.
- Sunlight may reduce the visibility of the indicator light in the outside mirror.

### NOTE

- The radar sensors in the rear bumper can be damaged or become misaligned in low-speed impacts and parking maneuvers. The system can switch itself off or may be impaired as a result.
- Always keep the rear bumper clean and free of snow and ice so that the radar sensors can function properly. Do not cover the radar sensor area.
- The rear bumper may only be painted with vehicle paint that is approved by Volkswagen. Other paints may impair the function of the Blind Spot Monitor or cause it to malfunction.



If the system does not work as described in this chapter or if your vehicle was involved in a collision, do not use the Blind Spot Monitor. See an authorized

Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the system checked.

**i** Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ *Driver personalization*.

## Indicator lights

**📖** Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### Indicator light in the outside mirror:

Lights up	Possible cause
	Lights up briefly: The Blind Spot Monitor is active and ready.
	Lights up and stays on: The Blind Spot Monitor detects a vehicle in the blind spot.

Flashes	Possible cause
	A vehicle is detected in the blind spot, and the turn signal on that side of the vehicle is switched on ⇒  .
	<i>Active Blind Spot Monitor (vehicles with Lane Assist):</i> A vehicle is detected in the blind spot, and your vehicle is leaving the current driving lane. The turn signal does not have to be switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If the indicator light in the outside mirror does not light up, the Blind Spot Monitor does not currently detect a vehicle in the monitored area around your vehicle ⇒

The brightness of the indicator lights in the outside mirrors are dimmed when the headlights are switched on (night mode).

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning and indicator lights and instrument cluster text messages can result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning and indicator lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always heed warning and indicator lights and take action where necessary.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning and indicator lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## How Blind Spot Monitor works

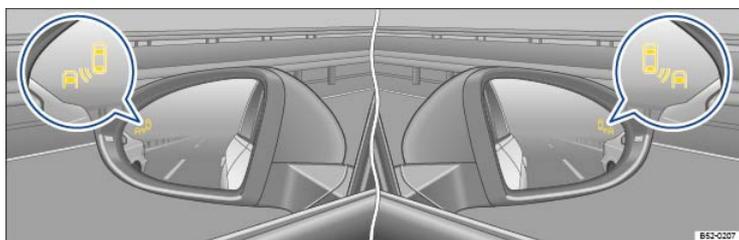


Fig. 144 In the outside mirrors: Indicator lights for the Blind Spot Monitor.

**📖** Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The Blind Spot Monitor uses sensors in the rear bumper to monitor the blind spot detection area and the area behind your vehicle and informs you via indicator lights in the outside mirrors. The system measures the distance to other vehicles and the difference in speed between your vehicle and other vehicles. The Blind Spot Monitor only works at speeds above about 9 mph (15 km/h).

The Blind Spot Monitor automatically deactivates when driving through tight curves in the road. In this situation, the deactivation occurs without a driver information message. No warnings appear in the mirror glass or in the instrument cluster display. After driving through the curve, the Blind Spot Monitor automatically reactivates and the system is available again.

### Indicator lights in the outside mirrors

The indicator light ⇒ *Fig. 144* in the glass for the respective outside mirror informs you about traffic to the rear, if the system interprets the situation as critical. The indicator light in the driver side outside mirror informs you about traffic to the left, and the indicator light in the passenger side outside mirror informs you about traffic to the right of your vehicle.

Tinting the side windows or aftermarket tinting films can interfere with the indicator lights in the outside mirrors or cause false readings.

Keep the glass in the outside mirrors clean and free of snow and ice, and do not cover the mirrors with stickers or other objects.

### Active Blind Spot Monitor

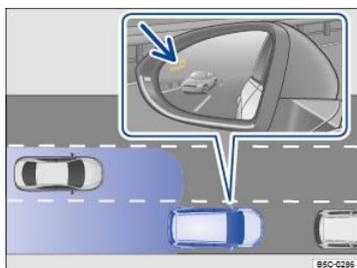
For vehicles with Lane Keeping System (Lane Assist): When Lane Assist ⇒ *Lane Keeping system (Lane Assist)* is active, the system warns the driver with a steering correction when a critical situation is detected during a lane change. This happens even if the turn signal is switched on. If the driver ignores the steering correction, the steering wheel will vibrate as an additional warning.

### Radar sensors

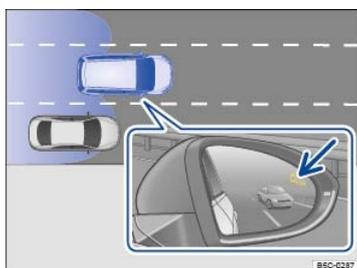
The radar sensors are behind the rear bumper on the left and right. They are not visible from outside the vehicle. They monitor an area about 21 yards (20 meters) behind the vehicle as well as the blind spots on the left and right sides of the vehicle. The monitored area next to the vehicle is about one lane wide.

The width of the lane is not detected individually on each road, but is preprogrammed into the system. Because of this, the indicators may be incorrect when driving on narrow roads or driving in the center of two lanes. Vehicles that are two lanes away from you or stationary objects such as guard rails may also be detected and cause a false warning.

### Driving situations



**Fig. 145** Driving situation when passing with traffic behind your vehicle. Arrow: Blind Spot Monitor indicator light in the driver side mirror.



**Fig. 146** Driving situation when passing and merging into the lane. Arrow: Blind Spot Monitor indicator light in the passenger side mirror.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject***

The following situations result in a signal in the outside mirror ⇒ *Fig. 145* (arrow) or ⇒ *Fig. 146* (arrow):

- If your vehicle is being passed by another vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 145*.
- When passing another vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 146*, and the difference in speed between the two vehicles is no more than about 6 mph (10 km/h). There is no signal if the passing speed is clearly faster.

The faster another vehicle approaches, the earlier the signal in the outside mirror appears, because the Blind Spot Monitor reacts to the difference in speed between your vehicle and other vehicles. Therefore, the signals may be triggered for different vehicles at different times, even when the distance to those vehicles is the same.

The Blind Spot Monitor only works at speeds above about 9 mph (15 km/h). The system switches off automatically when the vehicle speed drops below about 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Physical and system limitations

In certain situations, the Blind Spot Monitor may not interpret the traffic situation correctly. These situations may include:

- When driving in tight curves.
- When the width of the lanes differs.
- When there is a bump in the road surface.
- When there are the weather conditions are poor.

- When certain types of equipment are on the side of the road, such as high or offset guard rails.

## Using the Blind Spot Monitor

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Switching the Blind Spot Monitor on and off

On appropriately equipped vehicles, you can turn the Blind Spot Monitor on and off in the **Assist systems** menu in the Volkswagen Information System.

Open the **Assist systems** menu ⇒ [Assist systems menu](#).

- Blind Spot Monitor

### Switching the Blind Spot Monitor on and off in the Infotainment system

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Tap the Vehicle function key.
- Tap the  function key.
- Tap the Assistance systems function key and tap the check box  to switch the Blind Spot Monitor on or off.

When the box next to the option is checked , the function will turn on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The indicator lights in the outside mirrors will turn on briefly to confirm that the Blind Spot Monitor is ready.

The last system setting is stored when the ignition is switched off/on.

If the Blind Spot Monitor was deactivated automatically, the system can only be activated again after switching the ignition off/on.

### Automatic deactivation of the Blind Spot Monitor

The radar sensors for the Blind Spot Monitor turn off automatically if the system detects an obstruction over a radar sensor. This could occur if the radar sensor area is covered by ice or snow, for example.

A text message appears in the instrument cluster display when the system turns off automatically.

### Trailer towing

When towing a trailer, you must switch off the Blind Spot Monitor with Rear Traffic Alert manually. A text message appears in the instrument cluster display.

## Parking and maneuvering

### Parking

Please note legal regulations when stopping and parking your vehicle.

#### Parking the vehicle

Please perform these steps only in the order listed.

- Stop the vehicle on a suitable surface ⇒ .
- Press the brake and bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
- Hold the brake pedal down until you switch the engine off.
- Shift the transmission to Park (**P**).
- Apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ [Electronic parking brake](#). Make sure that the *yellow* indicator light in the button comes on.
- Make sure that the red indicator light  or **PARK** in the instrument cluster lights up.
- Switch off the engine and then take your foot off the brake.
- If necessary, remove the vehicle key from the ignition.
- If necessary, turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering column lock.
- Make sure all passengers and especially children leave the vehicle.
- Take all vehicle keys with you when leaving your vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

#### On hills

Before stopping the engine, turn the steering wheel so that, if the vehicle starts to roll, its front wheels will roll into the curb:

- Facing downhill, turn the front wheels so that they point toward the curb.

- Facing uphill, turn the front wheels so that they point away from the curb.

**⚠ WARNING**

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.

**⚠ WARNING**

Leaving the vehicle when the selector lever is not in Park **(P)** can cause the vehicle to roll away. This can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always follow the correct order to stop the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine* .
- When leaving the vehicle, always move the selector lever to Park **(P)**, engage the electronic parking brake, and pay attention to the warning messages in the instrument cluster display at all times.

**⚠ WARNING**

Driving with bad brakes or worn brake pads can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake pads are worn or you notice changes in the way the vehicle brakes, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

**⚠ WARNING**

Parking improperly can cause serious personal injury.

- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- Never park the vehicle where the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle.
- Improper use of the parking brake can seriously injure you and your passengers.
- Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving, except in an emergency. The stopping distance is much longer because only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move as soon as the engine speed increases even if the parking brake is on.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. They could release the parking brake and move the gear selector lever or gear shift, which could cause the vehicle to start moving. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. If the key is available, the engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows and sunroof can be operated, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key, trapping passengers in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

**! NOTE**

- Always be careful when you park in areas with parking barriers or high curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot. To help prevent damage, stop before the tires of your vehicle touch a parking barrier or curb.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems).

**Warning and indicator lights**

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠	Proper response
	 <b>Stop!</b>	
	Brake system malfunction.	Get professional assistance immediately ⇒ <i>About the brakes</i> .

**ⓘ/BRAKE**

Together with the ABS indicator light  or **ABS**: ABS failure.

See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.

 Brake pedal not depressed.

Depress the brake pedal to select a drive gear.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**⚠ WARNING**

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or  does not go out, or lights up when driving, either the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle as soon as you can do so safely and get expert assistance ⇒ [Brake fluid](#).
- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or  lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or , the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, drive slowly and very carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Avoid sudden hard braking and steering.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or  does not go out, or if it lights up while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.
- If the symbol **BRAKE WEAR** or  lights up in the instrument cluster display, whether alone or together with a text message, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

**ⓘ NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

**Electronic parking brake****Warning and indicator lights**

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠	Proper response
<b>PARK</b>	Electronic parking brake engaged.	 <b>Stop!</b>  Release the parking brake ⇒ <a href="#">Using the electronic parking brake</a> .
	Electronic parking brake malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠	Proper response
	Brake pedal not depressed.	Depress the brake pedal to switch off the electronic parking brake.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### ⓘ NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Using the electronic parking brake



**Fig. 147** In the lower center console: Electronic parking brake switch.

### Setting the electronic parking brake

You can engage the electronic parking brake any time the vehicle is not moving - even if the ignition is switched off. Always engage the parking brake when you leave or park the vehicle ⇒ *Parking*.

- Pull and hold the  switch ⇒ *Fig. 147*.
- The parking brake is engaged when the yellow indicator light in the switch ⇒ *Fig. 147* (arrow) and the red indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Warning and indicator lights* light up.

### Releasing the electronic parking brake

- Switch the ignition on.
- Press the  switch ⇒ *Fig. 147*. At the same time, press the brake pedal firmly or press the accelerator pedal lightly if the engine is running.
- The parking brake is released when the yellow indicator light in the switch ⇒ *Fig. 147* (arrow) and the red indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Warning and indicator lights* go out.

### Automatic electronic parking brake release when you start driving

The electronic parking brake releases automatically when you start driving if the driver door is closed and the driver safety belt is buckled.

You can prevent the electronic parking brake from switching off automatically by pulling and holding the  switch while pulling away.

The electronic parking brake is only switched off after you let go of the  switch. This makes it easier to start off with a heavier load.

### Automatic electronic parking brake activation when the driver leaves the vehicle

The electronic parking brake automatically switches on to prevent the vehicle from moving when **all** of the following conditions are met:

- The selector lever is in Drive (D/S), Reverse (R), or Tiptronic mode.
- The ignition is switched on.
- The vehicle is not moving.
- The driver door is opened.

### Emergency braking feature

Only use the emergency braking feature in an emergency, when you cannot stop the vehicle using the brake pedal ⇒ ⚠!

- Pull and hold the  switch ⇒ *Electronic parking brake* to brake the vehicle **hard**. An audible warning signal will sound at the same time.

- To stop the braking maneuver, release the  switch or press the accelerator pedal.

## WARNING

Improper use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving, except in an emergency. Braking distance is much longer, since only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.
- Never press the accelerator pedal when a selector lever position or gear is engaged and the engine is running. The vehicle could begin moving, even if the electronic parking brake is set.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move even if the parking brake is engaged.

## NOTE

Even though the transmission is in Park **(P)**, the vehicle may move a couple of inches (a few centimeters) forwards or backwards if you take your foot off the brake pedal after stopping the vehicle **without** first firmly setting the parking brake.



If the 12 Volt vehicle battery is dead, the electronic parking brake cannot be released. Jump-start the vehicle instead ⇒ *Jump-starting*.



You may hear noises when setting or releasing the electronic parking brake. This is normal and no cause for concern.



If the electronic parking brake is not used for a while, an automatic system check will occasionally run when the vehicle is parked. This system check makes audible noises.

## Park Distance Control (PDC)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Using PDC*

⇒ *PDC signal chimes and displays*

⇒ *Vehicle path display*

⇒ *PDC menu*

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with the Park Distance Control system (PDC).

The Park Distance Control (PDC) system can help the driver when backing up and parking. PDC uses ultrasonic sensors in the bumpers to measure the distance between the vehicle and objects. The system uses the time it takes for the ultrasonic waves to bounce back from the object to calculate the distance between the vehicle and an object. PDC works only at speeds up to about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h).

If the vehicle gets too close to an obstacle behind it, a beeping signal sounds. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the faster the beep. When the obstacle is very close, the sound is continuous.

If you move even closer to the obstacle despite the continuous warning sound, the system cannot measure the distance remaining until collision.

A Declaration of Compliance with United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found in the Consumer information section of this Manual ⇒ *Consumer information*.

## WARNING

Park Distance Control is no substitute for careful and attentive driving. Never rely completely on these systems for information about people and objects that might be in the way of the vehicle and could be struck resulting in serious personal injuries.

- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The sensors have blind spots and cannot always detect people, animals, and objects. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- Certain types of clothing and the surfaces of certain objects do not reflect the ultrasonic waves that the sensors send and receive. Such objects and persons wearing such clothing will not be detected by PDC or will not be detected accurately.
- Noise in the area can interfere with the signals of the Park Distance Control sensors. Under certain circumstances, the system will not detect people and objects for this reason.

## NOTE

- Things like trailer draw bars, thin rods, fences, trees, narrow painted vertical poles, posts, or a trunk lid that is opening may not be detected by the Park Distance Control sensors and could damage the vehicle.
- If you keep driving closer to an object that the Park Distance Control has already detected and reported, the object may disappear from the sensor range and may no longer be detected. This is especially true for low or high objects. The system will no longer sound warnings about these objects. Ignoring signals from the Park Distance Control system could result in serious damage to the vehicle.
- The sensors in the bumpers can be damaged or become misaligned in low speed impacts and parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors cannot accurately detect or report objects that might be within range of the PDC system.
- To help make sure that the system works properly, always keep the sensors in the bumpers clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the sensors with stickers or other objects.
- Repainting the sensors in the bumpers can impair the function of the PDC system.
- When cleaning the sensors with power washers or steam cleaners, only spray the sensors directly for a very short time, and always keep the washer nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensors.
- Noise from rough roads, cobblestones, other vehicles and the surrounding area, for example, can prevent the Park Distance Control system from accurately detecting and reporting people and objects that may be within range of the sensors.
- Aftermarket components such as bicycle racks can impair the function of the Park Distance Control system.

#### NOTE

The camera must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lenses.
- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lenses with warm or hot water. This can damage the camera lenses.



Volkswagen recommends practicing with the Park Distance Control system in a location or parking space with no traffic in order to become familiar with the system and how it works.



If an ultrasonic sensor malfunctions, the corresponding sensor area is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the malfunction is corrected. Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



If you hear a long beep of about 3 seconds when you first turn PDC on or the indicator light in the or button starts blinking, there is a malfunction in the Park Distance Control system. Switch off the Park Distance system with the button and have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



Certain settings are automatically saved by the driver personalization feature ⇒ [Driver personalization](#).

## Using PDC



Fig. 148 In the lower center console: Button to switch the Park Distance Control system on or off (vehicles without Area View).



Fig. 149 In the lower center console: Button to switch the Park Distance Control system on or off (vehicles with Area View).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Park Distance Control (PDC) uses ultrasonic sensors to determine the distance from the front or rear bumpers to an obstacle. There are 4 sensors for the PDC located in the rear bumper ⇒ [Fig. 3](#) and additional sensors in the front bumper ⇒ [Fig. 1](#).

The intermittent and continuous signal chimes triggered by the front PDC sensors have a higher pitch than those from by the rear PDC sensors. This is a standard

feature.

The warning signals can be adjusted in the Infotainment system menu ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays* .

### Switching the Park Distance Control (PDC) system on and off

Function	Operation (when the ignition is switched on)
Manually activate or deactivate PDC:	Press the  or  button ⇒ <i>Fig. 148</i> , or ⇒ <i>Fig. 149</i> . The indicator light in the button lights up and stays on as long as PDC is active.
Automatically activate PDC:	Shift into Reverse ( <b>R</b> ).
	<b>OR:</b> Depending on vehicle equipment, when the vehicle rolls backwards.
Automatically deactivate PDC:	<b>OR:</b> Depending on vehicle equipment, when slowly driving toward an obstacle located in the scanned area in front of the vehicle at a speed below about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h) when automatic activation is switched on in the Infotainment system. A miniature PDC view may be displayed.
	Shift into Park ( <b>P</b> ).
Show the mini PDC display when the Rear View Camera display is active:	<b>OR:</b> Drive forward faster than about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h).
	<i>For vehicles without Area View:</i> Tap the <b>MENU</b> function key on the screen.
Mute the PDC volume:	Tap the  function key.
	<b>OR:</b> Switch on the electronic parking brake.
Switch from mini PDC display to full-screen mode <sup>a)</sup> :	Shift into Reverse ( <b>R</b> ).
	<i>For vehicles without Area View:</i> Tap the  function key.
	<i>For vehicles with Area View:</i> Tap the vehicle in the mini PDC display.
Switch to the Rear View Camera system display <sup>a)</sup> :	Tap the function key.

### Maneuver braking

The maneuver braking feature can help the driver by braking automatically when the vehicle is backing up and an obstacle behind the vehicle is detected. Depending on vehicle equipment, the maneuver braking feature may also brake the vehicle automatically when driving forward. The maneuver braking feature helps prevent collisions only at vehicle speeds lower than 5 mph (10 km/h), and the feature is activated or deactivated when PDC is activated or deactivated.

You can switch maneuver braking off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and Parking and maneuvering function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays* **OR** by tapping the  function key on the PDC display ⇒ *PDC signal chimes and displays* .

After emergency braking occurs, the maneuver braking feature is deactivated until you move the selector lever to another position. The same restrictions that apply to the PDC system also apply to the maneuver braking feature.

### Park Distance Control in off-road and custom off-road mode

In **off-road** mode, acoustic and visual warnings are switched off ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*. Depending on equipment, the camera image may still be displayed. Closing the camera image ends all parking functions. No automatic activation takes place.

In **custom off-road** mode ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*, you can switch PDC on and off in the Infotainment system in order to switch on acoustic and visual PDC warnings ⇒ *Adjusting the Custom off-road driving mode*. If PDC is switched on in the **custom off-road** menu and automatic activation is switched on in the vehicle settings menu, automatic activation takes place ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays* .

### Special considerations for PDC

- In some cases, the Park Distance Control system interprets water and ice on the sensors as an obstacle. To prevent automatic PDC activation in these cases, you can turn Park Distance Control off in the Infotainment System.
- If the distance remains the same, the warning chime volume decreases after a few seconds. If a continuous tone sounds, its volume remains the same.
- If the vehicle moves away from the obstacle, the beeping sound stops automatically. The beep turns on again automatically if the vehicle approaches the obstacle again.
- There is no beeping when the transmission is in Park (P) or the electronic parking brake is engaged.
- The volume of the audible signals can be adjusted in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays* .

#### Automatic activation (depending on equipment)

When the PDC is activated automatically, a mini PDC display appears on the left-hand side of the screen ⇒ *Fig. 151* .

Automatic PDC activation only works when the speed falls below about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h) for the first time when driving slowly toward an obstacle located in front of the vehicle. If the PDC was switched off using the **P** or **EPB** button, automatically reactivate the PDC with one of the following actions when the ignition is switched on:

- If the vehicle accelerates to a speed greater than about 5–10 mph (10–15 km/h) and then drops below that speed again.
- **OR:** If the ignition is switched off and then switched on again.
- **OR:** If the selector lever is moved from Park (P) and then to Reverse (R).
- **OR:** If automatic activation is turned off and on again in the Infotainment system.
- **OR:** If the electronic parking brake is switched on and is switched off again.

Automatic activation of the mini PDC display can be turned on or off in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays* .

When the box in the automatic activation function key is checked , signal chimes sound from a distance of about 20 inches (50 cm) from the obstacle.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never rely completely on the PDC for information about people and objects that might be in the way of the vehicle and could be struck by the vehicle causing serious personal injury.

- Always watch for people, especially small children and animals, because the sensors have blind spots and may not always be able to detect them.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The automatic activation of PDC only functions at very low speeds. Improper driving behavior can lead to an accident and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always heed the warning signals.

#### ⓘ NOTE

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Depending on equipment.

### PDC signal chimes and displays

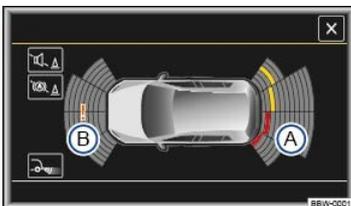


Fig. 150 PDC display of the area around the vehicle (display may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

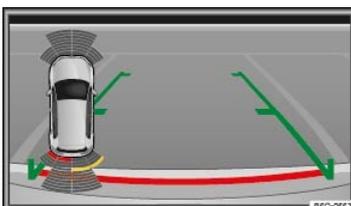


Fig. 151 Mini PDC display of the area around the vehicle (display may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

Key to ⇒ *Fig. 150* and ⇒ *Fig. 151* :

- Ⓐ Scanned area behind the vehicle.
- Ⓑ Scanned area in front of the vehicle.
- A yellow segment represents an obstacle in the vehicle's path.
- A red segment represents an obstacle located close to the vehicle.
- A white or gray segment represents an obstacle outside of the vehicle's path.
- 🔇 Mute the PDC signal chimes.
- 🚗 Switch maneuver braking on and off (depending on vehicle equipment).
- 📺 Switch to the Rear View camera display.
- ! System fault in the scanned area.
- ! Temporary malfunction in the scanned area, depending on vehicle equipment (not pictured).

### Display

When the factory-installed Infotainment system is switched on, the areas to the front and rear of the vehicle that are scanned by ultrasonic sensors are shown on the screen → Fig. 150. The positions of potential obstacles are displayed relative to the vehicle → ▲.

The display shows the scanned areas in several segments. The closer the vehicle gets to an obstacle, the closer the segment will move to the vehicle in the display. The collision area has been reached at the latest when the second to last segment appears. **Stop! Do not keep driving!**

### PDC signal chimes

When the vehicle gets near an obstacle in range of the ultrasonic sensors, a chime sounds. An intermittent chime means that a nearby obstacle is detected. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals between the chimes. The PDC signal sounds continuously if the obstacle is very close.

The intermittent chime volume decreases after a few seconds if the distance stays the same. The volume also stays the same if the PDC signal is continuous. As soon as the vehicle moves away from an obstacle again, the intermittent chime stops automatically. If the vehicle moves towards an obstruction again, the intermittent chime starts automatically.

If you keep driving closer to the obstacle despite a continuous PDC signal, the system will no longer be able to measure the distance.

When there is an imminent risk of collision at the front area of the vehicle, the chime sounds at the front of the vehicle. When there is a risk of imminent collision at the rear area of the vehicle, the chime sounds at the rear of the vehicle.

### Muting the Park Distance Control volume

Tap the 🔇 function key in the Infotainment system to mute the PDC signals. Tap the function key again to turn the signals back on.

Switching Park Distance Control back on after it was switched off reactivates the volume. System malfunction warning signals cannot be switched off.

If you manually deactivate the display, PDC remains on and the sound is reactivated.

Switching on the electronic parking brake also mutes the PDC volume.

The mute setting is active if the PDC was switched on using the **P** or **P** button when the selector lever is in Park (**P**).

### ⚠ WARNING

Never pay so much attention to the images on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.

### ! NOTE

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.



It can take a few seconds before the area scanned by the sensors is displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

## Vehicle path display

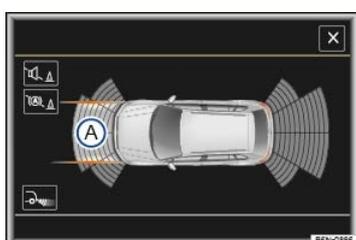
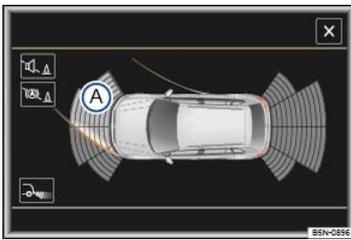


Fig. 152 PDC display (depending on vehicle equipment): Vehicle path display without steering input.



**Fig. 153 PDC display (depending on vehicle equipment): Vehicle path display with steering input.**

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Depending on equipment, the vehicle path may be displayed on the Infotainment screen.

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 152](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 153](#) :

Ⓐ Vehicle path display.

### Vehicle path display

Function	Operation (when the ignition is switched on)
Front vehicle path display	Forward gear engaged.
	<b>OR:</b> Shift to Neutral ( <b>N</b> ).
	<b>OR:</b> Depending on vehicle equipment, roll forward.
Rear vehicle path display	Select the Reverse ( <b>R</b> ) gear.
	<b>OR:</b> Depending on vehicle equipment, roll backward.

The vehicle path display changes in relation to steering input. Obstacles that are located in the vehicle's path, depending on the current steering angle, are displayed in yellow and red segments.

When the selector lever is in position **P** and the PDC is activated, the vehicle path display is not shown.

When the electronic parking brake is engaged, all segments symbolizing an obstruction are displayed in gray, and the vehicle path display is not shown.

### NOTE

If an ultrasonic sensor malfunctions, the vehicle path display is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the malfunction is corrected.

- In this case, the steering angle no longer determines the segments displayed on the screen or the chimes that sound.

## PDC menu

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### PDC settings in the Infotainment system menu

Switch on the ignition.

If necessary, switch on the Infotainment system.

- Press the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, and Parking and maneuvering function keys.
- Select the required settings in the **ParkPilot** menu.

Function key	Action
Automatic activation	If the box in the function key is checked <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> , the mini PDC display switches on automatically when the vehicle slowly approaches an obstacle at the front. Tap Automatic activation again to switch off this feature. After deactivation, the PDC will not switch on automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle at the front.

Function key	Action
Front volume	Set different volumes for the front chimes by tapping the - or + function keys or by adjusting the control.
Front pitch	Set different pitches for the front chimes by tapping the - or + function keys or by adjusting the control.
Rear volume	Set different volumes for the rear chimes by tapping the - or + function keys or by adjusting the control.
Rear pitch	Set different pitches for the rear chimes by tapping the - or + function keys or by adjusting the control.
Audio lowering	Set the level to which the Infotainment system volume should be lowered when the PDC is active:
	<i>Off</i> : The Infotainment system volume is not lowered.
	<i>1-5</i> : The Infotainment system volume is lowered slightly to medium, depending on the number selected.
	<i>Mute</i> : The Infotainment system volume is muted.

## Rear Traffic Alert



Fig. 154 Rear Traffic Alert: Monitored area around the vehicle that is backing out of a parking space.

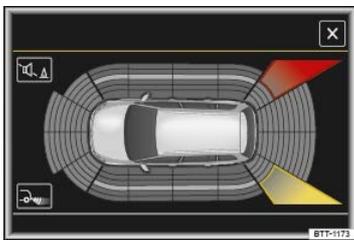


Fig. 155 Rear Traffic Alert display (may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

The Rear Traffic Alert system can help the driver when backing out of parking spaces and when maneuvering.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 155 :

- **Stop backing up!** The red area indicates that the system has detected traffic behind the vehicle.
- The yellow area indicates that the system has possibly detected traffic behind the vehicle.
- ! There is a system malfunction in the scanned area (not pictured).

The Rear Traffic Alert system uses the radar sensors in the rear bumper to monitor the traffic crossing behind your vehicle when you are backing out of a parking space or maneuvering, for example, in traffic situations with poor visibility.

A warning sounds if the system detects approaching traffic behind your vehicle when backing up ⇒ Fig. 154 (red area).

- *Vehicles without Park Distance Control (PDC)*: There is a warning tone and a text message in the instrument cluster display.
- *Vehicles with Park Distance Control (PDC)*: There is a continuous warning tone from the PDC. If PDC is switched off, a warning for the driver may not be possible, and therefore the Rear Traffic Alert is also deactivated.

### Automatic braking

If Rear Traffic Alert detects an approaching vehicle and the driver does not press the brake pedal, the system can intervene with automatic braking.

Rear Traffic Alert assists the driver with harsh automatic braking that could help prevent or reduce damage that can result from a collision. Automatic braking occurs while backing up at speeds between 1–7 mph (1–12 km/h). Once the system detects that your vehicle is not moving, it keeps the vehicle from moving for up to 2 seconds.

After automatic braking, about 10 seconds must pass before the system can brake automatically again.

The driver can interrupt the automatic braking and take control of the vehicle by pressing firmly on the accelerator or brake pedal.

### Switching the Rear Traffic Alert on and off

On appropriately equipped vehicles, you can turn the Rear Traffic Alert on and off in the **Assist systems** menu in the Volkswagen Information System.

Open the **Assist systems** menu ⇒ *Assist systems menu*.

- Rear Traffic

### Switching the Rear Traffic Alert on and off in the Infotainment system

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Tap the Vehicle function key.
- Tap the  function key.
- Tap the Parking and maneuvering function key and tap the check box  to switch the Rear Traffic Alert on or off.

When the box next to the option is checked , the function will turn on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The last system setting is stored when the ignition is switched off/on.

### Automatic deactivation of Rear Traffic Alert

The radar sensors for the Rear Traffic Alert turn off automatically if the system detects an obstruction over a radar sensor. This could occur if the radar sensor area is covered by ice or snow, for example.

A text message appears in the instrument cluster display when the system turns off automatically.

## WARNING

The Rear Traffic Alert technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Rear Traffic Alert may result in accidents and serious injuries.

- The Rear Traffic Alert is not a substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- Never use the system when visibility is limited or in complex traffic situations, for example, on heavily traveled roads or when there are multiple lanes.
- Always watch for people, especially small children, bicycles, animals, and objects, because the Rear Traffic Alert may not always be able to detect them. Rear Traffic Alert cannot detect people, animals, and things that are moving slowly or not at all.
- The Rear Traffic Alert does not always brake the vehicle to a complete stop.
- The harsh automatic braking will be uncomfortable for many people, and if you or your passengers have special conditions or sensitivities, particularly in the neck, you may want to switch off Rear Traffic Alert.

## Rear View Camera system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Special considerations*

⇒ *Camera*

⇒ *Switching the Rear View Camera system on and off*

⇒ *Rear View Camera system display*

⇒ *Perpendicular parking (mode 1)*

⇒ *Parallel parking (mode 2)*

⇒ *Off-road support (mode 3) and cross traffic (mode 4)*

There is a camera in the trunk lid to assist the driver while backing up or maneuvering. The camera image is shown together with the orientation lines projected by the system on the screen of the factory-installed Infotainment system.

The Rear View Camera system may take a few seconds to bring up the camera image.

The functions and displays of the Rear View Camera system may vary on vehicles with or without Park Distance Control (PDC) and with or without Area View ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*, ⇒ *Area View*.

#### Rear View Camera System modes (for vehicles with Area View)

- **Mode 1:** Backing into a parking space at right angles to the direction of traffic, such as in a parking lot ⇒ *Perpendicular parking (mode 1)*.
- **Mode 2:** Parallel parking (parking parallel to the direction of traffic) ⇒ *Parallel parking (mode 2)*.
- **Mode 3:** Trailer support: Helps when hooking up a trailer to the trailer hitch ⇒ *Off-road support (mode 3) and cross traffic (mode 4)*.
- **Mode 4:** Cross traffic: Helps the driver to see traffic behind the vehicle ⇒ *Off-road support (mode 3) and cross traffic (mode 4)*.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The Rear View Camera system is not able to give you a clear and undistorted view of all areas behind the vehicle.

- The camera lens can enlarge and distort the field of view and can cause objects on the screen to appear altered and imprecise.
- Due to the screen resolution or in low-light conditions, the camera may not pick up thin posts, chain-link fences and similar fences, and other objects, or it may not show them clearly.
- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The Rear View Camera system has blind spots and cannot always show people, animals, and objects in certain situations. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- Always keep the camera lens clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the lens.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The Rear View Camera system technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Rear View Camera system may result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep an eye on the parking direction and the vehicle surroundings. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Never pay so much attention to the images on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.
- Use the Rear View Camera system only when the trunk lid is completely closed.

#### ⓘ NOTE

- The Rear View Camera system shows only two-dimensional images on the screen. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects or potholes in the road, for example.
- Things like thin rods, fences, posts, and trees may not be shown by the Rear View Camera system and could damage the vehicle.

#### ⓘ NOTE

The orientation lines are displayed independent of the area around the vehicle. There is no automatic detection of obstacles. The driver is responsible for judging if the vehicle fits into the parking spot.

#### ⓘ NOTE

The camera must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.

## Special considerations

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Checklist

- ✓ The trunk lid must be closed.
- ✓ A reliable and clear image must be displayed and the camera lens must be clean.
- ✓ There must be a clear and complete view of the area behind the vehicle.

- ✓ The parking or maneuvering area must be level.
- ✓ The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded.
- ✓ The driver must be familiar with the system.
- ✓ The position of the camera has not changed, such as after a rear-end collision. If the position of the camera has changed, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- ✓ The vehicle speed must not be greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).

### Rear View Camera system settings

Depending on equipment, various settings, including *brightness, contrast, and color*, can be adjusted by moving your hand toward the Infotainment system screen and tapping the function keys - or +, or by moving the corresponding slider.

To change the settings follow these instructions:

- Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- Set the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Switch on the Infotainment system (if not already on) ⇒ Booklet *Infotainment System*.
- Shift into Reverse (R).
- Tap the MENU function key on the screen or move your hand toward the screen and tap the  function key.
- Adjust the desired settings in the menu.



Volkswagen recommends practicing parking and maneuvering with the Rear View Camera system in a safe place with little or no traffic or in a parking lot under good visibility and weather conditions to familiarize yourself with the system, the orientation lines, and the way they work.

## Camera



**Fig. 156** In the trunk lid: Location of the camera.

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The camera ⇒ *Fig. 156* (magnified view) displays only two-dimensional images. Recesses and protruding objects on the ground or protruding parts on other vehicles may be difficult or impossible to identify due to the lack of depth of field.

Objects or another vehicle may seem closer or farther away on the screen than they really are.

- When driving from a level surface onto an upward or downward slope.
- When driving up or down a slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. These objects can disappear from the field of view when backing up.

### Cleaning the camera lens

Keep the camera lens clean and free of snow and ice:

- Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- Apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
- Wet the camera lens with a commercially available alcohol-based glass cleaner and clean with a dry cloth ⇒ .
- Remove snow with a brush.
- Remove ice with a deicer spray ⇒ .

### NOTE

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lens.

- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lens with warm or hot water. This can damage the camera lens.

## Switching the Rear View Camera system on and off

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Switching the Rear View Camera system on

- Switch the ignition on.
- Shift into Reverse (R). Mode 1 (perpendicular parking) will be displayed in the Infotainment system.
- **OR:** For vehicles with Park Distance Control, if the full-screen PDC display is on, move your hand toward the screen and tap the function key ⇒ [Park Distance Control \(PDC\)](#).

### Switching the Rear View Camera system off

- Switch the ignition off.
- **OR:** Drive forward faster than about 5 mph (10 km/h) or for longer than 10 seconds.
- **OR:** Shift out of Reverse (R). Depending on equipment, the display may take up to 10 seconds to switch off.
- **OR:** Press one of the Infotainment system buttons or move your hand toward the screen and tap the function key.
- **OR:** For vehicles with Park Distance Control, move your hand toward the screen and tap the function key to select the full-screen PDC display ⇒ [Park Distance Control \(PDC\)](#).
- **OR:** For vehicles with Area View, tap the image of the vehicle in the mini PDC display to select the full-screen PDC display ⇒ [Area View](#).

## Rear View Camera system display

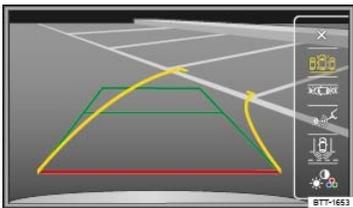


Fig. 157 In the Infotainment system: Rear View Camera system display (mode 1).

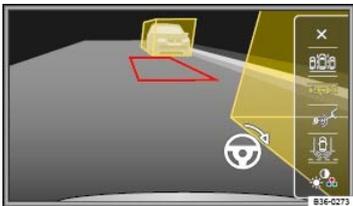


Fig. 158 Rear View Camera system display (mode 2, if equipped).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Rear View Camera System function keys

The following function buttons appear when you tap the MENU function key on the screen or move your hand toward the screen. Buttons may vary, depending on vehicle equipment.

- Switch the PDC sound on or off.
- Switch the PDC display on.
- Switch the PDC display off.
- Display PDC.
- Close the current display.
- Switch to mode 1 (perpendicular parking).
- Switch to mode 2 (parallel parking).
- Switch to mode 3 (trailer support).
- Switch to mode 4 (cross traffic).
- Setting display: brightness, contrast, color.

### Orientation lines

**Horizontal red line:** The safety distance, which is the area up to about 16 inches (40 cm) on the road behind the vehicle.

**Lateral green lines:** Vehicle extension (somewhat wider) toward the rear. The green lines stop about 6 feet (2 meters) on the road behind the vehicle.

All references to orientation line length apply to vehicles on a horizontal surface.

The angles of the red and green lines do not change when turning the steering wheel.



The orientation lines are displayed independent of the area around the vehicle. There is no automatic detection of obstacles. The driver is responsible for deciding if the vehicle fits into the parking spot.

## Perpendicular parking (mode 1)

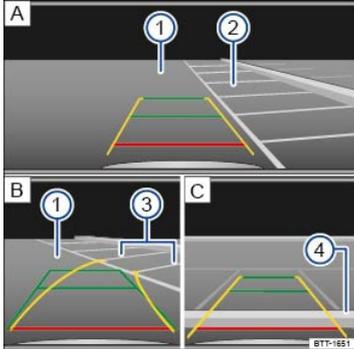


Fig. 159 Boundary lines for perpendicular parking (mode 1).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 159 :

Searching for a parking space.

Steering towards a selected parking space.

Maneuvering.

- ① Road.
- ② Selected parking space.
- ③ Boundary lines for the selected parking space.
- ④ Rear boundary of the parking space, such as a curb.

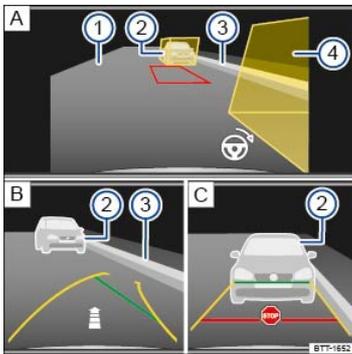
## Checklist

- ✓ The requirements for parking and maneuvering with the Rear View Camera system must be met Special considerations.
- ✓ Before driving past the selected parking space, press the or button.
- ✓ Slowly drive by a parking space.
- ✓ Position the vehicle in front of the parking space ② .
- ✓ Shift into Reverse (R).
- ✓ Heed the following message: Look! Safe to move? !
- ✓ Slowly back up and steer so that the yellow boundary lines ③ lead into the selected parking space .
- ✓ Align the vehicle in the parking space so that the green and yellow boundary lines ③ are parallel to the selected parking space .
- ✓ Stop the vehicle before (or at the very latest, when) the horizontal red line reaches the rear boundary, for example, a curb ④.

### NOTE

Smaller objects up to about 20 inches (50 cm) from the rear of the vehicle will not be detected by the camera and could cause vehicle damage.

## Parallel parking (mode 2)



**Fig. 160** Boundary lines for parallel parking (mode 2, if equipped).

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

Searching for a parking space.

Steering towards a selected parking space.

Maneuvering.

- ① Road.
- ② Rear boundary, such as a parked vehicle.
- ③ Side boundary of the parking space, such as a curb.
- ④ Front boundary, such as a parked vehicle.

The length of all of the boundary lines are for a vehicle that is on a horizontal surface.

The angles of the red and green lines do not change when turning the steering wheel

The yellow assistance areas show necessary maneuvering space needed for the selected parking space. The boundaries of the parking space should not come out of the yellow assistance areas.

When changing to parallel parking mode 2, the lines and zones for both sides appear when mode 2 is selected, and when the turn signal is used, the graphics for the side where you are not parking will disappear.

## Checklist

- ✓ The requirements for parking and maneuvering with Rear View Camera system must be met Special considerations.
- ✓ Before driving past the selected parking space, press the or button.
- ✓ Tap the function key in the Infotainment system for mode 2.
- ✓ Switch on the turn signal for the side of the vehicle on which you wish to park.
- ✓ Slowly drive past the parking space.
- ✓ Position the vehicle about 3 feet (1 meter) away from and parallel to the parking space. The yellow assistance areas should completely cover any boundaries:
  - ② . The space between the assistance areas must be free of obstacles.
- ✓ Press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.
- ✓ Shift into Reverse (R). A red-framed box represents your vehicle's path. If boundaries are outside of the yellow assistance areas, then the parking space is too small or your vehicle is not correctly positioned. If necessary, find a new parking space or re-position the vehicle.
- ✓ Heed the message: Look! Safe to move? !
- ✓ Turn the steering wheel until the red box is between the yellow assistance areas and turns green. You can use the available parking zone marking to position the green box. The steering wheel symbol on the bottom right side of the display shows the driver which way the steering wheel should be turned.
- ✓ Without moving the steering wheel, slowly back up until the stop sign appears OR until the side green line aligns with the side boundary of the parking space for example, the curb ③. An arrow shows the approximate remaining distance, based on the number of segments shown in the arrow.
- ✓ Stop the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel as far as possible in the opposite direction until there is no longer an arrow above the steering wheel symbol.
- ✓ Without moving the steering wheel, slowly back up. The horizontal green line will appear.
- ✓ Continue to slowly back up until the stop sign appears . OR: At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the horizontal red line has reached the rear boundary, for example, a parked vehicle ② . Position the vehicle parallel to the road as necessary.



It may take a few seconds for the area shown by the sensors to be displayed on the factory-installed Infotainment system screen.

## Off-road support (mode 3) and cross traffic (mode 4)



Fig. 161 Trailer support display (if equipped).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Trailer support or off-road support (mode 3)

In some vehicles, the trailer support feature can be used when approaching a trailer you wish to tow. A high zoom level is required in this mode, so obstacles behind the vehicle appear in the field of view later than in other modes. You must therefore pay very close attention.

The horizontal red line shown on the screen helps you align the vehicle with the trailer before hitching up and connecting to the trailer ⇒ [Trailer towing](#).

### Cross traffic (mode 4)

In some vehicles, the area in front of or behind the vehicle and the side areas are displayed. Mode 4 helps the driver to monitor traffic behind the vehicle and can be used in situations such as backing out of a garage or pulling out of a narrow space.

## Area View

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Area View](#)

⇒ [Switching Area View on and off](#)

⇒ [Using Area View](#)

There are cameras in the radiator grille, the outside mirrors, and the trunk lid to assist the driver while parking, maneuvering, or driving off-road. The camera images are displayed in the Infotainment system.

#### WARNING

Using the cameras to estimate the distance to people and things around the vehicle can result in collisions and severe personal injury.

- The camera lenses can enlarge and distort the field of vision and can cause objects on the screen to appear altered and imprecise.
- Due to the screen resolution or in low-light conditions, the cameras may not pick up thin posts, chain-link fences and similar fences, and other objects, or it may not show them clearly.
- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The Rear View Camera system has blind spots and cannot always show people, animals, and objects in certain situations. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- Always keep the camera lenses clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the lenses.

#### WARNING

Area View technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of Area View may result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always watch for people, especially small children, animals, and objects, because the cameras may not always be able to show them.
- The system may not be able to clearly show everything behind the vehicle.

#### NOTE

- The cameras show only two-dimensional images on the screen. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects or recessions in the road, for example.
- Things like thin rods, fences, posts, and trees may not be shown by the cameras and could damage the vehicle.

#### NOTE

The cameras must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lenses.

- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lenses with warm or hot water. This can damage the camera lenses.

## Area View

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Checklist

- ✓ The doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- ✓ The camera lenses must be clean and a clear image must be displayed.
- ✓ There must be a clear and complete view of the area around the vehicle.
- ✓ The parking or maneuvering area must be level.
- ✓ The vehicle speed must not be more than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
- ✓ The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded.
- ✓ The driver must be familiar with the system.
- ✓ The position of the cameras must not have changed, such as after a collision. If the position of one camera has changed, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Special considerations

The cameras display only two-dimensional images. Recesses and protruding objects on the ground or protruding parts on other vehicles may be difficult or impossible to identify due to the lack of depth of field.

Objects or another vehicle may seem closer or farther away on the screen than they really are.

- When driving from a level surface onto an uphill or downhill slope.
- When driving up or down a slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. These objects can disappear from the field of view when backing up.

### Switching Area View on and off



**Fig. 162** In the lower center console: Button to switch Area View on.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Switching Area View on

Press the  button ⇒ [Fig. 162](#). The display will not switch on at speeds above about 9 mph (15 km/h).

**OR:** Shift into reverse (**R**). The display switches on and shows boundary lines. Tap the function key **MENU** in the top left hand corner of the screen to access full Area View functionality ⇒ [Using Area View](#).

#### Switching Area View off

Press the  button ⇒ [Fig. 162](#) again.

**OR:** Move your hand toward the screen and press the **x** function key.

**OR:** Drive forward faster than about 10 mph (15 km/h).

**OR:** Press an Infotainment system button, for example, **Radio**.

**OR:** Switch off the ignition. The Area View display screen turns off after a few seconds.



Volkswagen recommends practicing using the Area View system in a safe place with no traffic or in a parking lot in order to familiarize yourself with the system and the way it works.

## Using Area View

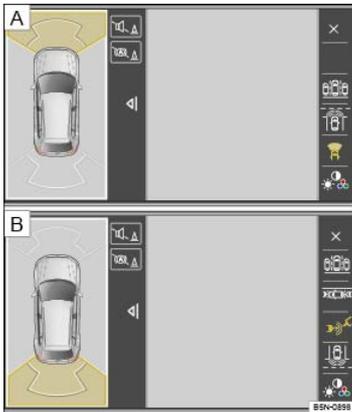


Fig. 163 Area View display: Front camera, Rear camera.

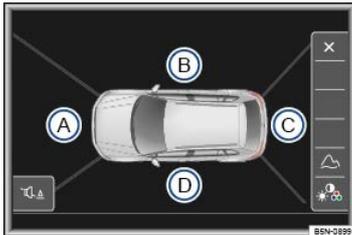


Fig. 164 Area View display: Bird's-eye view.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The functions and displays of the Area View system may vary depending on equipment.

The active camera view is displayed on the right side of the screen ⇒ Fig. 164. It is marked by a colored frame in the mini bird's-eye view shown on the left. You can hide the mini bird's-eye view by pressing the function key. The selected camera view will be shown in the entire display. In addition, the available menu options and possible camera views (referred to as modes) for the corresponding camera are shown on the right-hand side of the screen ⇒ Fig. 164. The view (mode) that is currently active is marked.

- *Left side:* mini bird's-eye view. Tap one of the four areas around the vehicle or the vehicle itself to change the view on the right side of the screen.
- *Right side:* the individual camera images are displayed corresponding to the area selected on the left side of the screen.

The following function keys appear when you move your hand toward the screen and press the MENU function key.

#### Screen display

- Switch the PDC sound on or off.
- Switch maneuver braking on and off.
- Switch the mini bird's-eye view display on.
- Switch the mini bird's-eye view display off.
- Close the current display.
- Turn off acoustic and visual PDC warnings while driving off-road.
- Setting display: brightness, contrast, color.

#### Modes

- The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. Boundary lines are displayed for assistance. See Rear View Camera System mode 1 ⇒ [Perpendicular parking \(mode 1\)](#).
- The area behind the vehicle is displayed. Boundary lines are displayed for assistance. See Rear View Camera System mode 1 ⇒ [Perpendicular parking \(mode 1\)](#).
- The area directly behind the vehicle is displayed. The colored areas and lines are provided for orientation. See Rear View Camera System mode 2 ⇒ [Parallel parking \(mode 2\)](#).
- The area behind the vehicle including the vehicle bumper are displayed. The red lines mark the safety zone. ⇒ [Off-road support \(mode 3\)](#) and [cross traffic \(mode 4\)](#).
- Shows cross-traffic behind the vehicle, and can be used for reverse perpendicular parking, reverse parallel parking or when hitching up a trailer to the vehicle.
- Shows the bird's-eye view full screen, for an all around view of the vehicle or for off-road driving ⇒ Fig. 164.

#### Camera views

- **Bird's-eye view** : Shows the bird's-eye view full screen, for an all around view of the vehicle or for off-road driving ⇒ Fig. 164.

- **Front View:** The area directly in front of the vehicle is shown in a bird's-eye view → Fig. 164A. This can be used, for example, when driving across a slope so that the area directly in front of the vehicle can be seen more easily.
- **Side View:** Shows the front passenger side → Fig. 164 B or C next to the vehicle separately as a bird's-eye view. This helps you to see the blind spot along the side of the vehicle.
- **Rear View:** Shows cross-traffic behind the vehicle, and can be used for reverse perpendicular parking, reverse parallel parking or when hitching up a trailer to the vehicle.



The orientation lines are displayed independent of the area around the vehicle. There is no automatic detection of obstacles. The driver is responsible for deciding if the vehicle fits into the parking spot.

## Braking assistance systems

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Braking assistance systems](#)

⇒ [Switching Anti-Slip Regulation \(ASR\) and ESC Sport mode on and off](#)

The **braking assistance systems** are the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL), Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR), and Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

### WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or does not go out, or lights up when driving, either the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle as soon as you can do so safely and get expert assistance → [Brake fluid](#).
- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or , the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, drive slowly and very carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Avoid sudden hard braking and steering.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or does not go out, or if it lights up while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.
- If the symbol **BRAKE WEAR** or lights up in the instrument cluster display, whether alone or together with a text message, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

## Warning and indicator lights

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒	Proper response
		<b>Stop!</b>  Get professional assistance immediately → <a href="#">About the brakes</a> .
	Brake system malfunction.	
		<b>Stop!</b>  Check the brake fluid level → <a href="#">Brake fluid</a> .
	Brake fluid level too low.	



Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ▲	Proper response
	Together with the ABS indicator light  or <b>ABS</b> : ABS failure.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.  The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.
<b>BRAKEWEAR</b> OR: 	Brake pads worn.	If you believe that it is safe to do so, immediately take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Check, and if necessary replace, <b>all</b> brake pads ⇒ <a href="#">About the brakes</a> .
	ESC switched off by the system.	Switch ignition off and on again. You may have to drive a short distance.
	ESC malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	Together with the ABS indicator light  or <b>ABS</b> : ABS malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.  The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.
	Vehicle battery has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 10–12 mph (15–20 km/h). If the indicator light stays on, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <a href="#">Vehicle battery</a> .
	ASR manually deactivated.  <b>OR</b> : ESC Sport mode manually activated	Switch on ASR or ESC, or switch off ESC Sport mode ⇒ <a href="#">Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off</a> .
	<b>OR</b> : Together with <b>ESCOFF</b> : ESC manually switched off (only possible in Off-road or Custom off-road mode).	ASR automatically turns on when you turn the ignition off and back on again. ESC automatically turns on when you switch from Off-road mode or Custom off-road mode back to the On-road setting ⇒ <a href="#">4MOTION Active Control</a> .
	Together with the ESC indicator light  : ABS malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	Together with warning light  , <b>BRAKE</b> or  : ABS failure.	The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.
	Brake pedal not depressed.	Depress the brake pedal to select a gear or drive position.

Flashes	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ▲	Proper response
	ESC or ASR is operating.	Take foot off accelerator pedal. Adapt driving to road conditions.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Braking assistance systems

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The ESC, ABS, BAS, ASR, and EDL braking assistance systems work only when the engine is running. These systems can significantly improve active driving safety.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to improve road holding and vehicle dynamics to help reduce the probability of skidding and loss of vehicle control. It works only when the engine is running. ESC detects certain difficult driving situations, including when the vehicle is beginning to spin (yaw) out of control. ESC then helps you to get the vehicle back under control by selectively braking the wheels and/or reducing engine power and by providing steering assistance to help hold the vehicle on the driver's intended course.

ESC has limitations. It is important to remember that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. It will not always be able to help out under all conditions you may come up against. For example, ESC may not always be able to help you master situations where there is a sudden change in the coefficient of friction of the road surface. When there is a section of dry road that is suddenly covered with water, slush or snow, ESC cannot perform the same way it would on a dry surface. If the vehicle hydroplanes (rides on a cushion of water instead of the road surface), ESC will not be able to help you steer the vehicle because contact with the pavement has been interrupted and the vehicle cannot be braked or steered. During fast cornering, particularly on winding roads, ESC cannot always deal as effectively with difficult driving situations as it can at lower speeds. When towing a trailer, ESC is not able to help you regain control as it would if you were not towing a trailer.

Always adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic, and weather conditions. ESC cannot override the vehicle's physical limits, increase the available traction, or keep a vehicle on the road if road departure is a result of driver inattention. Instead, ESC improves the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and on the road during extreme maneuvers by using the driver's steering inputs to help keep the vehicle going in the intended direction. If you are traveling at a speed that causes you to run off the road before ESC can provide any assistance, you may not experience the benefits of ESC.

ESC includes and/or works together with the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and XDL systems (see below). ESC is switched on all the time.

In certain situations when you need less traction or additional traction cannot be achieved, you can switch off Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) or switch on ESC Sport mode in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button, followed by the Vehicle, , and ESC system function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

If the vehicle is equipped with a  button in the lower center console ⇒ [Fig. 165](#), ASR can also be switched off by pressing the button. ESC Sport mode can also be switched on ⇒ [Switching Anti-Slip Regulation \(ASR\) and ESC Sport mode on and off](#) .

Depending on equipment, you can switch ESC off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button, followed by the Vehicle, , and ESC system function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) . You can only do this when Off-road or Custom off-road mode is activated ⇒ [4MOTION Active Control](#) .

Be sure to switch ASR or ESC on again when you no longer need less traction.

### Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS helps to keep the wheels from locking up and helps to maintain the driver's ability to steer and control the vehicle. This means the vehicle is less likely to skid, even during hard braking:

- Push the brake pedal down hard and hold it there. Don't take your foot off the pedal or reduce the force on the pedal!
- Do not pump the brake pedal or let up on it!
- Steer the vehicle while pushing down hard on the brake pedal.
- ABS stops working if you release or let up on the brake.

When ABS is doing its job, you will notice a **slight vibration** through the brake pedal and hear a noise. *ABS cannot shorten the stopping distance under all conditions*. The stopping distance may even be longer, for instance, when driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

When driving forward on loose surfaces, a special off-road ABS is automatically activated. In this mode, the front wheels could lock briefly. This shortens the braking distance in off-road situations as the wheels dig into loose surfaces. This occurs only when driving straight ahead. When the front wheels are turned, the normal

ABS is activated.

### **Brake Assist (BAS)**

The Brake Assist System can help to reduce stopping distances. If you press the brake pedal very quickly, BAS detects an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up full brake system pressure, maximizing braking power and reducing the stopping distance. This way, ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently.

Do **not** reduce pressure on the brake pedal! BAS switches off automatically as soon as you release or let up on the brake.

### **Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)**

ASR reduces engine power directed to spinning wheels and adjusts power to the road conditions. Even under poor road conditions, ASR can make it easier to get moving, accelerate, and climb hills.

ASR can be switched on and off manually → [Switching Anti-Slip Regulation \(ASR\) and ESC Sport mode on and off](#) .

### **Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL)**

EDL is applied during regular straight-line acceleration. EDL gently brakes a drive wheel that has lost traction (spinning) and redirects the drive force to other drive wheels. In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake from overheating. As soon as the brake has cooled down, EDL automatically switches on again.

XDL is an extension of the Electronic Differential Lock system. XDL does not react to drive wheel slippage when driving straight ahead. Instead, XDL detects slippage of the inside front wheel during fast cornering. XDL applies enough brake pressure to this wheel in order to stop the slippage. This improves traction, which helps the vehicle stay on track.

### **Automatic Post-Collision Braking System**

In the event of an accident, the Automatic Post-Collision Braking System can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding and the danger of secondary collisions through automatic braking.

The Automatic Post-Collision Braking System only functions in collisions if the airbag control unit registers the corresponding triggering threshold during the accident, and the accident occurs at a speed greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

The ESC brakes the vehicle automatically, provided that the hydraulic braking system, the ESC, and the electrical system are undamaged and remain functional.

The following actions override automatic braking in the event of an accident:

- When the driver depresses the accelerator. No automatic braking occurs.
- When the brake pressure transmitted through the depressed brake pedal is greater than the brake pressure provided by the system. The vehicle is braked manually.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Driving fast on icy, slippery, or wet roads can lead to a loss of control and result in serious personal injury for you and your passengers.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions. Never let the additional safety that ESC, ABS, BAS, ASR, and EDL can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.
- Braking assistance systems cannot overcome the laws of physics and always prevent loss of vehicle control. Slippery and wet roads are still dangerous even with ESC and the other systems!
- Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road and hydroplane. A vehicle that has lost road contact cannot be braked, steered, or controlled.
- These systems cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Although these systems are very effective and can help you control the vehicle in many difficult situations, always remember that vehicle handling and control is limited by tire traction.
- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, depress the accelerator carefully. Even with these systems, the wheels may start to spin, leading to a loss of vehicle control.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The effectiveness of ESC can be significantly reduced if other components and systems that affect vehicle dynamics, including but not limited to brakes, tires, and other systems mentioned above, are not properly maintained or functioning.

- Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the functioning of the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and ESC systems.
- Changing the vehicle suspension or using an unapproved tire/wheel combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and ESC systems work and reduce their effectiveness.
- The effectiveness of ESC is also determined by the tires installed → [Tires and wheels](#) .

## ⚠ WARNING

Driving without braking assistance systems can greatly lengthen the distance necessary to completely stop the vehicle, which can lead to a loss of control and result in serious personal injury for you and your passengers.

- Never let the vehicle coast when the engine is switched off.
- When the braking assistance systems are not working or when the vehicle is being towed, the brake must be depressed harder because the braking distance is greater.



All 4 wheels must be equipped with identical tires in order for ESC and ASR to work properly. Differences in the tread circumference of the tires can cause the system to reduce the engine power when it is not expected.



If ABS is not working, ESC, ASR, and EDL will also not work.



You may hear noises when these systems are active. This is normal and no cause for concern.

## Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and ESC Sport mode on and off



Fig. 165 In the lower center console: Button for switching ASR on and off manually (if equipped).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) only works when the engine is running. This system includes ABS, EDL and ASR.

When ASR is switched off, a driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display and the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up ⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#) . Switch off ASR only in situations where there is not enough traction, such as the following:

- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When rocking the vehicle back and forth when you are stuck.

Afterward, activate ASR again.

### Switching ASR on and off

- You can switch ASR off and on in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and ESC system function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) .
- **OR:** If the vehicle is equipped with a button in the lower center console ⇒ [Fig. 165](#) , ASR can be switched off by pressing the button when the ignition is on. Press the button again to switch ASR back on.

When ASR is switched off, a driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display and the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up ⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#) .

### Switching ESC Sport on and off

Depending on equipment, when switching off the ASR, the ESC sport mode (ESC Sport) can be switched on.

The brake intervention functions of ESC are limited when ESC Sport is switched on. ESC Sport can be switched on in the Infotainment system by pressing the **M** button followed by the Vehicle, , and ESC system function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) .

### Switching ESC on and off (if equipped)

- Depending on equipment, when switching off the ASR, you can switch ESC on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, , and ESC system function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#) . This is only possible when the Off-road or Custom off-road mode is activated.
- You may need to confirm a message in the Infotainment system in order to deactivate ESC.
- ESC switches back on automatically when you activate the On-road setting or when you switch the ignition off and back on ⇒ [4MOTION Active Control](#) .

When ESC is switched off, a driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display and the **ESCOFF** and indicator lights in the instrument cluster display come on ⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#) .



Depending on vehicle equipment, additional text messages may appear in the instrument cluster display to provide further information or to ask you to perform certain tasks ⇒ *Using the instrument cluster menus*.

## Storage and equipment

### Storage areas

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Storage compartment on the driver side*

⇒ *Glove compartment*

⇒ *Storage compartment in the dash panel*

⇒ *Storage compartment in the front center console*

⇒ *Storage compartment between the front seats*

⇒ *Storage compartments in the doors*

⇒ *Eyeglass storage compartment in the overhead console*

⇒ *Other storage compartments*

Store only lightweight or small objects in storage compartments.

Depending on options, there may be a factory-installed AUX-in jack  and/or USB port  in the front center console storage compartment.

#### WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle when the vehicle is moving, especially during sudden maneuvers and hard braking. This can cause serious personal injuries and even make the driver lose control of the vehicle.

- Never let animals ride in the vehicle's open storage compartments, on top of the instrument panel, or on the luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrests.
- Never put hard, heavy or sharp objects in these places or in articles of clothing or bags in the passenger compartment.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.

#### WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Always fasten floor mats securely to the floor.
- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats.
- Always make sure that nothing can fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving.

#### WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

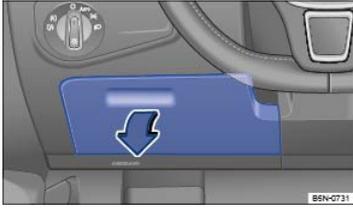
- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel, or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

#### NOTE

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by hard or sharp things on the shelf below the rear window.
- Do not keep any food, medicine, or other items sensitive to heat or cold in the vehicle. They can be damaged or made unusable by heat or cold.
- Things that are made of transparent materials (such as eyeglasses, magnifying glasses, or transparent suction cups on the windows) can magnify sunlight and damage the vehicle.

**i** The ventilation slots in the luggage compartment must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle.

## Storage compartment on the driver side



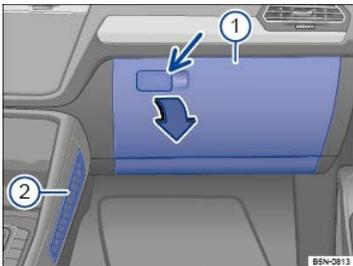
**Fig. 166** On the driver side: Storage compartment.

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

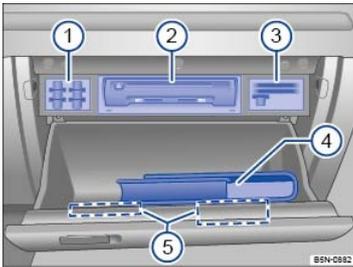
To *open* the compartment, pull the handle ⇒ *Fig. 166* in the direction of the arrow.

To *close*, push the lid up until it latches.

## Glove compartment



**Fig. 167** On the passenger side: Glove compartment.



**Fig. 168** Inside the glove compartment.

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

**Key to** ⇒ *Fig. 167* :

- ① Glove compartment
- ② Storage area

**Key to** ⇒ *Fig. 168* :

- ① SD card holders
- ② Infotainment system accessories (if equipped) ,Chapter *Infotainment System*
- ③ Card holders and coin holder (if equipped)
- ④ Owner's Manual
- ⑤ Additional holders for coins, cards, or sunglasses

### Opening and closing the glove compartment

To *open*, pull the handle ⇒ *Fig. 167*.

To *close*, push the lid up.

### Infotainment system accessories

Vehicles equipped with an Infotainment system may have a CD player, SD card readers, or other Infotainment system accessories ⇒ *Fig. 168*② in the glove compartment. See ,Chapter *Infotainment System* for further information.

## Owner's Manual

If the vehicle is not equipped with an Infotainment system, there is a slot for the Owner's Manual in the upper part of the glove compartment. Always keep the Owner's Manual in this slot or in the glove compartment as shown in ⇒ Fig. 168④.

## Holders

Depending on vehicle equipment, there may be holders for SD cards ⇒ Fig. 168①, other types of cards ③, and a coin holder in the upper part of the glove compartment.

There may also be additional holders for coins, cards, or sunglasses in the glove compartment cover ⑤.

### ⚠ WARNING

An open glove compartment door can increase the risk of serious injury during sudden braking or driving maneuvers or in a crash.

- Always keep the glove compartment closed while the vehicle is moving.

### ! NOTE

In some vehicle models, design considerations have made it necessary to have openings in the glove compartment behind the Owner's Manual slot, for example. Small items may fall through these openings and get behind the instrument panel. This can cause unusual noises and damage the vehicle. Never put any small objects in the glove compartment for this reason.

## Storage compartment in the dash panel

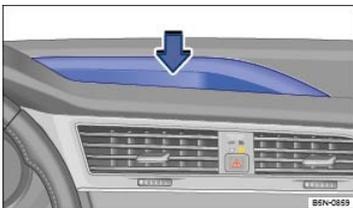


Fig. 169 Storage compartment in the dash panel.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject

There is a storage compartment in the dash panel ⇒ Fig. 169. Only store objects when the vehicle is not moving.

### ⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly stowed items can fly through the vehicle, causing serious personal injury during hard braking or sharp steering or in an accident. Loose items can also be struck and thrown through the passenger compartment by the front airbags if they inflate.

- Never store items in the storage compartment on the dash panel while driving.

## Storage compartment in the front center console

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject



The storage compartment in the front center console ⇒ Fig. 8⑤ may have a 12 Volt socket, AUX-in jack 🎧 and/or one or two USB ports 🔌 ⇒ Booklet Infotainment System.

## Storage compartment between the front seats



Fig. 170 In the front center armrest: Storage compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject

- To *open*, push the release button and lift the center armrest up as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 170.
- To *close*, push the center armrest all the way down until it latches into place.

## ⚠ WARNING

When completely open or improperly adjusted, the center armrest can restrict the driver's arm movement and cause crashes and serious personal injury.

- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never let a passenger, especially a child, ride on the center armrest.

## Storage compartments in the doors

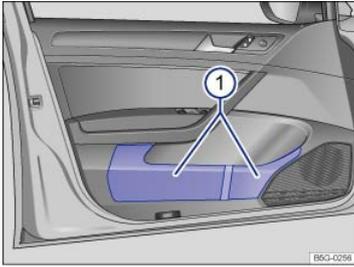


Fig. 171 In the driver door: Storage compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

There is a storage compartment in each vehicle door ⇒ Fig. 171①.

## ⚠ NOTE

- Large or heavy items may fall out of the door storage compartments when the door is opened or closed.
- Open drinks placed in the bottle holders in the doors may spill when you open or close the doors.

## Eyeglass storage compartment in the overhead console



Fig. 172 In the overhead console: Storage compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Your vehicle may have a storage compartment that can be used for storing eyeglasses or other light objects.

To *open*, briefly press and release the button ⇒ Fig. 172 (arrow) on the storage compartment cover.

To *close*, push the lid up until it latches.

## Other storage compartments

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Additional storage

- In the center console.
- In the sides of the luggage compartment.
- In the third row trim.
- Pockets in the backrests of the front seats (if equipped).
- **Coat hooks** on the overhead grab handles in the rear.
- Luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest (if equipped) – only for light clothing or similar objects that do not interfere with visibility to the rear!

## ⚠ WARNING

Clothes or other items on the luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest may limit visibility and cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always hang clothes so that they do not limit visibility.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged items in the pockets that may interfere with airbag

deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

#### NOTE

The maximum load for each coat hook is 5 lbs. (2.5 kg).

## Cup holders

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Cup holders in the front center console*

⇒ *Rear cup holders*

### Bottle holders

There is a place for bottles in the open compartments in the driver, front passenger, and rear doors. The bottle volume must not exceed 49 oz (1.5 liter) (front doors and 16.9 oz (0.5 liter) (rear doors) ⇒ ▲.

#### WARNING

Improper use of beverage holders can cause injuries.

- Never put hot drinks in the cup holders. During normal or sudden maneuvers, sudden braking or in a collision, hot liquid can be spilled and cause burns!
- Make certain that bottles or other items cannot fall into the driver's footwell while the vehicle is moving and interfere with the movement of the pedals.
- Never put heavy cups, food or other heavy items in the cup holders. Heavy items can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.
- Use the bottle holders only for standard beverage bottles holding no more than 49 oz (1.5 liter) (front doors) and 16.9 oz (0.5 liter) (rear doors).

#### WARNING

Hot or freezing temperatures in the passenger compartment can cause closed bottles to explode or break.

- Never leave closed bottles in a very hot or cold vehicle.

#### NOTE

Never put open drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving. The drinks can spill and damage the vehicle, including the electrical system.



Some cup holder inserts can be removed for cleaning.

## Cup holders in the front center console

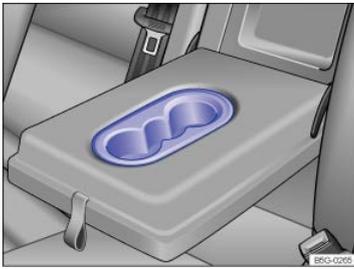


Fig. 173 In the front center console: Cup holders.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

There are 2 cup holders in the front center console in front of the front center armrest ⇒ Fig. 173.

## Rear cup holders



**Fig. 174 Cup holders in the rear center armrest**

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  **Introduction to the subject**

Your vehicle may be equipped with cup holders in the rear center armrest.

To *open*, fold the center armrest down.

To *close*, fold the center armrest up.

There is also a cup holder on each side of the third row trim.

#### **WARNING**

Always keep the armrest folded up when the vehicle is moving to reduce the risk of injury.

- Never let anybody, especially children, ride on the rear center armrest or in the center position on the rear seat when the armrest is folded down. An improper seating position can increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.

## Power outlets

### **Introduction to the subject**

**In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:**

⇒ **Electrical sockets in the vehicle**

Electrical devices can be connected to the vehicle 12 Volt sockets.

The connected devices must be in good working order.

#### **WARNING**

Improper use of electrical sockets and electrical devices may start a fire and cause severe personal injury.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Sockets and connected devices can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the connected device gets warm, immediately switch it off and disconnect the power supply.

#### **NOTE**

- To help prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect any accessories such as a solar panel or vehicle battery charger to a 12 Volt socket.
- Only use accessories which have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility with a motor vehicle.
- To help prevent damage from voltage fluctuations, switch off all electrical consumers connected to the 12 Volt socket before switching the ignition on or off or starting the engine.
- Never connect devices to a 12 Volt socket that draw more than the maximum wattage the socket can supply. Drawing too much power can damage the vehicle electrical system.

 Please turn off the engine when you stop for any length of time.

 The vehicle battery will drain if you use electrical equipment when the engine is not running.

 Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system.

 Operating electrical devices near the windshield-integrated antenna may interfere with AM radio reception.

## Electrical sockets in the vehicle

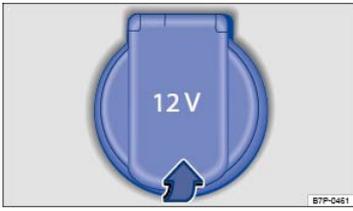


Fig. 175 12 Volt socket with cover.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Maximum power draw

Socket Maximum power draw

12 Volts 120 watts

If 2 or more electrical devices are connected at the same time, the total power draw of all connected devices must never be more than 190 watts ⇒ .

The maximum power draw at any one socket must never be exceeded. Electrical devices should have information on them that says how much power they draw.

### 12 Volt socket

The 12 Volt socket works only when the ignition is switched on.

If the ignition is on but the engine is not running, the vehicle battery will be drained by any device that is plugged in and turned on. For this reason, never use the electrical sockets unless the engine is running.

To help prevent damage from voltage fluctuations, switch off all electrical devices connected to a 12 Volt socket before switching the ignition on or off or starting the engine.

The vehicle may have 12 Volt sockets at the following places:

- In the lower center console ⇒ [Lower center console](#).
- In the rear center console.
- In the luggage compartment.

### NOTE

- Follow the manufacturer's instructions for connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, or the entire vehicle electrical system may be damaged.
- 12 Volt socket:
  - **Only use equipment that has been tested for electromagnetic compatibility and complies with applicable guidelines.**
  - **Never feed current into the socket, with a solar panel, for example.**



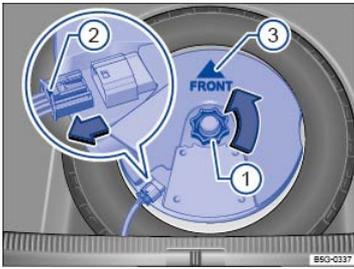
Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system.

## Media and audio components

### Removing the subwoofer



Fig. 176 In the luggage compartment for vehicles with seven seats: Pull straps to lift third row bench and access the subwoofer.



**Fig. 177 Under the luggage compartment floor: Subwoofer (if equipped).**

The subwoofer, if equipped, is located under the luggage compartment floor and must be removed to access the spare wheel.

## Checklist

**Follow these steps in the order listed:**

- ✓ Raise the luggage compartment floor and secure it in the raised position or remove it from the luggage compartment Luggage compartment floor.
- ✓ Unscrew the handwheel ① in a counterclockwise direction (arrow).
- ✓ To release the connector, press and hold the center tab down with one hand ②.
- ✓ With the other hand, grasp the connector on both sides, and carefully pull the connector out of the socket in the direction of the arrow (magnified view). You may have to lift the subwoofer up slightly to do this. Put the electric cable aside.
- ✓ For vehicles with seven seats: Pull the straps in the direction of the arrows to lift the third row bench up so you can remove the subwoofer .
- ✓ Remove the subwoofer carefully and place in a clean storage location.

## Checklist

- ✓ For vehicles with seven seats: Pull the straps in the direction of the arrows to lift the third row bench up so you can reinstall the subwoofer .
- ✓ Reinstall the subwoofer carefully back into the recess. The tip of the arrow symbol FRONT on the subwoofer ③ must point toward the front of the vehicle
- ✓ Insert the connector ② into the socket until it clicks into place.
- ✓ Turn the handwheel ① clockwise to secure the subwoofer.
- ✓ For vehicles with seven seats: Push the third row bench back into place with your hand until it is securely locked and latched.
- ✓ Carefully put the luggage compartment floor back into place.

## VW Car-Net®

### VW Car-Net: Connecting you and your vehicle

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *VW Car-Net Security & Service*

⇒ *Features*

⇒ *Application software ("apps")*

⇒ *3-button module*

VW Car-Net® services are provided by Verizon Telematics, Inc. (VzT) and are available only on select models. Automatic Crash Notification (ACN) may be engaged for up to 6 months without activating a trial or paid subscription; Manual Emergency Call service and all other VW Car-Net services require a trial or paid subscription. VW Car-Net may collect location information. See applicable Terms of Service and Privacy Policy available at [www.vw.com/carnet](http://www.vw.com/carnet) for details.

#### Data Collection and Privacy

Vehicle location information is transmitted to Volkswagen and our VW Car-Net service provider, Verizon Telematics, Inc. (VzT), anytime you press a VW Car-Net in-car button, when an ACN event occurs or periodically in connection with the operation of VW Car-Net.

Unless VW Car-Net equipment is disabled in the vehicle, it is possible for Volkswagen and VzT to determine the car's location if required to do so by law, court order, subpoena or other legal requirement. For more information, please contact the VW Car-Net Response Center at 1-877-820-2290.

Calls may be monitored or recorded.

Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits, uses, and shares information about you and your vehicle in accordance with the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Policy. See the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Policy at (<http://www.vw.com/carnet>) for more details.

## ⚠ WARNING

Application software and VW Car-Net services that are unsuitable or improperly used can cause accidents, serious personal injury and vehicle damage.

- VW Car-Net services can be used only where adequate cellular and GPS signals are available.
- Volkswagen recommends using only services and application software that are provided by Volkswagen or Verizon Telematics, Inc. (VzT) specifically for your vehicle.
- Protect the mobile device and its application software from misuse.
- Never modify application software and VW Car-Net services.
- Always read and heed the operating instructions for the mobile device.

## ⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury! Using application software and VW Car-Net services while driving can distract the driver from traffic.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.

## VW Car-Net Security & Service

📖 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [⚠ Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle has equipment to enable VW Car-Net, a suite of connected vehicle services that makes driving and owning a Volkswagen vehicle more convenient. VW Car-Net allows you to seamlessly connect your car and your life by offering the following services:

- **Safe & Secure** – Receive support and assistance in the moment of need.
- **Family Guardian** – Keep track of family members driving your vehicle.
- **Remote Vehicle Access** – Interact with your vehicle through your VW Car-Net iPhone® or Android® app, computer or a VW Car-Net Customer Specialist (text and data rates apply).
- **Diagnostics & Maintenance** – Manage your vehicle health with diagnostic checks and service scheduling.

You can access VW Car-Net Security & Service via your VW Car-Net iPhone® or Android® app (text and data rates apply) and the VW Car-Net Security & Service website (<http://www.vw.com/carnet>). If you have a question or would like to subscribe, please either press the ⇒ [Fig. 180①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 181①](#) button in your vehicle or contact the VW Car-Net Response Center at 1-877-820-2290. For more information or to log on to your VW Car-Net Security & Service account, visit <http://www.vw.com/carnet>.

Note: Please review the VW Car-Net Security & Service Terms of Service and Privacy Policy at <http://www.vw.com/carnet>.

### Subscription required

Automatic Crash Notification (ACN) may be engaged for up to 6 months, starting from the date of new vehicle sale, without activating a trial or paid subscription.

The Manual Emergency Call service and all other VW Car-Net Security & Service features require a trial or paid subscription. To begin your trial or paid subscription, authentication and activation are required. For more information, please visit the website (<http://www.vw.com/carnet>), press the ⇒ [Fig. 180①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 181①](#) button in the 3-button module in your vehicle or contact the VW Car-Net Response Center at 1-877-820-2290.

The LED light in the 3-button module will be **green** during the trial period and whenever you have an active subscription. The LED light will go off if the trial period is over and the customer has not subscribed to the VW Car-Net services. The LED light will be **red** only during a VW Car-Net hardware malfunction or fault ⇒ [3-button module](#).

**Once a trial or paid VW Car-Net Security & Service subscription has been activated, please advise all who use the vehicle that different kinds of data can be sent and received automatically by the vehicle, including speed, location and more.**

## ⚠ WARNING

Vehicle health reports do not replace the information provided by the vehicle warning and indicator lights. Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.
- Before opening the engine hood, always switch off the engine and let the engine cool down.
- Always be very careful when working in the engine compartment, which is a potentially dangerous area in any motor vehicle and can cause serious

personal injury.

**NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits, uses and shares information about you and your vehicle in accordance with the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Policy. See the VW Car-Net Security & Service Terms of Service and Privacy Policy at <http://www.vw.com/carnet> for more details.



VW Car-Net Security & Service services use a system based on a wireless communication network. If all technical and other conditions are met and VW Car-Net Security & Service still does not work properly, please try using the service again later.

## Features

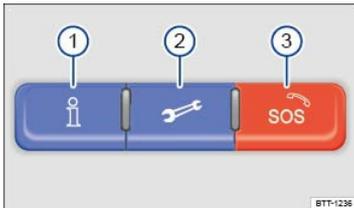


Fig. 178 In the roof console: 3-button module to access VW Car-Net service operators (version 1).

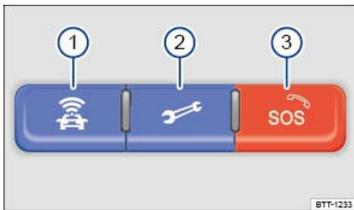


Fig. 179 In the roof console: 3-button module to access VW Car-Net service operators (version 2).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The following listed features are available after VW Car-Net® Security & Service registration either through the 3-button module ⇒ [3-button module](#), a mobile device ⇒ [Application software \("apps"\)](#), the VW Car-Net Security & Service website (<http://www.vw.com/carnet>) or by contacting the VW Car-Net Response Center at 1-877-820-2290. They are divided into 4 categories: Safe & Secure, Family Guardian, Remote Vehicle Access and Diagnostics & Maintenance Services. Always refer to the VW Car-Net Security & Service website for the most up-to-date information regarding VW Car-Net Security & Service services.

### Safe & Secure:

Feature	Description
Automatic Crash Notification (ACN)	Automatic Crash Notification is initiated in the event of airbag deployment or rollover. When the feature is activated the VW Car-Net Response Center is notified of your location and contacts your vehicle to determine the risk of injury and to dispatch help. Help is dispatched even if the VW Car-Net Response Center does not connect to the vehicle's occupants. Automatic Crash Notification may be engaged for up to 6 months without activating a trial or paid subscription.
Manual Emergency Call	<i>In the case of an emergency, press the button ③ in the 3-button module:</i> The VW Car-Net device initiates a connection to the VW Car-Net Response Center. The location of the vehicle and customer data for identification is sent at the same time.
Roadside Assistance	<i>Press the button ② in the 3-button module:</i> The vehicle will connect directly to the Volkswagen Roadside Assistance Call Center. The vehicle's location is also transmitted in order to more quickly provide assistance.

**Safe & Secure:**

Feature	Description
Stolen Vehicle Location	
Assistance	
<i>For use by law enforcement authorities only. See Terms of Service at www.vw.com/carnet for details.</i>	After you have reported your vehicle as stolen to law enforcement, you may provide the case information to the VW Car-Net Response Center. Once the information has been verified, the VW Car-Net Customer Specialist will be able to provide law enforcement with vehicle location data sent by the VW Car-Net module.

**Family Guardian:**

Feature	Description
Boundary Alert	By logging on to your VW Car-Net Security & Service account, you can designate an area on a map as a virtual fence. The vehicle owner can then choose notification channels (text message or email) for receiving alerts when the vehicle crosses the defined boundary (texts and data rates apply).
Speed Alert	VW Car-Net Security & Service can be configured to inform the vehicle owner whenever the vehicle exceeds a speed set by the owner. The owner can select to be informed through multiple channels, including text messages and email (text and data rates apply).

**Remote Vehicle Access:**

Feature	Description
Remote Door Unlock	You can send a request to unlock the vehicle doors through your VW Car-Net iPhone <sup>®</sup> or Android <sup>®</sup> app, the VW Car-Net Security & Service website or by calling the VW Car-Net Response Center (text and data rates apply). If none of the vehicle doors are opened within about 30 seconds, the car will lock again.
Remote Door Lock	You can send a request to lock the vehicle doors through your VW Car-Net iPhone <sup>®</sup> or Android <sup>®</sup> mobile application, the VW Car-Net Security & Service website or by calling the VW Car-Net Response Center (text and data rates apply).
Remote Honk and Flash	You can send a honk and flash signal to the car using the VW Car-Net Security & Service website or the VW Car-Net iPhone <sup>®</sup> or Android <sup>®</sup> app (text and data rates apply). The car will honk the horn and blink the headlights and emergency flashers for up to 10 seconds.
Last Parked Location	You can locate your last parked location using your VW Car-Net iPhone <sup>®</sup> or Android <sup>®</sup> app (text and data rates apply).
Destinations	Points of Interest (POIs) or other destinations can be imported remotely into the factory-installed navigation system (if equipped) from a computer or the VW Car-Net iPhone <sup>®</sup> or Android <sup>®</sup> app (text and data rates apply). These destinations can be called up and used by the navigation system.

Remote Vehicle Access:	
Feature	Description
Destination Download	<p><i>Press the button ① in the 3-button module:</i> The vehicle will connect directly to the VW Car-Net<sup>®</sup> Response Center where a VW Car-Net Customer Specialist will assist with destinations. The address of a dealer's location can also be sent by the Customer Specialist to your factory-installed navigation system (if equipped).</p>
Remote Status Check	<p>Current information about the vehicle can be viewed through a computer or your VW Car-Net iPhone<sup>®</sup> or Android<sup>®</sup> app (text and data rates apply). You can find out if the doors, luggage compartment and engine hood are open or closed, whether the car lights are on or off, the level of fuel in the tank, when the vehicle needs to be serviced next and more.</p>

Diagnostics & Maintenance:	
Feature	Description
Dealer Scheduling	<p><i>Press the button ① in the 3-button module:</i> The vehicle will initiate a call to the VW Car-Net Response Center where a VW Car-Net Customer Specialist will connect you with an authorized Volkswagen dealer to schedule your service appointment. The address of the dealer's location can also be sent by the Customer Specialist to your factory-installed navigation system (if equipped).</p>
Vehicle Health Report	<p>View a vehicle health report to proactively manage maintenance and other services and to receive up-to-date diagnostics in a monthly email report or by immediate request.</p>

**⚠ WARNING**

Refer to your vehicle's warning and indicator lights for the most current diagnostic information. Always consult the vehicle literature for maintenance guidelines. Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

**i** The VW Car-Net Security & Service website (<http://www.vw.com/carnet>) contains the most up-to-date information and instructions about VW Car-Net Security & Service services.

- Please regularly visit the website to learn about changes to services and new features.
- VW Car-Net Security & Service features can be modified, discontinued, deactivated, reactivated or expanded without any further notice.

## Application software (“apps”)

**📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject**

Many mobile devices are equipped to load application software (apps) into the device. Apps can make it possible to display additional information on the factory-installed Radio or Navigation system or activate, control or deactivate specific vehicle features.

Application software, its usage and the wireless connection required to use application software may be billable services. Apps may be provided by third parties. Therefore you should refer to the terms of use and privacy statements associated with the apps for information about how the apps collect, use and share information about you, your vehicle or your mobile device.

The application software provided may be designed to be used for a variety of purposes and be specific to your vehicle and country ⇒ ①. The content, range of software provided and application software provider can vary. Some application software is also subject to the availability of services provided by third parties. In order for some application software to work, wireless service reception must be strong enough to handle the data exchange involved (text and data rates apply).

Application software descriptions may be provided by the service provider.

Due to the multitude of mobile devices and fast pace of software development, the application software provided may not run on all mobile devices and their operating systems. This may even apply for the same model of a mobile device. For example, application software may run on version 2 of the device's operating system but not on version 3.

Application software can be modified, discontinued, deactivated, reactivated or expanded without any further notice.

In order for some application software to work, the wireless or cable connection between the factory-installed Radio or Navigation system and a compatible, functioning mobile device must be strong enough and uninterrupted.

## ! NOTE

Volkswagen is not responsible for vehicle damage caused by inferior-quality or malicious application software, poorly programmed application software, insufficient wireless service reception, data loss during transmission or misuse of mobile devices.

### 3-button module

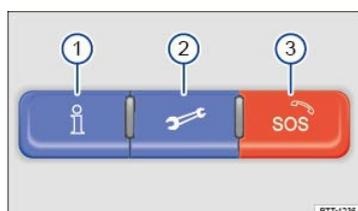


Fig. 180 In the roof console: 3-button module to access VW Car-Net service operators (version 1).

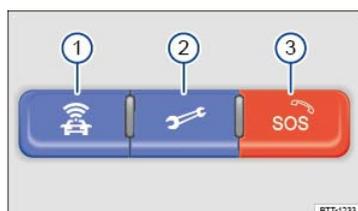


Fig. 181 In the roof console: 3-button module to access VW Car-Net service operators (version 2).

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The buttons in the 3-button module provide access to several VW Car-Net® Security & Service features and pressing a button will initiate a connection to the VW Car-Net Response Center. Calls may be monitored or recorded. In general, the VW Car-Net Customer Specialist will end the call.

⇒ Fig. 180 or ⇒ Fig. 181

Function

①

*Press and hold for longer than 2 seconds:* Connects to the VW Car-Net® Response Center and a VW Car-Net Customer Specialist.

*Press again:* End the call.

②

*Press and hold for longer than 2 seconds:* Assistance in the event of a breakdown by connecting to the Volkswagen Roadside Provider.

*Press again:* End the call.

③

*Press and hold for longer than 2 seconds:* Activate emergency call.

*Press again:* End the call.

## LED light in the 3-button module

The LED light in the 3-button module will be **green** during the trial period and whenever you have an active subscription. The LED light will go off if the trial period is over and the customer has not subscribed to the VW Car-Net Security & Service. The LED light will be **red** only during a VW Car-Net hardware malfunction or fault.

### WARNING

Application software and VW Car-Net Security & Service services that are unsuitable or improperly used can cause accidents, serious personal injury and vehicle damage.

- VW Car-Net Security & Service can be used only where adequate cellular and GPS signals are available
- Volkswagen recommends using only services and application software that are provided by Volkswagen or Verizon Telematics, Inc. (VzT) specifically for your vehicle.
- Protect the mobile device and its application software from misuse.
- Never modify application software and VW Car-Net services.
- Always read and heed the operating instructions for the mobile device.

### WARNING

Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury! Using application software and VW Car-Net services while driving can distract the driver from traffic.

- Always drive attentively and responsibly.

### NOTE

The system does not support simultaneous VW Car-Net Security & Service and mobile phone calls via the mobile phone package.

- When a VW Car-Net service is accessed through the 3-button module call buttons any calls on a mobile device connected to the vehicle's mobile phone package will be automatically disconnected.
- Initiating or accepting a call on a mobile device connected to the vehicle's mobile phone package could end any connection to the VW Car-Net Response Center made through the 3-button module.
- Calls on a mobile device connected to the vehicle's mobile phone package cannot be accepted or initiated during an automated emergency connection to the VW Car-Net Response Center, for example, because an airbag has deployed.

## Transporting

### Stowing luggage

#### Always stow all luggage securely in the vehicle

- Distribute the load in the vehicle and, if applicable, on the roof and in/on the trailer as evenly as possible.
- Always put luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Put heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ⇒ [Weights and axle weights](#).
- Secure luggage in the luggage compartment using suitable straps and the tie downs ⇒ [Tie-downs](#).
- Securely stow small objects as well.
- Adjust the headlight range, if necessary ⇒ [Lights](#).
- Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure. Heed the information on the tire pressure label ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).
- Pay especially close attention to your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System when driving with a heavy load ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

### WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly stowed items can fly through the vehicle, causing serious personal injury during hard braking or sharp steering or in an accident. Loose items can also be struck and thrown through the passenger compartment by the front airbags if they inflate. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stow all objects securely in the vehicle. Always put luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the passenger compartment properly with suitable straps so that they cannot move into the deployment zone of a side or front airbag during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver, or in a collision.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never stow hard, heavy, or sharp objects in the vehicle's open storage compartments, on the luggage compartment cover, or on the top of the instrument panel.

- Always remove hard, heavy, or sharp objects from clothing and bags in the vehicle interior and stow them securely in the luggage compartment.
- Passengers must never ride in an incorrect seating position because objects are being transported in the vehicle.
- Never let anybody sit in a seat that is blocked by objects being carried in the vehicle.
- Never let anyone ride in the luggage compartment.

## ⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy objects causes the handling characteristics of the vehicle to change and increases braking distances. Heavy loads which are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and cause serious personal injury.

- Transporting heavy items causes the handling characteristics of the vehicle to change by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity.
- Always distribute luggage evenly and as low as possible within the vehicle. The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage).
- Always stow luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward of the rear axle as possible and secure them with appropriate straps to the tie-downs provided.
- Secure the load properly to keep it from shifting.
- Never exceed the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating or Gross Axle Weight Ratings, which are printed on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the door jamb of the driver door. Exceeding the permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and behave differently.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to accommodate your payload and its weight distribution within your vehicle.
- Be especially cautious and gentle when stepping on the accelerator pedal and avoid sudden braking and other maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

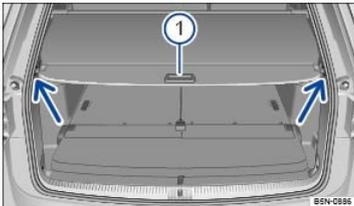
## ⓘ NOTE

The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.

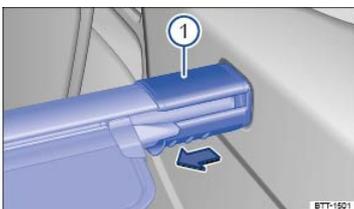
**i** The ventilation slots in the luggage compartment must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle.

**i** If applicable, please review the information on loading a trailer ⇒ [Trailer towing](#) and a roof rack ⇒ [Roof rack](#).

## Luggage compartment cover



**Fig. 182** In the luggage compartment: Opening the luggage compartment cover.



**Fig. 183** In the luggage compartment: Removing the luggage compartment cover.

Some vehicles are equipped with a luggage compartment cover, on which you can put light articles of clothing. But remember that your view through the rear window must not be obstructed.

### Opening the luggage compartment cover

- Pull the luggage compartment cover by the handle ⇒ [Fig. 182](#) ① towards you, then up and out of the stops (arrows) at the rear of the luggage compartment.
- The luggage compartment cover will fully retract to the forward position.

### Closing the luggage compartment cover

- Pull the retracted luggage compartment cover evenly toward the rear and guide it into the stops ⇒ [Fig. 182](#) (arrows).

### Removing the luggage compartment cover

- Open the luggage compartment cover, if necessary.
- Push the retainer for the luggage compartment cover ⇒ *Fig. 183*① in the direction of the arrow.
- Lift the luggage compartment cover up and out at the retainer.
- If necessary, stow the luggage compartment cover under the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Stowing the luggage compartment cover*.

### Installing the luggage compartment cover

- Place the left end of the luggage compartment cover in the mounting in the side trim.
- Push the luggage compartment cover retainer ⇒ *Fig. 183*① into the right-hand mounting.
- Make sure the retainer has securely locked into place.

#### ⚠ WARNING

In a sudden braking or other maneuver, or in a collision, unsecured or improperly secured objects or animals on the luggage compartment cover can cause serious personal injury.

- Never leave hard, heavy, or sharp objects in bags or loose on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never let animals ride on the luggage compartment cover.

#### ⚠ WARNING

To install the luggage compartment cover correctly, the third row of seats must be completely folded forward ⇒ *Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place*.

- Do not let passengers or children occupy a third row seat when the backrest is folded forward.
- If passengers are sitting in the third row, never install the luggage compartment cover.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Clothes or other items on the luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrest may limit visibility and cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always hang clothes so that they do not limit visibility.

#### ! NOTE

To help prevent damage to the luggage compartment cover, the luggage compartment may only be loaded to a height at which the luggage compartment cover will not press on the cargo when the trunk lid is closed.

#### ! NOTE

Things on the luggage compartment cover can damage it.

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.

**i** The ventilation slots in the luggage compartment must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle.

### Stowing the luggage compartment cover



**Fig. 184** Under the luggage compartment floor: Stowing the luggage compartment cover.

The removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed under the luggage compartment floor.

- Lift up the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor* and secure it or store it.
- Stow the luggage compartment cover by securing each retainer ⇒ *Fig. 184*①, as shown, in the rear recesses of the corresponding side racks in the luggage compartment.
- Check to make sure that the luggage compartment cover is securely installed.
- Reinstall or lower the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.

### Luggage compartment floor

## Variable luggage compartment floor (vehicles with five seats)

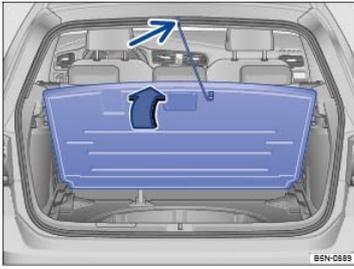


Fig. 185 In the luggage compartment: Opening the variable luggage compartment floor.

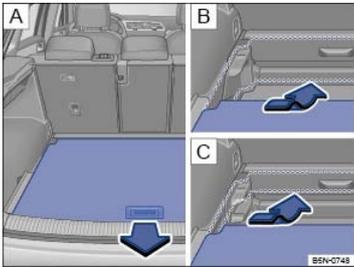


Fig. 186 In the luggage compartment: Adjusting the height of the variable luggage compartment floor.

Vehicles with five seats are equipped with a variable luggage compartment floor, which is height-adjustable.

### Raising and lowering the luggage compartment floor

- To *raise* the luggage compartment floor, lift the recessed handle and hook the strap to the top of the luggage compartment as shown ⇒ Fig. 185 (arrow).
- To *lower*, unhook the strap and gently guide the luggage compartment floor downward into position ⇒ ⓐ. Make sure the strap is not in the way of the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*

### Adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor

- Grasp the recessed handle, lift the luggage compartment floor, and pull it rearward out of the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment ⇒ Fig. 186Ⓐ.
- Insert the luggage compartment floor into the guides at the required height and push it forward ⇒ Fig. 186Ⓑ or Ⓒ.

### Removing the luggage compartment floor

- Grasp the recessed handle, lift the luggage compartment floor, and pull it rearward out of the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor and store it in a clean, dry location.

### ⚠ WARNING

During hard braking or an accident, loose objects can fly through the passenger compartment and cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Even if the luggage compartment floor panel is properly raised, it is still necessary to secure all objects.

### ⓘ NOTE

Do not let the luggage compartment floor fall freely when closing it. Always guide it down into place. The trim or the luggage compartment floor could be damaged.



If you store the luggage compartment cover under the variable luggage compartment floor, insert the luggage compartment floor into the upper guides.

## Luggage compartment floor (vehicles with seven seats)



Fig. 187 In the luggage compartment: Opening the luggage compartment floor.

### Opening the luggage compartment floor

- Grasp the pull strap on the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Fig. 187* and lift in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor from the luggage compartment.

### Closing the luggage compartment floor

- Guide the luggage compartment floor gently downward into position ⇒ ⓘ.

#### ⚠ WARNING

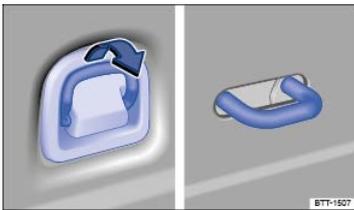
During hard braking or an accident, loose objects can fly through the passenger compartment and cause serious or even fatal injuries.

#### ⓘ NOTE

Do not let the luggage compartment floor fall freely when closing it. Always guide it down into place. The trim or the luggage compartment floor could be damaged.

## Luggage compartment – features

### Tie-downs



**Fig. 188** In the luggage compartment: Fixed and foldable tie-downs.

There are four tie-downs in the luggage compartment, two in the front and two in the rear ⇒ *Fig. 188*, which you can use to secure luggage or other items.

The two tie-downs in the front must be folded open for use ⇒ *Fig. 188* (arrow).

Elastic straps can snap back toward you if they are not properly attached ⇒ ⚠.

If you use elastic straps to secure items in the luggage compartment, be sure to securely attach them to the tie-downs just behind the rear seat backrest first and then to the tie-downs at the loading edge of the luggage compartment.

Remove the hooks from the tie-downs in the reverse order described above, first from the tie-downs at the loading edge and then from the tie-downs behind the rear seat backrest so that if the hooks come loose suddenly, they will move away from you.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable, worn, or damaged tie-down straps (elastic or non-elastic) can snap or come loose during braking or other maneuvers or in a collision. Objects secured with these straps can then come loose and fly through the passenger compartment, causing severe personal injuries or death.

- To help prevent baggage or other items from coming loose and flying around, always use suitable undamaged tie-down straps.
- Securely fasten the tie-down straps to the tie-downs.
- Loose or improperly secured objects in the luggage compartment can slide about suddenly and change the vehicle's handling.
- Secure even small and light objects. Loose objects in the luggage or passenger compartment can fly about during sudden braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident and injure occupants.
- Never attach a child restraint to the tie-downs.

#### ⚠ WARNING

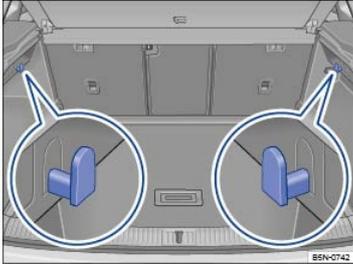
Elastic straps have to be stretched when being attached to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment. Hooks on these straps can cause serious personal injury if not handled properly and attached securely.

- Always protect eyes and face from injury from the hooks when attaching them to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment.
- Always hold the hooks on elastic straps firmly when attaching to the vehicle and do not let them snap back and hit you.
- First attach the hooks on the straps to the tie-downs at the rear seat backrest in the luggage compartment and then to the tie-downs near the loading edge of the luggage compartment. This way, if one of the hooks on the elastic straps snaps back, it will move away from you, decreasing the risk of personal injury.



For suitable straps and luggage stowage systems, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Shopping bag nooks



**Fig. 189 In the luggage compartment: Shopping bag hooks (if equipped).**

Your vehicle has either 1 or 2 shopping bag hooks. The shopping bag hooks can hold light shopping bags.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never use the shopping bag hooks as tie-downs. The hooks could break during sudden braking or in a collision.

### **! NOTE**

The maximum load for each shopping bag hook is 5 lbs. (2.5 kg).

## Luggage compartment pass-through



**Fig. 190 In the second row seat backrest: Opening the luggage compartment pass-through.**

There may be a pass-through for transporting things like skis in the rear seat backrest behind the center armrest.

To help prevent soiling the vehicle interior, cover dirty items before sliding them into the pass-through.

If the center armrest is folded down, no one can sit on the middle seat of the rear bench.

### **Opening the pass-through**

- Press the button ⇒ [Fig. 190①](#) and fold the pass-through cover all the way forward.
- Open the trunk lid.
- Slide long objects from the luggage compartment through the pass-through.
- Secure objects with the safety belt.
- Close the trunk lid.

### **Closing the pass-through**

- Fold the pass-through cover back until it engages securely. The red mark on the luggage compartment side should not be visible.
- Close the trunk lid.



The pass-through can also be opened from the luggage compartment. Press the button ⇒ [Fig. 190①](#) in the direction of the arrow and push the cover forward.

## Roof rack

### **📖 Introduction to the subject**

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Attaching the roof rack base carrier and roof rack](#)

⇒ [Securing a load on the roof rack](#)

The roof rack can be used to transport bulky loads on the roof of the vehicle.

## Special considerations for the roof rack

The roof of your vehicle has been designed to optimize aerodynamics and does not have traditional rain gutters that are used to attach many kinds of roof racks.

Since the rain gutters are molded into the roof to provide efficient aerodynamics, only Volkswagen-approved base carrier mountings and roof racks can be used.

### When to remove the roof rack

- When it is no longer needed.
- Before driving through an automatic car wash.
- When the vehicle would otherwise be too high for minimum clearance to enter, for example, a garage.

### ⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy or bulky loads on the roof rack will change the way the vehicle handles by raising the vehicle's center of gravity and increasing the wind drag.

- Always secure the load properly with suitable and undamaged straps so that the load will not shift.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.
- Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.

### ! NOTE

- Always remove the roof rack before driving through an automatic car wash.
- Your vehicle is higher when the roof rack is installed, especially when it is loaded. Compare the vehicle height with existing clearance heights, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always make sure that the roof rack system and anything being carried on it does not interfere with the roof antenna, the power sunroof, or the trunk lid.
- Make sure that the trunk lid does not touch items on the roof rack when opened.

✿ If a roof rack is installed, fuel consumption increases due to increased air resistance.

## Attaching the roof rack base carrier and roof rack

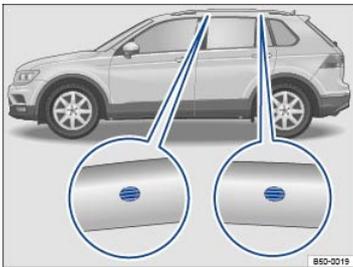


Fig. 191 Attachment points for the base carrier and roof rack.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The base carrier is the basis of a complete roof rack system. For safety reasons, additional attachments are necessary for transporting luggage, bicycles, surfboards, skis, and small boats. Suitable accessories can be purchased from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

No base carrier or roof rack can be installed *unless* the vehicle has roof rails ⇒ Fig. 191.

### Mounting the roof rack

Typical roof racks cannot be attached to the roof rails. Only roof racks which have been approved by Volkswagen may be used.

Always carefully follow the installation instructions from the base carrier or roof rack manufacturer.

The attachment holes are on the inside of the roof rails ⇒ Fig. 191 (magnified view).

Only mount the roof rack base carrier at the holes shown in the illustration.

### ⚠ WARNING

Installing or using a base carrier or roof rack improperly can cause the entire system to fly off the vehicle, causing accidents and injuries.

- Always follow the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer.

- Use the base carrier and roof rack only if they are undamaged and properly installed.
- Secure the roof rack base carrier only at the attachment points shown in the illustration ⇒ *Fig. 191*.
- Always install the base carrier and roof rack properly.
- Make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip and retighten them as needed after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.
- Always properly install special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc.
- Do not modify or repair the base carrier or roof rack.



Follow the instructions provided for installing the roof rack system. Always carry them in the vehicle.

## Securing a load on the roof rack



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

It is not possible to secure a load unless the roof rack system has been properly installed ⇒ *▲*.

### Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is **165 lbs. (75 kg)**. The maximum permissible roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the items being carried on the roof ⇒ *▲*.

Be sure you know the weight of the roof rack and the items you want to transport on the roof. Weigh them if necessary. Never carry a total of more than the maximum permissible roof load.

When using a roof rack with a lower load limit, do not load the rack to the maximum weight mentioned above. In this case, you may only load the roof rack to the weight limit specified in the system's installation instructions.

### Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly ⇒ *▲*.

### Checking the mountings

After the base carrier and roof rack have been installed, check all bolts and fasteners after driving a short time and at regular intervals thereafter.

### WARNING

If the maximum permissible roof load is exceeded, accidents and substantial vehicle damage may occur.

- Never exceed the specified roof load, the maximum Gross Axle Weight Rating, or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Do not exceed the loading capacity of the roof rack, even if the permissible roof load is not fully utilized.
- Always make sure that loads are evenly distributed and that heavier items are, as far as possible, toward the front.

### WARNING

Loose or improperly secured items can fall off the roof rack and cause accidents and injuries.

- To help prevent baggage or other items from coming loose and flying around, always use suitable, undamaged tie-down ropes and ratchet straps.
- Secure the load properly.

### NOTE

When opening the trunk lid, make sure that it will not hit anything secured to the roof rack.

## Trailer towing



### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Technical requirements*

⇒ *Hitching up and connecting a trailer*

⇒ *Loading the trailer*

⇒ *Driving with a trailer*

⇒ *Ball mount*

⇒ *Retrofitting a trailer hitch*

⇒ *Maximum permissible trailer weight*

Obey country-specific requirements about trailer towing and trailer hitches.

Your Volkswagen was mainly designed for carrying passengers. If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember your vehicle will be performing a job for which it was not primarily intended. The additional load will affect durability, handling, fuel economy, and performance, and may require the vehicle to be serviced more often.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it calls for more concentration from the driver. Always follow the operating and driving instructions given, and use common sense.

Under winter conditions, install winter tires on the vehicle **and** the trailer.

### **Tongue weight**

The *maximum* permissible trailer tongue weight exerted on the ball mount must not exceed **220 lbs (100 kg)**.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Riding in a trailer is dangerous and may be illegal.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of the trailer hitch can cause accidents and injuries. An improperly installed, incorrect, or damaged trailer hitch can cause the trailer to separate from the towing vehicle and cause serious personal injuries.

- Only use an undamaged, properly mounted trailer hitch.
- Never repair or modify the trailer hitch.
- To reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and the risk to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked, always remove the ball mount when you are not towing a trailer.
- Never install a weight distributing or load equalizing trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed for these kinds of trailer hitches. The trailer hitch attachment can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Driving with a trailer and carrying heavy or large things can change the way the vehicle handles, increase the distance it needs to stop safely, and cause accidents.
- Always secure the load properly with suitable and undamaged straps so that the load will not shift.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Reduce your speed even more than you otherwise would when going downhill and under unfavorable load, weather, or wind conditions.
- Trailers with a high center of gravity tip more easily than trailers with a low center of gravity.
- Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying.
- Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating.
- Always obey speed limits. In some areas, the speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers. Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h; under exceptional circumstances, 60 mph - 100 km/h) when towing a trailer. This applies even if the local speed limit is higher.



If you are driving a new vehicle or a vehicle with a new or rebuilt engine, do not tow a trailer during the break-in period, about 600 miles (1000 km) ⇒ *Break-in period*.



If you tow a trailer, your vehicle may need maintenance more often because of the extra load it has to move.



When you are not towing, remove the trailer hitch ball. This helps keep the trailer hitch from causing damage to your vehicle and to others if your vehicle is hit from behind.



Some models need a trailer hitch to tow or tow-start other vehicles. You may want to always carry the ball mount in the vehicle after it has been removed. Be sure to stow it securely.

## Technical requirements

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Use only a weight-carrying trailer hitch designed and approved for the gross weight of the trailer you want to tow. The trailer hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be securely bolted to the appropriate place on the vehicle chassis. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct trailer hitch and carefully follow the hitch manufacturer's instructions. Never install a weight-distributing or load-equalizing trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for this kind of trailer hitch ⇒ .

### Do not use a bumper-mounted trailer hitch

Never install a trailer hitch on the bumper or on the bumper attachments. The trailer hitch must not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. Do not make any changes to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all trailer hitch mounting bolts are securely fastened. When you are not towing, remove the trailer hitch. This helps keep the trailer hitch from causing damage if your vehicle is hit from behind.

### Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine and its cooling system work harder. It is important that the engine cooling system is up to the job. Make sure that the cooling system has enough coolant.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer has its own brakes, make sure it meets all applicable regulations. The trailer brake system must never be directly connected to the vehicle's brake system.

### Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer ⇒ [Hitching up and connecting a trailer](#).

### Trailer taillights

Trailer lights must meet all applicable regulations ⇒ [Hitching up and connecting a trailer](#).

Never connect the trailer lights directly to the electrical system of your vehicle.

### Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, you must install extended mirrors. Extended mirrors may also be required by law in some countries/states/provinces. Always adjust the outside mirrors before driving. It's vital that you always have a clear view to the rear of the vehicle.

### Maximum power consumption for the trailer

Do not exceed the power ratings listed in the chart below.

Electrical load	Maximum power
Brake lights total	108 watts
Turn signals per side	54 watts
Side marker lights total	100 watts
Taillights total	54 watts

### WARNING

- An improperly installed or incorrect trailer hitch can cause a trailer to separate from the tow vehicle and cause serious personal injuries.
- If you don't have to tow a trailer any more, remove the entire trailer hitch. Always seal all bolt holes to prevent water and deadly exhaust fumes from getting into the vehicle.

### NOTE

- If the trailer lights are not connected properly, the vehicle's electronics can be damaged.
- If the trailer uses too much electricity, the vehicle's electronics may be damaged.
- Never connect the electrical system for the trailer directly to the electrical connections for the rear lights or to any other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.



If you tow a trailer frequently, Volkswagen recommends having the vehicle serviced between the regular maintenance and inspection intervals because of the extra load it has to pull.

## Hitching up and connecting a trailer

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

### Safety chains

Always make sure that the safety chains are properly attached to the towing vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains so that you can go around corners without stretching the chains. The safety chains must not drag on the ground.

### Trailer taillights

Make sure that the trailer lights work properly and meet legal requirements. Do not exceed the maximum power consumption for the trailer ⇒ [Technical requirements](#).

### The trailer is connected to the anti-theft alarm (if equipped):

- When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are working properly, fault-free and undamaged.
- When the vehicle is locked with the remote control vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger the alarm unnecessarily.

### WARNING

Improper connections to the vehicle electrical system can cause malfunctions that affect the entire vehicle electrical system, which can lead to accidents and serious personal injury.

- Have any work on the electrical system done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never connect the electrical system for the trailer directly to the electrical connections for the rear lights or to any other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.

### NOTE

Never attach a trailer to the vehicle or leave it attached to the vehicle when the trailer is supported by a trailer jack or blocks. Various things (such as a change in trailer or vehicle load or a flat tire) can lower or raise the vehicle. This subjects the trailer hitch and the trailer to strong forces that can damage the vehicle or the trailer.



Any problems with the vehicle's electrical system when attached to a trailer should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



If the engine is switched off and accessories in the trailer are on and use electricity from the vehicle, the vehicle battery will be drained as long as the electrical systems of the vehicle and the trailer are connected.

## Loading the trailer

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

### Maximum permissible trailer weight and tongue weight

Maximum permissible trailer weight is the load that the vehicle can tow ⇒ . The tongue load or tongue weight is the load pressing down on the trailer hitch ball mount.

The maximum permissible trailer weight and tongue weight for your vehicle are listed on ⇒ [Maximum permissible trailer weight](#) in this Manual.

The trailer load and tongue weight on the type identification plate for the trailer hitch are only test values. The vehicle-specific figures are often *lower than* these values. In some countries, but generally not in the United States, the vehicle-specific figures are listed in the official vehicle documents. Specifications in official vehicle documents always take precedence.

To help ensure optimum handling and driving safety, Volkswagen recommends always using the maximum permissible **tongue weight**. If the tongue weight is too low, the vehicle and trailer will not handle as well.

Tongue weight increases the load on the rear axle and, in turn, reduces the remaining load your vehicle can carry ⇒ [Determining the correct load limit](#) .

### Combined towing weight

Combined towing weight is the weight of the loaded towing vehicle plus the weight of the loaded trailer.

In some cases towing a trailer will lead to a reduced payload due to the limits of the combined towing weight.

On vehicles with front wheel drive the combined towing weight must not exceed **5860 lbs (2658 kg)**, and with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) the combined towing weight must not exceed **6040 lbs (2739 kg)**.

This vehicle has not been designed to tow a Class IV trailer and must never be retrofitted to tow a Class IV trailer. Always make sure that your vehicle has been designed to tow the trailer you want to use and that it is legal to tow the trailer where you will be driving.

### Loading the trailer

The weight distribution in the vehicle and trailer must be balanced. Use the maximum permissible tongue weight and make sure that the load in the trailer is evenly distributed and that it is not front-heavy or tail-heavy:

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that heavy objects are directly above the axle or as close as possible to the axle.
- Secure loads properly on the trailer.

### Tire pressure

Always follow the trailer manufacturer's tire pressure recommendations for the trailer tires.

When towing, inflate the towing vehicle's tires to the maximum permissible pressure listed on the tire pressure label ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#) .

### Special considerations for the Start-stop system

When towing a trailer, you must manually deactivate the Start-stop system by pressing the button in the lower center console ⇒ [Start-stop system](#) ⇒ ⚠!

#### ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the gross weight ratings for axle, tongue, vehicle, trailer or combined weight can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never exceed the specified values.
- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating. Never let the combined front and rear weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Trailer loads that are not properly secured can shift when the vehicle is moving or braking and suddenly change the way the vehicle handles, causing accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load the trailer properly.
- Always secure the load properly with suitable, undamaged straps that can be tightened so that the load cannot shift.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Always deactivate the Start-stop system when towing a trailer. Otherwise the brakes could malfunction, causing accidents and severe injuries.

## Driving with a trailer

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Headlight settings

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the low beams to blind other road users. If your vehicle does not have headlight range adjustment, have the headlights adjusted by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Vehicles with Xenon headlights self-adjust to vehicle load and do not need manual adjustment.

### Special towing considerations

- If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This helps to prevent sudden brake shock and helps prevent trailer wheels from locking up.
- Due to the combined towing weight including the higher gross vehicle weight, the stopping distance is longer.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, shift into a lower gear so that the engine helps to brake the vehicle. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and might fail.
- The vehicle's center of gravity and, in turn, the vehicle's handling, will change because of the trailer load and the increased combined towing weight of the vehicle and trailer.

- Weight distribution is especially bad if the towing vehicle is empty and the trailer is loaded. If you absolutely must drive with this combination, drive with extra care and at a reduced speed.

### Starting off with a trailer on hills

Depending on how steep the hill is and the combined towing weight, a parked vehicle with trailer can roll backwards when you first start moving.

When starting off with a trailer on a hill:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the **(P)** switch once to deactivate the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
- Pull and hold the **(P)** switch to use the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle and trailer from rolling backward ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
- Shift into Drive **(D)** ⇒ *Automatic transmission*.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Drive ahead slowly at first.
- Do not release the **(P)** switch until the engine starts to move the vehicle forward. You can also depress and hold the brake pedal for added braking and then let up on the brake pedal when you feel that the vehicle wants to move forward.
- Drive ahead slowly.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Driving with a trailer and carrying heavy or bulky items changes the way the vehicle handles and increases the distance it needs to stop safely.
- Always watch what is happening up ahead and around you. Brake earlier than you would if you were not towing a trailer.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Reduce your speed even more than you otherwise would when going downhill and under unfavorable load, weather, or wind conditions.
- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently. Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of swaying.
- Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating.
- Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.

### Ball mount

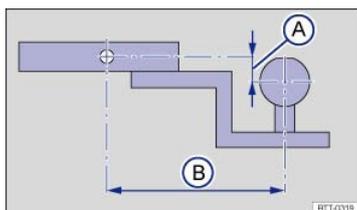


Fig. 192 Dimensions of the ball mount support.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If you must tow a trailer, you must have the necessary electrical wiring and socket together with a suitable trailer hitch installed. Because towing a trailer places a great deal of stress on the vehicle, the attachment of a trailer to the vehicle and the dimensions of the receiver and ball mount are very important so that the extra forces the vehicle has to withstand can be properly handled.

The receiver used requires both a ball mount and a ball that meet special requirements regarding geometry and size. This applies to both the drop height of the ball ⇒ Fig. 192A, and the pin-to-ball distance ⇒ Fig. 192B.

These dimensions are important because they help determine the way that the forces that arise during towing are applied to the receiver and its attachments to the vehicle. If you buy a ball mount and ball, make sure that they meet the following specifications.

#### Ball mount dimensions

- The drop height **(A)** from the top of the ball platform to the top of the shank must be at least 1 inch (25.4 mm) and at most  $2 \frac{7}{8}$  inches (73 mm).
- The pin-to-ball distance **(B)** from the center of the ball to the center of the hole for the securing pin on the ball mount must be no more than 7 inches (178 mm).
- The ball diameter must be no more than 2 inches (51 mm).

A ball mount and ball combination that does not meet these specifications can damage your vehicle and may even fail in use ⇒ ⚠.

Never install a weight distributing or load equalizing trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for this kind of trailer hitch ⇒ ⚠.

### ⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or unsuitable trailer hitch can cause the trailer to separate from the towing vehicle and result in a major accident with serious personal injuries.

- Have any trailer hitch retrofit or other work on a trailer hitch done by a qualified workshop.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The ball mount sticks out behind the rear bumper and can cause injury to pedestrians and cyclists.

- To reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and the risk to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked, always remove the ball carrier when you are not towing a trailer.

### ⓘ NOTE

- Never use a ball larger than 2 inches (50.8 mm) on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed to tow heavier trailers with a receiver larger than the specified ball. The increased loads can damage the attachment points for the trailer hitch.
- Never use an adapter to increase the size of the trailer hitch receiver from 2 inches (50.8 mm) to more to tow a trailer that is heavier than the maximum permissible trailer weight that your vehicle can tow.
- You can use an adapter if required for the proper installation of a bicycle rack or other similar carrier as long as the maximum weight limits are observed. When using bicycle racks or similar carriers, make sure that the rear lights are not blocked.
- Only use trailer hitches that are approved by the hitch manufacturer for your vehicle and model.

## Retrofitting a trailer hitch

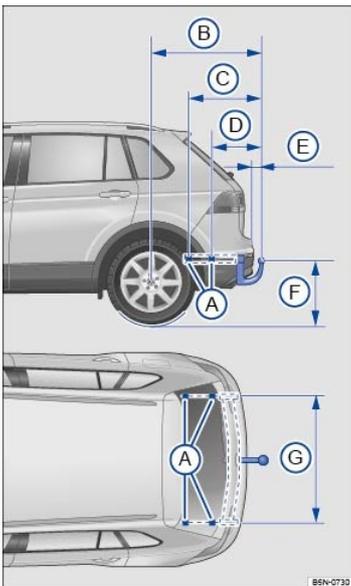


Fig. 193 Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a trailer hitch.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Volkswagen recommends having the trailer hitch retrofit performed by a qualified workshop because cooling system modifications or the installation of heat shields may be necessary. Volkswagen recommends that you see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before having a trailer hitch installed on your vehicle.

When retrofitting a trailer hitch, the specified distance dimensions must be strictly adhered to. Under no circumstances may the distance from the center of the hitch ball to the surface of the road ⇒ Fig. 193 be less than the specified minimum. This minimum height must be present even when the vehicle is fully loaded and subject to the maximum tongue weight.

**Distance dimensions ⇒ Fig. 193 :**

- Ⓐ Attachment points
- Ⓑ  $38^{15}/_{16}$  inches (989 mm)
- Ⓒ  $23^7/_{16}$  inches (595 mm)
- Ⓓ  $13^{11}/_{16}$  inches (348 mm)

- E at least 2<sup>9</sup> /<sub>16</sub> inches (min. 65 mm)
- F from 13<sup>25</sup> /<sub>32</sub> inches to 16<sup>17</sup> /<sub>32</sub> inches (from 350 to 420 mm)
- G from 41<sup>25</sup> /<sub>32</sub> inches to 41<sup>31</sup> /<sub>32</sub> inches (from 1061 mm to 1066 mm)

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper or incorrect connections to the vehicle electrical system can cause malfunctions that affect the entire vehicle electrical system and cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never connect the electrical system of the trailer directly to the electrical connections of the rear lights or other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.
- Have any trailer hitch retrofit or other work on a trailer hitch done by a qualified workshop.

### ⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or unsuitable trailer hitch can cause the trailer to separate from the towing vehicle and result in a major accident with serious personal injuries.



Only use trailer hitches that are approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model.

## Maximum permissible trailer weight

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

Maximum permissible trailer weights <sup>a)b)</sup>	lbs.	kg
Trailer with brake	1500	680
Trailer without brake	1500	680
Tongue weight	220	100

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating must not be exceeded, even with a trailer. These ratings are listed on the safety compliance label on the driver door jamb → [Important vehicle labels](#).

For vehicles with front wheel drive, the combined towing weight must not exceed **5860 lbs (2658 kg)**, and with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) the combined towing weight must not exceed **6040 lbs (2739 kg)**.

When a trailer is towed, the weight of the ball mount and the tongue weight of the trailer are added to the vehicle weight → [Determining the correct load limit](#).

The trailer weight ratings given above are valid only up to altitudes of 3000 ft (1000 m) above sea level. The maximum permissible combined towing weight must be reduced by about 10% for every 3000 ft (1000 m), or portion thereof, of additional altitude.

### ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the gross trailer weight rating and tongue weight can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Never let the combined front and rear weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR).

### ! NOTE

Exceeding the gross weight ratings can cause extensive vehicle damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

<sup>a)</sup> For vehicles with front wheel drive: The combined towing weight must not exceed 5860 lbs (2658 kg)

<sup>b)</sup> For vehicles with 4-wheel drive: The combined towing weight must not exceed 6040 lbs (2739 kg).

## Fuel and emission control system

### Tips on handling fuel

The fuel filler flap is located on the rear passenger side of the vehicle.

## WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel is dangerous and can cause fire, explosion, and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly flammable and explosive; it can cause severe burns and other severe injuries.
- During refueling, the engine and the ignition must be switched off for safety reasons.
- Never use a mobile telephone, CB radio, or other radio equipment while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. This helps avoid the buildup of static electricity, which can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.
- Always make sure that the fuel filler cap is screwed on all the way. This helps keep fuel from spilling out or evaporating.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck can cause fuel to overflow and to spray out. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire and serious personal injury.
- Never smoke or have an open flame (or sparks, cigarettes, or other smoldering objects) anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.
- Follow all safety instructions and procedures that apply at the service station where you refuel.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment.

## WARNING

Even if empty, portable fuel containers can leak and cause a fire and serious personal injuries, especially in a crash.

- For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle.
- If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:
  - Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment or on top of the trunk lid). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors, causing a fire.
  - Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling. Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
  - Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
  - If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and causing a fire.
  - Always observe local and state or provincial laws about the use, storage, and transportation of portable fuel containers.
  - Make certain that the portable fuel container meets industry standards, such as ANSI/ASTM F852-86.

## NOTE

- Remove fuel spills from the vehicle immediately to help prevent damage to the paint, tires, and wheel housings.
- Refueling with diesel fuel when your vehicle has a gasoline engine can cause very serious and expensive engine and fuel system damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of incorrect fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. These fuels contain substances that can severely damage the fuel system and the engine if the engine is started.

 Flowers can pollute the environment. Spilled fuel must be collected and disposed of properly, following all applicable environmental regulations.

## Refueling

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Refueling*

⇒ *Manual release for the fuel filler flap*

The fuel filler flap is on the rear passenger side of the vehicle.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle ⇒ *Fuel types* is listed on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

To check your vehicle's fuel capacity, see ⇒ [Fuel capacities](#).

## Refueling



**Fig. 194** Rear passenger side of vehicle: Fuel cap placed on the open fuel filler flap.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**Before** refueling, always switch off the engine, the ignition, and all mobile phones, and leave them switched off until refueling is complete.

### Opening the fuel filler cap

The fuel filler flap is located at the rear passenger side of the vehicle.

- Unlock the vehicle from the outside with the vehicle key or press the central locking button in the driver door to unlock the vehicle from the inside ⇒ [Power locking system](#).
- Press on the back part of the fuel filler flap and fold open.
- Unscrew the fuel cap counterclockwise and remove. Use the slot on the fuel filler flap hinge ⇒ [Fig. 194](#) to hold the cap while refueling.

### Refueling

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle ⇒ [Fuel types](#) is listed on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ [Fig. 194](#) (arrow). This sticker may also be located on the hinge of the fuel filler flap.

- The fuel tank is *full* when the automatic filler nozzle pump switches off the first time ⇒ .
- Do not try to add fuel after the pump stops! Topping off the tank in this way may fill the expansion space that the tank needs and cause fuel to overflow, for example, if it gets warmer outside.

### Closing the fuel filler cap

- Screw the fuel cap clockwise onto the fuel filler neck until you hear it click into place.
- Close the fuel filler flap until you hear it latch shut. The fuel filler flap must be flush with the vehicle body.

#### WARNING

Spilled fuel can cause fires, explosions, burns, and other severe injuries.

- Always stop refueling once the pump nozzle switches off so that the tank does not overflow.

#### NOTE

Remove fuel spills from all vehicle surfaces immediately to help prevent damage to the paint, tires, and wheel housings.

Fuel spills may pollute the environment.

## Manual release for the fuel filler flap

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There is no emergency release for the fuel filler flap. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## Fuel types

**Introduction to the subject**

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Gasoline](#)

⇒ [Gasoline additives](#)

The correct fuel grade for your engine is shown on a sticker located on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ [Refueling](#).

Bad or poor quality fuel reduces operating performance, efficiency and service life of the engine. If you notice any symptoms like rough engine idle or performance or bucking, immediately reduce the vehicle speed, accelerate slowly, and keep the engine speed in the middle of the rpm range. Avoid high rpm and rapid acceleration. If these symptoms should appear right after refueling, switch off the engine. In both cases contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the engine checked.

## WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion, and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly explosive and flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- Heed applicable safety warnings and obey local fuel handling regulations.
- Always make sure the fuel cap is screwed on all the way. This keeps fuel from spilling out and from evaporating.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the vehicle's filler neck could cause fuel overflow and fuel spray. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire or serious injury.
- For safety reasons, the engine must be turned off when refueling.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.

## Gasoline

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine-damaging "knock" caused by pre-ignition. Using gasoline that does not meet minimum octane requirements can affect engine performance, while the use of poor quality gasoline or gasoline with octane levels below 87 can also cause engine damage. If Regular gasoline is recommended for your engine, you may be able to enhance engine performance by using Premium gasoline.

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine is listed on a label inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified according to AKI (CLC) or ROZ (ROZ) standards.

Regardless of whether unleaded Regular or Premium grade gasoline is specified for your vehicle, Volkswagen recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI (91 RON) for Regular gasoline, and 91 AKI (95 RON) for Premium gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website, <http://www.toptiergas.com>.

The gasoline grades most commonly sold in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings, which can usually be found on the filler pump:

- Regular grade: 87 to 90 AKI
- Premium grade: 91 to 96 AKI

### Unleaded gasoline

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA and Canada. Volkswagen recommends that you do not take your vehicle to places where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

### Gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether), commonly referred to as oxygenated fuels, if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

#### Blends of gasoline and methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol):

- Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

#### Blends of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol):

- Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 15% ethanol.

#### Blends of gasoline and MTBE:

- Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 15% MTBE.

### Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many fuels are blended especially for winter or summer conditions. When seasons change, Volkswagen suggests that you buy fuel at busy stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made earlier.

### WARNING

Starting fluids can explode and cause a run-away vehicle condition.

- Never use starting assist fluids.

### NOTE

- Never use fuel with an octane rating lower than 87 AKI/91 RON. Using lower octane fuel may cause expensive engine damage.
- Never use leaded gasoline! Leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter.
- Methanol-blended fuels that do not meet the criteria listed above may cause corrosion and may damage plastic and rubber parts in the fuel system.
- Never use fuels that contain lead or other metals (check listing on the fuel pump). Even lead replacement gasoline (LRP fuels) contain metallic additives in high concentrations. They can damage the engine.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the criteria above, or with contents that cannot be identified.
- If you cannot tell whether a particular fuel blend meets the criteria above, ask your service station or its fuel supplier. If you notice a loss of fuel economy or drivability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.
- Using fuels that are different from those specified above can damage your vehicle's engine and fuel system and cause performance problems.
- Damage to the engine and fuel system and performance problems caused by using fuels that are different from those specified above or by using starting assist fluids are not the responsibility of Volkswagen and are not covered under the Emission warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

 Even a single tank full of leaded fuel can do major damage to the catalytic converter and degrade its effectiveness in reducing polluting emissions.



If you notice a loss of fuel economy or drivability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. Never use fuel line antifreeze offered for gasoline engines.

## Gasoline additives

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Additives are used to improve the quality of the gasoline.

Fuel quality impacts the operating performance, efficiency and service life of the engine. Therefore, use high quality gasoline that is already blended by the fuel supplier with suitable gasoline additives that do not contain metal. The additives provide corrosion protection, clean the fuel system, and help prevent deposits on the engine.

Volkswagen recommends TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official Web site <http://www.toptiergas.com>.

If quality gasoline with additives that do not contain metal is not available or engine malfunctions occur, you should add the required additives while refueling ⇒ 

Not all gasoline additives are effective. Using the wrong additives can cause significant and expensive damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Never use additives that contain metal. Please note that metal can be included in some aftermarket gasoline additives that are available to be added to gasoline during or after refueling to help improve knock resistance or increase the octane rating.

Volkswagen recommends using only additives approved by Volkswagen. Appropriate additives as well as instructions on how to use them are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Do not add any other gasoline additives.

### NOTE

You can damage the engine by using incorrect additives.

- Using incorrect gasoline additives can cause extensive engine damage as well as damage to the catalytic converter.
- If you must fuel your vehicle with gasoline whose octane rating is too low, only drive with the engine speed in the middle of the rpm range and with low engine load. Avoid high rpm and heavy engine load. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. Refuel your vehicle with gasoline with the required octane rating as soon as possible.
- Do not use fuel that is labeled at the pump as containing metal. Lead replacement fuel contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Expensive engine and catalytic converter damage could result.
- Fueling your vehicle just one time with leaded fuel or fuel that contains other metallic additives can affect the performance of the catalytic converter and cause extensive damage to it.

## Engine control and emission control system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator lights*

⇒ *Catalytic converter*

#### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter get very hot. This can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- Never park where parts of the hot exhaust system and catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, or heat shields.

#### WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm.

### Indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause and response
	<p>Engine control malfunction (Electronic Power Control).</p> <p>Have engine checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.</p> <p>Engine speed (rpm) automatically limited to help prevent the engine from overheating (if equipped). The engine speed is shown in the instrument cluster.</p> <p>Once the engine is no longer at a critical temperature and you have briefly taken your foot off the accelerator, the engine speed limit is increased.</p> <p>If the engine speed is limited due to a malfunction in the engine management system, the <b>EPC</b> indicator light also lights up. Have the engine checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the engine speed displayed, for example, when downshifting.</p> <p>Engine control/monitoring system malfunction (engine Malfunction Indicator Light - MIL).</p>
	<p>Ease off the accelerator. Carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have engine checked.</p>
Flashes	Possible cause and response
	<p>Misfire, which can damage the catalytic converter.</p> <p>Ease off the accelerator. Carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have the engine checked.</p>

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



As long as the indicator lights  or **EPC** are on, expect engine malfunctions, increased fuel consumption, and loss of engine efficiency.

## Catalytic converter

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

The catalytic converter provides exhaust gas after-treatment to help reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas. To help ensure long service life of the exhaust system on a gasoline engine catalytic converter:

- Only use unleaded fuel ⇒ [Fuel types](#).
- Never completely empty the fuel tank.
- Do not exceed the correct oil level ⇒ [Engine oil](#).
- Do not tow the vehicle to start it, but use a jump-start instead ⇒ [Jump-starting](#).

If you experience misfires, loss of power or the engine is not running smoothly while driving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise, gasoline could reach the exhaust system and get into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter could also be damaged by overheating!

## Vehicle care

### Tips on vehicle care

Regular and expert care helps to **preserve the value** of your vehicle. Such expert care may also be one of the requirements of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if corrosion repair or repainting is necessary.

The longer insect splatter, bird droppings, tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot, road salt, and other aggressive materials stay on your vehicle, the more damage they do to the paint finish. High temperatures (including strong sunlight) increase the corrosive effects. The vehicle **underbody** should also be washed regularly and thoroughly.

Vehicle care products are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of vehicle components can impact the safety features of the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always clean and maintain vehicle components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use approved or recommended cleaners.
- Never use vehicle care products containing solvents. Solvents can damage the airbag housing.
- Protect arms and hands from sharp vehicle parts, for example, while cleaning the underside of the vehicle.

## WARNING

Vehicle care products can be dangerous. Improper use can cause accidents, burns, poisoning, or other serious personal injuries.

- Always store vehicle care products only in original containers that are securely closed.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always use such products outdoors or in well-ventilated areas, because harmful vapors may be released when these products are used.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable.

## CAUTION

Sharp edges under the vehicle can cut exposed skin.

- Always protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings, etc.

## NOTE

Vehicle care products containing solvents can cause irreparable damage to plastics and other vehicle materials.

✿ Wash the vehicle only at specifically designated wash locations to help prevent water contaminated with oil, grease and fuel from entering the storm drain sewer system. In some areas it is against the law to wash motor vehicles anywhere than other than at specified designated car washing locations.

✿ When buying vehicle care products, try to choose those that are not harmful to the environment.

✿ Never throw out vehicle care products with ordinary household waste. Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package.

## Washing the vehicle

### Car wash

**Pay close attention to the information provided by the car wash operator.** Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions to help prevent damage, such as closing the windows, folding back the outside mirrors, etc. If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle, such as a spoiler, a roof rack, or an antenna, always ask the car wash operator if this poses a problem ⇒ ⓘ.

The paint finish is tough enough that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the type of car wash. Volkswagen recommends using brushless car wash facilities.

To remove wax residue from the windows and avoid jerky windshield wiper movement, heed the following tips ⇒ [Cleaning windows and outside mirrors](#).

### Washing with a power washer

Always follow the instructions for the power washer. This especially applies to the **pressure** and **spraying distance** ⇒ ⚠.

Make sure there is enough distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulating material as well as any sensors that can be located on the front and rear of the vehicle, for example, the Park Distance Control system sensors (if equipped) ⇒ ⓘ.

Never use **concentrated jet nozzles** or so-called **dirt blasters** ⇒ ⚠.

Never use a power washer to clean the engine compartment ⇒ [Cleaning the engine compartment](#).

### Washing by hand

When washing by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and then rinse off as much dirt as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing mitt** or **brush** using only light pressure. Start on the roof and work down. Use special **shampoo** only on hard-to-remove dirt or grime.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Clean the wheels and under the door sills last. Use a different sponge or wash mitt.

### Waxing

A good coat of wax helps to protect the vehicle paint. When water no longer forms small drops and **runs off** when the paint is *clean*, apply a new coat of good **ha wax** to protect the vehicle again.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly at the car wash, Volkswagen recommends applying a coat of hard wax at least twice a year to protect the paint.

### Polishing

Polish your vehicle if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

### ⚠ WARNING

After the vehicle has been washed, the wet brakes or, in winter, brake discs or pads coated with ice, react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious, invisible permanent damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control. This can cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Keep sufficient distance between water jet and tires. Never wash tires with a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream regardless of the distance to the tire and even for a very short time.
- Never use dirt blasters to clean tires. Even spraying from a relatively long distance for a very short time can do visible or invisible damage to tires.

### ⓘ NOTE

- The water temperature must not be more than +140 °F (+60 °C).
- To help prevent damage to the paint, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Do not use insect sponges, abrasive kitchen sponges or similar things to clean the vehicle. These can damage the paint finish.
- Never clean headlights with a dry cloth or sponge. Always use a wet cloth or sponge. For best results use soapy water.
- When washing or rinsing the vehicle in cold weather, do not let water get into the lock cylinders or point the hose at gaps around the doors, hood, or trunk lid. The water could freeze on the locks and seals and make it difficult to open the vehicle!
- When outside temperatures are low, wipe the rubber seals and their contact surfaces dry to help prevent freezing.
- In order for any sensors located on the outside of the vehicle to work correctly, they must be kept clean and clear of snow and ice.
- When using a power washer or steam cleaner, only spray the sensors directly for a short period of time and always keep the nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensor.
- Do not clean icy or snow-covered windows with a power washer.

#### ! NOTE

To help prevent vehicle damage in a **car wash**:

- Compare the vehicle track width with the dimensions of the guide rails in the car wash to help prevent damage to wheel rims and tires!
- Switch off the rain sensor before driving the vehicle through a car wash → *Rain sensor*.
- Make sure there is enough clearance for the height and width of the vehicle.
- To help prevent paint damage to the engine hood, place wiper blades against the windshield after they have dried. Do not let them snap back into place.
- Fold the outside mirrors toward the vehicle body. For vehicles equipped with electrically folding outside mirrors, do not fold electrically folding mirrors manually!
- Lock the trunk lid to help prevent unintentional opening in the car wash.

#### ! NOTE

- To help prevent damage, do not use hard wax or polish on matte-finished parts, plastic parts, headlights or rear lights.
- Do not wax or polish your vehicle if it is dirty, or in a sandy or dusty place.

## Exterior care and cleaning

### Cleaning windows and outside mirrors

#### Cleaning windows and outside mirrors

Spray windows and outside mirrors with a commercially available alcohol-based window cleaner.

Dry windows and mirrors with a clean chamois or a lint-free cloth. Do not use a chamois that has been used to wipe painted surfaces because it will have absorbed an oily residue that will smear the glass surfaces.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to remove rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits → ⓘ.

#### Removing wax residue

Automatic car washes and vehicle care products can leave a **wax residue** on all glass surfaces. These wax residues can only be removed with special cleaners or cleaning cloths. Wax residue left on the windshield can cause the windshield wipers to grab and squeak instead of gliding smoothly. We recommend that after every car wash you remove any wax residue left on the windshield with a window cleaning cloth/chamois - G 052 522 A1 - or equivalent.

Windshield wiper squeak and grab can be reduced by filling the windshield washer fluid tank with a wiper fluid containing wax-removing agents. Make sure to maintain the proper mixing ratio when refilling the washer fluid tank. Grease-removing cleaning agents cannot remove wax residue → ⓘ.

Windshield cleaners, special cleaners, and cleaning cloths are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### Removing snow

Remove snow from all windows and outside mirrors with an appropriate brush.

#### Removing ice

The best way to remove ice is with a deicer spray. When using an ice scraper always scrape in one direction, **never** back and forth. Dirt can scratch the glass when moving the scraper backward.

#### ! WARNING

Dirty or fogged up windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Don't drive until you have clear visibility through all windows.
- Remove ice, snow and condensation from all inside and outside window surfaces.

#### ! NOTE

- Never mix recommended cleaning agents with other cleaning agents in the windshield washer reservoir. If you do, this could cause sediments or other by-products that can clog the windshield washer nozzles.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating elements for the rear defroster are on the inside of the rear window. Do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear window and never clean the inside of the windows with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals that could damage the heating elements.
- Antennas installed on the insides of windows can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents, materials, or chemicals. Do not place any stickers on the windshield-integrated antenna and never clean the antenna with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals.

## Caring for and cleaning chrome and aluminum parts

- Clean the surface using a clean, soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- If the surface is especially dirty, use a special **solvent-free** cleaning material.
- Then polish chrome and aluminum parts with a soft, dry cloth.

#### ! NOTE

To help prevent damage to chrome and aluminum parts:

- Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.
- Do not clean or polish in sandy or dusty places.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners or abrasive sponges.
- Do not polish dirty surfaces.
- Do not use cleaning materials that contain solvents.
- Do not use hard wax.

#### ! NOTE

Chrome wheel covers and hubcaps can have an extra coating. Do not treat them with chrome care or polishing products. Use regular paint care and polishing products.

## Cleaning wheel rims

### Cleaning steel wheels

Stubborn brake dust can be removed with an industrial cleaner. Clean steel wheels regularly with a separate sponge.

Repair any paint damage on steel wheels before rust begins to form.

### Cleaning alloy wheels

**Every 2 weeks:** Wash road salt and brake dust off alloy wheels, and clean the wheels with an acid-free detergent. **Every 3 months:** Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels.

If road salt and brake dust are not removed regularly, they can corrode the metal.

Use an acid-free detergent specifically designed for light alloy wheels. Do not use car polish or other abrasive products.

If the protective coating is damaged, for example by stone impact, repair the damaged area right away.

## Caring for rubber door and window seals

The rubber seals around the doors and windows will stay soft and flexible, seal better and last longer if the seals are treated regularly with a suitable rubber care product.

Before applying the treatment, use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.



**Do not** apply any rubber care products to the rubber seals on the body in the areas around the windows in the driver and front passenger doors. The product could run down onto the windows and smudge them.

## Deicing door lock cylinders

Volkswagen recommends using only genuine Volkswagen deicer spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to deice door lock cylinders.

### NOTE

Lock deicers that contain grease solvents can cause the lock cylinder to rust.

## Cleaning the power sunroof and the sunshade

Dirt and debris can impair the function of the power sunroof.

Remove leaves and other objects from the sunroof guide rails regularly either by hand or using a vacuum cleaner.

The power sunroof only works when the ignition is on. You can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes after you switch off the ignition, as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

### NOTE

Do not attempt to clean the drain tubes for the power sunroof. This could result in vehicle damage caused by punctured or damaged drain tubes.

## Undercoating

The vehicle underbody is coated to help protect it from corrosion and damage. The undercoating could be damaged during normal use. We therefore recommend that you have the protective coatings on the underbody and suspension inspected regularly, and repaired if necessary.

### WARNING

Undercoating and rustproofing products can catch fire on the hot exhaust system or any other hot engine component.

- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, the exhaust pipes, the catalytic converter, the heat shields, or any other hot vehicle component.

## Cleaning the engine compartment

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a dangerous area ⇒ *Cleaning the engine compartment*.

If necessary, the engine compartment should be cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Incorrect cleaning procedures could remove corrosion protection and damage electrical components, among other things. In addition, water could enter directly into the vehicle interior through the plenum chamber ⇒ ⓘ.

Never use a power washer to clean the engine compartment ⇒ ⚠.

If the engine compartment is extremely dirty, have it cleaned professionally by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Plenum chamber

The plenum chamber is located in the engine compartment between windshield and engine, under a perforated cover. Outside air is taken into the vehicle interior from the plenum chamber via the climate control system.

Regularly remove leaves and other loose objects from the plenum chamber cover by hand or with a vacuum cleaner.

Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

Injuries, scalding, electric shock, accidents, and fire hazards can occur while working on the engine or in the engine compartment!

- Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to familiarize yourself with the necessary procedures and generally accepted safety precautions ⇒ *Cleaning the engine compartment*.
- Volkswagen recommends having the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### NOTE

Spraying or pouring water (for example, with a power washer) into the plenum chamber can cause severe damage to the vehicle.

✿ Wash the engine compartment only in special wash bays so that the oily dirt and fuel residue that are washed off the vehicle will not enter the sewage system. In some areas it is illegal to wash the engine compartment anywhere other than at such specified locations.

## Interior care and cleaning

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Caring for upholstery*

⇒ *Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric*

⇒ *Care and cleaning of leather upholstery*

⇒ *Cleaning leatherette*

⇒ *Cleaning storage compartments and cup holders*

⇒ *Care and cleaning of plastic components, wood trim, and instrument panel*

⇒ *Cleaning the safety belts*

Modern clothing fabrics such as dark denim may not be completely colorfast. Even with normal use, dye from these and other fabrics can rub off on seat upholstery and leave visible discolorations (especially on light-colored seat upholstery). This is caused by a lack of colorfastness in the clothing fabric, not by any fault in the seat upholstery fabric. To help prevent damage to the seat upholstery, always make sure your clothing is colorfast. Volkswagen recommends having a qualified specialist remove any discolorations from the seat upholstery.

The longer stains, dirt and other deposits remain on the surfaces of vehicle components and upholstery, the more difficult it may be to clean them. If stains, dirt and deposits are left untreated for a long time, they may become impossible to remove.

#### NOTE

- Vehicle care products containing solvents can cause irreparable damage to plastics and other vehicle materials.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits that contain aggressive substances or solvents can corrode vehicle materials and cause permanent damage, even after brief contact with the surface.
- Remove stains, dirt, and other deposits as quickly as possible and do not allow them to dry.
- To help prevent damage, have stubborn stains removed by a professional who has the necessary expertise and experience.

## Caring for upholstery

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Checklist

Please note the following when it comes to the care and preservation of the upholstery ⇒  :

- ✓ Open Velcro® fasteners can damage upholstery, fabric, and trim. Before you get into the vehicle, close all Velcro® fasteners that could come into contact with upholstery fabrics and cloth trim.
- ✓ Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim. To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim.
- ✓ Dust and dirt particles in pores, folds, and seams can have a scouring effect on material and damage the surface. Remove dust and dirt regularly to help prevent permanent surface damage.
- ✓ Check clothing for color-fastness to help prevent upholstery discoloration, especially to light-colored upholstery.

#### NOTE

Disregarding the upholstery-related checklist may lead to damage or discoloration of upholstery and fabric trim.

- Please note and follow the points listed in the checklist.



Volkswagen recommends having any discoloration removed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Cleaning upholstery on heated seats and power seats or seats with airbag components

Airbag components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, the front passenger seat, and in the outer rear seats. Damaging, cleaning and

handling incorrectly, or wetting or soaking these seat surfaces and backrests can damage the vehicle electrical system and prevent the airbag system from working properly ⇒ ⚠.

Electrical components and connectors that could be damaged by incorrect cleaning or handling are installed in power seats and heated seats ⇒ ⓘ. This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrical system.

For this reason, read and follow these cleaning instructions:

- Do not use power washers, steam cleaners, or cooling spray.
- Do not use detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions.
- Do not wet the surface completely.
- Only use cleaning products approved by Volkswagen.
- If you have questions or concerns, consult a professional cleaner.
- Before using any cleaning agent, familiarize yourself with instructions and warnings on the packaging.
- Vacuum upholstery, fabric trim, microfiber fabric, and carpeting regularly with a suitable brush attachment.
- A soft sponge or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth may be used for general cleaning ⇒ ⓘ.
- Clean microfiber fabric surfaces with a damp cotton or wool cloth or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth ⇒ ⓘ.

Upholstery and fabric trim with light generalized soiling can be cleaned with a commercially available dry-foam cleaner.

If the upholstery and fabric trim pieces are heavily soiled, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before you begin cleaning to learn about suitable cleaning options. If necessary, have the cleaning done by a professional.

#### Cleaning upholstery on non-heated seats, manual seats, or seats without airbag components

- Before using any cleaning agent, familiarize yourself with instructions and warnings on the packaging.
- Vacuum upholstery, fabric trim, microfiber fabric, and carpeting regularly with a suitable brush attachment.
- Do not use power washers, steam cleaners, or cooling spray.
- A soft sponge or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth may be used for general cleaning ⇒ ⓘ.
- Clean microfiber fabric surfaces with a damp cotton or wool cloth or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth ⇒ ⓘ.

Upholstery and fabric trim with light generalized soiling can be cleaned with a commercially available dry-foam cleaner.

If the upholstery and fabric trim pieces are heavily soiled, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before you begin cleaning to learn about suitable cleaning options. If necessary, have the cleaning done by a professional.

#### Treating stains

When treating stains, it may be necessary to clean the entire surface and not just the stain itself. This is especially true if the entire surface has become dirty from normal use. Otherwise, the area that is treated may become lighter than the untreated area. If you have questions or concerns, consult a professional cleaner.

Type of stain	Recommended cleaning for fabric and upholstery
<i>Water-based stains</i> , such as coffee or fruit juice.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Moisten a sponge with water and rub the stain gently with a circular motion.</li> <li>– Wipe dry with an absorbent cloth.</li> </ul>
<i>Persistent stains</i> , such as chocolate or make-up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Use only Volkswagen-approved cleaning products.</li> <li>– If necessary, have the fabric or upholstery professionally cleaned.</li> </ul>
<i>Grease-based stains</i> , such as oil, lipstick, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Use only Volkswagen-approved cleaning products.</li> <li>– If necessary, have the fabric or upholstery professionally cleaned.</li> </ul>

#### ⚠ WARNING

If there is a malfunction in the airbag system, the airbag may not deploy correctly or at all, or it may deploy unexpectedly. This could cause fatal injuries.

- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## NOTE

If the upholstery on power seats, heated seats, or seats with airbag components is wet, electrical components and the vehicle electrical system could be damaged.

- If the seating surface becomes soaked, have it dried and the system components checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not use steam cleaners because the steam could cause the dirt to penetrate deeper into the fabric and make it impossible to remove.
- Power washers and cooling sprays can damage the upholstery.

## NOTE

- Clean only the carpet and floor mats with brushes. Other textile surfaces can be damaged by brushes.
- If detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions are applied with a damp cloth or sponge, the surfactants in the detergent may cause visible lines to form at the edges of the area where the detergent was applied. These lines are generally difficult or impossible to remove.

## NOTE

- Do not soak microfiber fabric.
- Do not treat microfiber fabric with leather care products, solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.
- Do not use brushes for damp cleaning, because they can damage upholstery surfaces.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, because dirt will penetrate deeper into the fabric.

## Care and cleaning of leather upholstery

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If you have questions regarding the care and cleaning of the leather upholstery in the vehicle, please contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Care and treatment

Natural leather requires special attention and care. Napa leather has a smooth surface. The intensity of the color application determines the leather's appearance and texture. If you can see the leather grain and other natural characteristics, this is an untreated napa leather that will provide very comfortable seating. Delicate veins, closed scars, insect bites, folds, and a slightly clouded color remain visible and represent authentic characteristics of the natural material. Untreated napa leather has no protective coating. It is therefore more susceptible to damage. You should keep this in mind if the leather is going to be exposed to severe wear from children, animals, or other factors. By contrast, leather that has a protective coating is more robust. This has a positive effect on the leather's durability in daily use. The typical natural characteristics are hardly visible or no longer visible at all, but that has no impact on the quality of the leather itself. The typical characteristics of untreated leather are much more distinctive than those of a surface-treated leather.

- After each cleaning, apply cream that waterproofs the leather and protects it against the sun. Such creams also nourish the leather, let it breathe, keep it flexible and moisturized. At the same time it protects the surface.
- Clean leather every 2 to 3 months and remove any new stains.
- Treat leather with a suitable leather-care product twice a year ⇒ .
- Apply cleaning and conditioning materials sparingly and always with a dry, lint-free cotton or wool cloth. Do not apply cleaning and conditioning materials directly to the leather.
- Remove fresh stains such as ballpoint pen, lipstick, ink, shoe polish, etc. as soon as possible.
- Preserve the leather's color. If necessary, refresh fading spots with a specially-colored leather cream.
- Wipe the leather with a soft cloth.

### Cleaning

Volkswagen recommends using a slightly moistened cotton or wool cloth for general cleaning.

It is important not to let water soak through the leather or penetrate into seams.

**Before cleaning** leather surfaces, read and heed the information ⇒ [Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric](#).

Type of stain	Cleaning
---------------	----------

Type of stain	Cleaning
<i>Heavy stains</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Apply a mild soapy solution with a cloth that has been wrung nearly dry <sup>a)</sup>.</li> <li>– Dab dry with an absorbent cloth.</li> </ul>
<i>Water-based stains</i> , such as coffee, tea, juice, or blood.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– If the stains are already dry, use an appropriate cleaning agent ⇒ ⓘ.</li> </ul>
<i>Grease-based stains</i> , such as oil, lipstick, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– Use an appropriate cleaning agent on stains that have not yet penetrated the surface ⇒ ⓘ.</li> </ul>
<i>Special stains</i> , such as ballpoint pen, marker, nail polish, latex paint, or shoe polish.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Dab dry with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– Clean with a special stain remover designed for leather.</li> </ul>

#### ⓘ NOTE

- Stains that have been left in place too long will penetrate the surface of the leather and cannot be removed.
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.
- Wipe up spilled liquids immediately with an absorbent cloth. Liquid can penetrate leather surfaces and seams within a few seconds.
- If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, cover the upholstery to protect the leather from direct sunlight and to help prevent fading and discoloration.



Slight discoloration caused by wear and tear is normal.

<sup>a)</sup> Mild soap solution: 2 tablespoons of liquid soap in 1 quart (liter) of water.

## Cleaning leatherette

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Clean leatherette upholstery only with water and a mild soap solution.

**Before cleaning** leatherette surfaces, read and heed the information ⇒ [Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric](#).

#### ⓘ NOTE

- Do not clean leatherette with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover, or similar products. These can cause the material to become brittle and break.
- Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.
- If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, cover the upholstery to protect the leatherette from direct sunlight and to help prevent fading or discoloration.

## Cleaning storage compartments and cup holders

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Some storage compartments and cup holders may have a removable rubber or felt insert at the bottom.

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean plastic or rubber parts.
- If this is not sufficient, then use a special **solvent-free** care and cleaning product designed for plastics.
- Clean felt inserts with a vacuum cleaner.

## Care and cleaning of plastic components, wood trim, and instrument panel

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- Clean *plastic components (inside and outside of the vehicle) and the instrument panel only* with a **solvent-free** care and cleaning product that is specifically designed for plastics and approved by Volkswagen ⇒ .
- Clean *wood trim* with a mild soap solution.

### WARNING

Using solvents or other improper cleaning products on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash, causing injury.
- Never use solvents or cleaners on the steering wheel horn pad or on the instrument panel because they can damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- When cleaning the horn pad and instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with plain water.

## Cleaning the safety belts

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If a safety belt is dirty, this can prevent the belt from working properly. Keep safety belts clean and regularly check all safety belts for damage.

Safety belts must never be taken apart for cleaning.

- Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush ⇒ .
- Carefully pull the dirty safety belt out of the retractor and keep it out.
- Clean the safety belt with a *mild* soap solution.
- After cleaning, always give the safety belts time to dry thoroughly before letting them retract. This helps prevent damage to the retractor.
- Do not let the safety belts retract until they are completely dry.

### WARNING

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

- Check the condition of all safety belts regularly. If you notice that the safety belt webbing, hardware, retractor, buckle, or any other part of the safety belts is damaged, immediately have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility replace the safety belt with the correct replacement belt for your vehicle model and model year.
- Never use chemical cleaning agents, solvents, or any substance that may damage or weaken the safety belt webbing or any other parts of the safety belt. Never let the belts come into contact with corrosive fluids or sharp objects. Otherwise, the safety belt webbing will be significantly weakened.
- After cleaning, always give the safety belts time to dry completely before letting them retract. The moisture can damage the retractor and keep it from working properly.
- Never let foreign objects or liquids get into the safety belt latch. This could prevent the belt buckles and safety belts from working properly.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Never try to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.
- Safety belts that were subject to stress in an accident and stretched must be replaced with a correct, new safety belt, preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt shows no visible damage. Anchorages that have been loaded must also be inspected.

## Do it yourself

### Vehicle tool kit

 [Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Storage](#)

⇒ [Contents](#)

## ⇒ Folding chock

When securing the vehicle after a breakdown, always obey all applicable legal requirements.

### ⚠ WARNING

Loose tools and other items in the vehicle tool kit and a loose spare (or compact spare) wheel may be thrown through the passenger compartment if you brake suddenly or steer sharply or are involved in an accident. This can cause severe injuries.

- Always make sure the vehicle tool kit and spare (or compact spare) wheel are securely stowed in the luggage compartment.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper or damaged vehicle tools can lead to accidents and injury.

- Never work with tools that are damaged or not right for the job.

## Storage

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The vehicle kit is located in a foam container under the luggage compartment floor.

### ! NOTE

Always guide the luggage compartment floor covering back down carefully. Dropping the floor covering could damage the vehicle trim and the floor covering itself.



Completely retract the jack after use. Otherwise it will not fit in its compartment and cannot be stowed safely.

## Contents

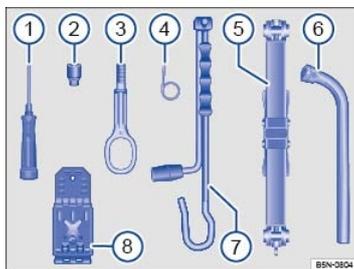


Fig. 195 Contents of the vehicle tool kit.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The contents of the vehicle tool kit depend on the vehicle's equipment. The following describes the maximum contents.

### Contents of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ Fig. 195

- ① Screwdriver with a hexagonal socket in the handle for removing or inserting previously loosened wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible. The screwdriver may be stored under the lug wrench.
- ② Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts (if equipped). Volkswagen recommends that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts in the vehicle along with the vehicle tool kit. The **code number** of the wheel bolt lock is imprinted on the front of the adapter. If lost, a replacement adapter can be ordered using this number. Record the code number of the wheel bolt lock and store it separately from the vehicle.
- ③ Screw-in towing eye.
- ④ Hubcap puller clip for removing hubcaps, full wheel covers, or wheel bolt caps.
- ⑤ Jack. Before putting the jack back in the tool kit, be sure to completely crank the jack down to its original position. The crank must then be locked against the side of the jack; otherwise, the jack will not fit and cannot be securely stowed.
- ⑥ Lug wrench.
- ⑦ Crank.
- ⑧ One folding chock ⇒ *Folding chock*.

### Maintaining the vehicle jack

The vehicle jack requires no regular maintenance. If necessary, apply multi-purpose grease to the joints of the vehicle jack.

## Folding chock

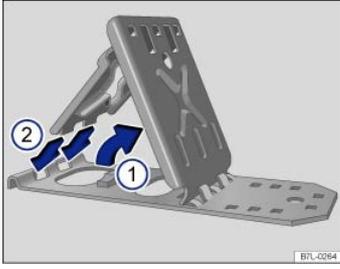


Fig. 196 Unfolding the folding chock.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle is equipped with a folding chock in the vehicle tool kit ⇒ [Fig. 195](#).

### Setting up the folding chock

- Raise the support plate ⇒ [Fig. 196](#) ①.
- Insert both lugs of the securing plate completely in the elongated holes of the base plate ②.

### Proper use

The folding chock can be used to block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel which is to be changed to help prevent the vehicle from rolling.

The folding chock must be placed directly behind or in front of the wheel being blocked, and can only be used on firm, solid ground.

Follow the instructions for placing the folding chock in ⇒ [Changing a wheel](#), ⇒ .

### WARNING

Improper setup or improper use of the folding chock can cause accidents and injuries.

- Never use damaged folding chocks.
- Never use folding chocks to secure the vehicle on slopes.

## Windshield wiper blades

### Windshield wiper service position

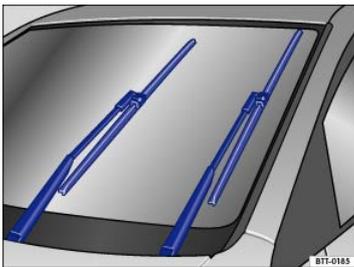


Fig. 197 Windshield wiper in service position.

In the service position, the wiper arms can be lifted away from the windshield ⇒ [Fig. 197](#). The wipers are moved to the service position as follows:

- The engine hood must be closed ⇒ [In the engine compartment](#).
- Switch the ignition off, turn it on briefly, and then off again.
- Press the windshield wiper lever down briefly when the ignition is off.
- Wipers move into service position.

### Lifting the wiper blades and tilting them away from the windshield

- Put the wiper arms in service position ⇒ .
- Do not handle the wiper blades, handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.

Carefully fold the wiper arms back onto the windshield before driving! Switch the ignition on and press the windshield wiper lever down briefly. The wiper arms move back to their original position.

### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to the engine hood and the windshield wiper arms, lift the wiper arms away from the windshield only when they are in the service

position.

- Always carefully fold the windshield wiper arms down against the windshield before driving the vehicle.



The windshield wiper arms can be moved to the service position only when the vehicle is not moving.

## Cleaning and changing the windshield wiper blades

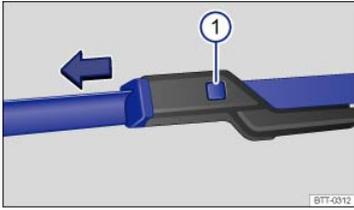


Fig. 198 Changing the windshield wiper blades.

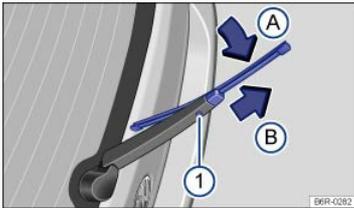


Fig. 199 Changing the rear window wiper blades.

Factory-installed wiper blades have a graphite coating. The graphite coating lets the wiper blades glide smoothly over the windshield. If this coating is worn or damaged, the wipers may grab or squeak.

Check all wiper blades regularly. **Wiper blades that grab and squeak** must be replaced if worn or damaged and cleaned if dirty ⇒ ⓘ.

Replace worn or damaged wiper blades immediately. Replacement blades may be purchased from any authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Lifting and tilting windshield wiper arms

Move the front wiper arms to the service position before lifting them away from the windshield ⇒ *Windshield wipers and washer*.

It is not possible to lift the front wiper arms away from the windshield when they are not in the service position.

When lifting or replacing a wiper blade on a window, grip it **only** by its mounting and not by the blade itself.

### Cleaning the wiper blades

- Move the front wiper arms to the service position and lift them away from the windshield.
- Do not handle the wiper blades; handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.
- Using a soft cloth, carefully remove dust and dirt from the wiper blades.
- If the blades are very dirty, carefully clean them with a damp sponge or cloth ⇒ ⓘ.
- Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the windshield.

### Changing the front windshield wiper blades

- Move the front wiper arms to the service position and lift them away from the windshield.
- Do not handle the wiper blades; handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.
- Press and hold the release button ⇒ Fig. 198 ⓘ.
- While lifting the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm, pull off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow. This may require moderate force.
- Install a new wiper blade of **same length and type** onto the wiper arm by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow until it latches.
- Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the windshield.

### Changing the rear window wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm away from the rear window.
- Do not handle the wiper blades; handle the wiper arms only at the attachment above the wiper blades.
- Press and hold the release button ⇒ Fig. 199 ⓘ.
- While lifting the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm ⇒ Fig. 199 (arrow Ⓐ), pull off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ. This may require moderate force.

- Install a new wiper blade of the **same length and type** onto the wiper arm by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 199* until it latches.
- Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the window.

#### WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn, and if they cannot clean the windows sufficiently.

#### NOTE

- Damaged or dirty wiper blades can scratch the windshield and the rear window.
- Solvents, abrasive sponges and sharp-edged objects will damage the graphite coating on the wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windows with gasoline, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar fluids.
- To help prevent damage to the engine hood and the windshield wiper arms, lift the wiper arms away from the windshield only when they are in the service position.

## Replacing light bulbs

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator light*

Changing a light bulb requires a certain amount of skill. Therefore, Volkswagen recommends having the light bulb changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Special training and knowledge are generally required when other vehicle parts must be disassembled to replace a bulb.

You should always keep a box in the vehicle with all the replacement bulbs required for traffic safety. Replacement bulbs are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The laws of some countries explicitly require you to have replacement bulbs in the vehicle.

Driving with outside lights that do not work may be against the law.

### Additional light bulb specifications

Some factory-installed light bulbs in the headlights or the rear lights may have different specifications than conventional light bulbs. Specifications are on the glass bulb or on the metal base.

#### WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

#### WARNING

Improper replacement of burned out headlights and other light bulbs can cause serious personal injury.

- Stop! Always read and heed the WARNINGS before doing any work in the engine compartment ⇒ *In the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area, and work in this area can lead to serious personal injury.
- HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights get power from a high voltage source that can cause severe personal injury and even death if handled improperly.
- H7 bulbs and HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights are under high pressure and can explode if handled improperly.
- Always let a burned out light bulb cool down before replacing it.
- Never replace a light bulb unless you are familiar with all of the necessary procedures. In particular, never remove a headlight unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct tools and light bulbs.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- We strongly recommend that you always have HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights and H7 bulbs replaced by a qualified technician.
- Do not touch the glass of light bulbs with your bare hands. Fingerprints left on the bulb evaporate due to the heat when the bulb is switched on and cause the reflector to cloud.
- There are sharp edges on and around the headlight housing in the engine compartment and the rear light housing. Wear hand protection if you replace bulbs.

#### NOTE

After replacing a headlight bulb or other light bulb, always make sure that the rubber covers or plastic caps have been properly and securely reinstalled to help prevent water from getting into the electrical connections and the headlight housing and damaging the electrical system.



Individual LEDs cannot be replaced. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## Indicator light

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Light bulb of the exterior vehicle lighting not working.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop to replace the light bulb that isn't working.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



Failure of a single LED within a taillight is not indicated. However, the indicator light will light up if all LEDs fail.

## Replacing fuses

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Fuses in the vehicle*

⇒ *Replacing blown fuses*

Due to ongoing development of the vehicle, configuration-dependent allocation of fuses and the combined fuse protection of multiple loads with one fuse, an up-to-date overview of the fuse location per load is not possible at the time of printing. Detailed information regarding fuse box layout is available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

In general, one fuse can protect several loads. One load can also be protected by several fuses.

Find out why the fuse blew and correct the problem before replacing a blown fuse. If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

High voltage systems in the engine compartment can cause electrical shocks, severe burns, and even death!

- Never touch ignition cables. Never touch other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.

### WARNING

Using the wrong fuse, using a blown fuse that has been repaired, and using metal objects in place of fuses to complete the electrical connection in the circuit can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. Replace a blown fuse only with a fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same overall size.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never replace fuses with a metal strip, a paper clip, or a similar object.

## NOTE

- To help prevent damage to the electrical system, switch off all lights and accessories, switch off the ignition, and remove the key from the ignition switch (if applicable) before replacing a fuse.
- If a fuse is replaced with a fuse with higher amperage, this can also cause damage at different locations in the electrical system.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.

## Fuses in the vehicle

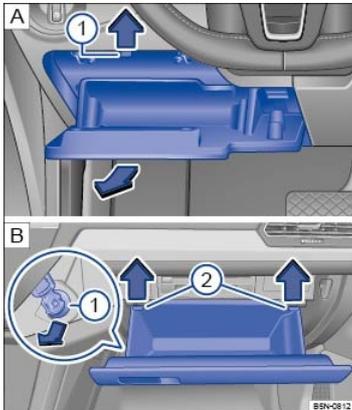


Fig. 200 On the driver side in the instrument panel: Fuse box cover.

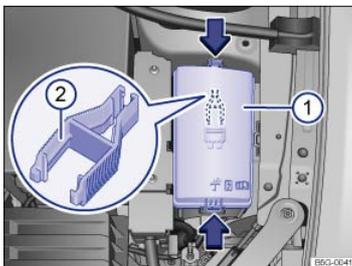


Fig. 201 In the engine compartment: Fuse box cover ① with tweezers ②.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Replace a blown fuse only with a fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same overall size.

### Fuse types

- Regular blade fuse (ATO®).
- Mini blade fuse (MINI®).
- Cartridge fuse (JCASE®).

### Fuse color coding

Color	Current strength in amps (ATO® /MINI®)	Current strength in amps (JCASE®)
Black	1	—
Light brown	5	—
Brown	7.5	—
Red	10	50
Light blue	15	—
Yellow	20	60
White or clear	25	—

Color	Current strength in amps	Current strength in amps
	(ATO /MINI )	(JCASE )
Light green	30	—
Pink	30	30
Green	40	40
Orange	40	—

### Opening the fuse box in the instrument panel

- Open the storage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 200* toward you (arrow).
- If necessary, empty the storage compartment.
- Press the retaining clip ⇒ *Fig. 200*① upward in the direction of the arrow until the cover unlatches.
- Pull the cover completely out.
- To *install*, guide the cover into the instrument panel at the stops at the bottom of the opening ⇒ *Fig. 200*② (arrows) and push until you can hear it latch into place.

### Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

- Open the engine hood ▲ ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
- Press the release tabs in the direction of the arrows ⇒ *Fig. 201* to unlock the fuse box cover ①.
- Remove the cover upward.
- To *install* push the cover onto the fuse box. The locking tabs must latch with an audible click.

In some vehicles, there are plastic tweezers for removing fuses on the inside of the fuse box cover ⇒ *Fig. 201*②.

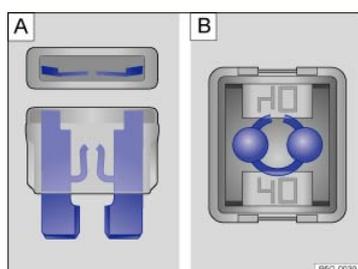
#### NOTE

- To help prevent vehicle damage, be careful when removing fuse box covers and be sure to reinstall them properly.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.

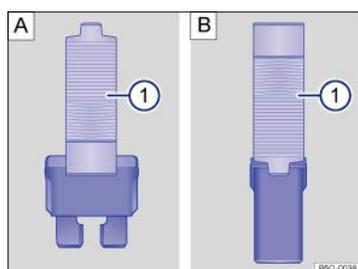


The vehicle contains other fuses in addition to those mentioned in this section. Have these fuses replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Replacing blown fuses



**Fig. 202** Blown fuse: : Blade fuse. : JCASE® fuse.



**Fig. 203** Removing or installing a blade fuse with the plastic tweezers: : Blade fuse. : JCASE® fuse.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

### Preparations

- Switch off the headlights, the ignition, and all electrical consumers.
- Open the appropriate fuse box ⇒ *Fuses in the vehicle*.

### Identifying a blown fuse

- For blade fuses (ATO®, MINI®): Remove the fuse and shine a flashlight on it. This makes it easier to tell if the fuse has blown. A blown blade fuse has metal strips that have burned through, which you can see through the transparent housing from above and from the side ⇒ *Fig. 202 A*.
- For cartridge fuses (JCASE®): Shine a flashlight on the fuse. This makes it easier to tell if the fuse has blown. A blown cartridge fuse has metal strips that have burned through, which you can see through the transparent housing from above ⇒ *Fig. 202 B*.

### Replacing a fuse

In some vehicles, there are plastic tweezers for removing blade fuses on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

- Open the fuse box cover in the engine compartment ⇒ *Fuses in the vehicle* and remove the plastic tweezers.
- Depending on the type of fuse, slide the tweezers ⇒ *Fig. 203 A* ① or ⇒ *Fig. 203 B* ① onto the fuse from the side.
- Pull out the fuse.
- If the fuse is blown, replace the fuse with a new fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same size ⇒ ①.
- Clip the plastic tweezers back into the holder inside the fuse box cover.
- Replace the fuse box cover.

### NOTE

If a fuse is replaced with a fuse with higher amperage, then damage can occur at various places in the electrical system.

## Jump-starting

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Jump-start terminal*

⇒ *Using jumper cables*

If your engine does not start because the vehicle battery is dead, your vehicle's battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start your engine (jump-starting). Check the battery acid level indicator on the vehicle battery before jump-starting ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.

You must use jumper cables that meet recognized industrial standards (check information provided by the jumper cable manufacturer). For vehicles with **gasoline engines**, the cross-section of the jumper cable wire must be at least 0.038 in.<sup>2</sup> (25 mm<sup>2</sup>), or about 3 ga. (AWG).

### WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shock.

- Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries in general.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive and can cause blindness and damage to unprotected skin. Never let battery acid or lead particles contact your eyes, skin, and clothing.
- Never lean over a vehicle battery. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries; acid could spill out through the vents and burn you.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Always avoid fires, sparks, open flame, and smoking. Never create sparks or electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short-circuit the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention immediately. If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.

### WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump-starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode, leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- All work on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
- Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance (the booster battery) has the same voltage as the dead battery (12 V) and about the same amperage capacity (see battery label).
- Never jump-start a vehicle with a thawed or frozen vehicle battery. The battery can explode. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F

(0 °C).

- A battery that is frozen or was frozen, but has since thawed, must be replaced.
- When the vehicle battery is jump-started, it gives off hydrogen gas, which is highly explosive! Always keep fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking materials far away from vehicle batteries. Never use a mobile telephone while connecting or disconnecting jumper cables.
- Jump-start batteries only in well-ventilated areas. Batteries give off highly explosive hydrogen gas during jump-starting.
- Always route the jumper cables so that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never short out the battery terminals by connecting the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals with each other.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the dead battery, as this may cause the hydrogen gas given off by the dead battery to explode.
- Never attach the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to any part of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch.
- Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Always follow the instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.

#### ! NOTE

To help prevent extensive damage to the vehicle electrical system, read and heed the following:

- Connecting jumper cables improperly can cause a short circuit and do expensive damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Do not let the vehicles touch each other while the jumper cables are connected. If they do, electrical current may flow between the vehicles when the positive (+) terminals are connected, causing electrical system damage.

### Jump-start terminal

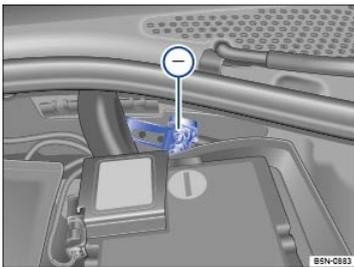


Fig. 204 In the engine compartment: Negative jump-start terminal ⊖.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠️ *Introduction to the subject*

The jump-start terminal for connecting the *black* jump-start cable is in the engine compartment ⇒ Fig. 204⊖.

Your vehicle can only be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle via this jump-start terminal.

### Using jumper cables

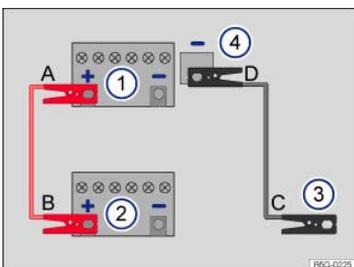


Fig. 205 Diagram for attaching the jumper cables: Dead battery ① and booster battery ②.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠️ *Introduction to the subject*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 205 :

- ① Battery of the vehicle receiving starting assistance
- ② Battery of the vehicle providing starting assistance.
- ③ Negative jump-start terminal on vehicle providing starting assistance.
- ④ Negative jump-start terminal on vehicle receiving starting assistance.

The dead battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Make certain that the vehicles are not touching each other. Otherwise, electric current could flow as soon as the positive battery terminals (+) are connected. Use longer jumper cables if necessary.

The clamps on the jumper cables must have good contact to bare metal on the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start, stop the process after 10 seconds and repeat after about 1 minute. If the engine still does not start, get professional assistance.

The procedure for attaching and for removing the jumper cables is described below. Perform each of the following steps only in the order described, which follow the letters shown in the illustration ⇒ *Fig. 205A – B – C – D*.

## Checklist

- ✓ Switch off the ignition in both vehicles Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Open the battery cover, if necessary Vehicle battery.
- ✓ Attach one end of the red jumper cable A to the positive battery terminal ⊕ on the dead battery: ① .
- ✓ Attach the other end of the red jumper cable B to the positive battery terminal ⊕ on the good battery (booster battery): ②.
- ✓ Attach one end of the black jumper cable C to the negative jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance: ③ (Jump-start terminal), or if that is not available, to a bare metal part of the vehicle providing assistance. This part should be connected directly to the engine block.
- ✓ Attach the other end of the black jumper cable D to the negative jump-start terminal of the vehicle receiving assistance ④ (Jump-start terminal), or if that is not available, to a bare metal part of the vehicle receiving assistance. This part should be connected directly to the engine block. Attach the clamp to a point that is as far away as possible from the dead battery ① .
- ✓ Route the jumper cables so that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment of either vehicle.

### Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery that is providing help and let it run at idle speed.
- Turn on the ignition of the vehicle with the dead battery. If the engine starts, wait 2 to 3 minutes until it runs smoothly before removing the jumper cables as described below ⇒ ▲. If the engine does not start within about 10 seconds, turn off the ignition and wait at least 1 minute; then try again. If the engine still does not start, get professional assistance.

### Before removing the jumper cables

- Switch off the headlights (if they are on).
- In the vehicle with the dead battery, switch on the heater fan and the rear window defroster. This helps to minimize voltage spikes when the cables are disconnected.

## Checklist

**With the engine running, remove the jumper cables in reverse order to the way they were connected.**

- ✓ Disconnect the black (-) cable from the vehicle with the dead battery.
- ✓ Disconnect the black (-) cable from the other vehicle (vehicle with the good battery).
- ✓ Disconnect the red (+) cable from the other vehicle (vehicle with the good battery).
- ✓ Disconnect the red (+) cable from the vehicle with the dead battery.
- ✓ Close the battery cover.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump-starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode, leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- All work on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
- Always wear proper eye protection. Never lean over the vehicle battery.
- Attach the jumper cables in the correct order: first the positive cable, then the negative cable.
- Never connect the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch.
- Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Check the battery acid level indicator window on the vehicle battery. Use a flashlight, never a match, cigarette lighter, or other open flame. If you cannot see the color of the window clearly, or if it is light yellow or colorless, do not jump-start the vehicle. Get expert assistance.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. Sparks may cause the hydrogen gas escaping from the vehicle battery to ignite.

- Never jump-start a vehicle with a battery that is damaged or frozen or that was frozen and has thawed. The battery can explode. Replace the battery instead.
- Always follow the instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.
- Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance has the same voltage as the dead battery (12 V) and about the same capacity (see battery label).
- Batteries give off explosive hydrogen gas. Always keep fire, sparks, open flame and smoking materials away from batteries.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative battery terminal on the dead battery. The hydrogen gas from the battery is explosive.
- Never short out the battery terminals by connecting the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals with each other.

## Towing



### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Towing on a commercial tow truck*

⇒ *Tips on towing*

⇒ *Installing the front towing eye*

⇒ *Driving tips while towing*

Observe legal requirements when towing.

#### For technical reasons:

- **A vehicle with a dead battery must never be towed. Jump-start the vehicle instead.**
- **It is not possible to tow-start or push-start your vehicle. Jump-start the vehicle instead.**

Vehicles with Keyless Access may only be towed with the ignition on.

Towing the vehicle when the engine is turned off and the ignition is turned on drains the vehicle battery. Depending on the charge level of the vehicle battery, it is possible that even after just a few minutes, electrical devices such as the emergency flashers may not have the power necessary to function. The steering wheel might lock in vehicles with Keyless Access ⇒ ⚠.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle without any electrical power.

- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- If the vehicle loses power while it is being towed, stop towing the vehicle immediately and contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Towing a vehicle changes the way it handles and brakes. To help reduce the risk of an accident and serious personal injury, note the following:

- The driver of the vehicle that is being towed:
  - Since the brake booster also does not work when the engine is stopped, you will need to press harder on the brake pedal to slow down or stop. Always be alert so as not to rear-end the towing vehicle.
  - Will have to use considerably more force to turn the steering wheel because the power steering is not working.
- The driver of the vehicle that is doing the towing:
  - Must accelerate gradually and gently and avoid jerking movements.
  - Must not brake hard or steer sharply.
  - Must brake earlier and more gently than in normal driving.

#### ⓘ NOTE

- Be careful not to damage the paint when installing and removing the towing eye and the cover for the threaded hole in the front bumper.

- Unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter during towing and damage it.

## Towing on a commercial tow truck

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

To help avoid damaging the vehicle, have it towed only by a professional towing company. Read and heed the following information:

### General information

Never let the vehicle be towed at speeds above 30 mph (50 km/h).

Never let the vehicle be towed for more than 30 miles (50 km).

### Towing automatic transmission vehicles

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to Neutral (N).
- Tow the vehicle only with its front wheels off the ground ⇒ .

### Special towing instructions for vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)

- To help prevent unnecessary damage, vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) must be transported on a flatbed truck.
- To load the vehicle on the flatbed, use the towing eye found in the vehicle tool kit and attach it to the front anchorage ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#), ⇒ [Installing the front towing eye](#).

### When not to tow your vehicle

If there is little or no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, it must be moved with the drive wheels off the ground. The vehicle can only be towed if its ignition is switched on and its electrical system is operating.

In the following situations, the vehicle cannot be towed at all and **must be transported on a flatbed truck or trailer** :

- If the front and rear wheels cannot turn.
- If the vehicle battery is dead (because the electronic steering column lock cannot be released, if engaged). If the electronic parking brake was engaged when the battery died, it cannot be released.
- If you have to tow the vehicle more than 30 miles (50 km).
- If the steering or the wheel clearance might be impaired, for example, after an accident.

### WARNING

It is not safe for children or other persons to ride in a vehicle that is being towed.

- Never let children or anyone else remain in the vehicle while it is being towed.

### NOTE

The drive axle rotates while the vehicle is being towed with its rear wheels off the ground. This can damage the automatic transmission.

- Never tow automatic transmission vehicle with the rear wheels off the ground.

## Tips on towing

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Towing eye, tow rope or tow bar

A towing eye is included in your vehicle's tool kit. This can be inserted in a threaded hole in the front bumper and used when your vehicle is being towed by another vehicle. Towing a vehicle with a tow bar is safer and easier on both vehicles than using a tow rope. A tow rope should be used only if a tow bar is not available.

The tow rope should be flexible enough to help protect both vehicles from damage. Use a synthetic fiber rope or similar rope.

Attach the tow rope or tow bar only to the towing eye included in the vehicle tool kit for this purpose, or to a trailer hitch.

### Special towing instructions for vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)

- To help prevent unnecessary damage, vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) must be transported on a flatbed truck.
- To load the vehicle on the flatbed, use the towing eye found in the vehicle tool kit and attach it to the front anchorage ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#), ⇒ [Installing the front towing eye](#).

## Towing automatic transmission vehicles

Check whether your vehicle can be towed at all; see below ⇒ *When not to tow your vehicle*.

If yes, note the following for the towed vehicle:

- Put the transmission in Neutral (**N**).
- Do not tow faster than 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Do not tow more than 30 miles (50 km).
- When a commercial tow truck is being used, the vehicle must only be towed with the front wheels lifted off the ground.
- Follow the special instructions for towing vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION).

## When not to tow your vehicle

In the following situations, the vehicle cannot be towed and **must be transported on a flatbed truck or trailer** :

- If transmission fluid has leaked out of the transmission.
- If there is little or no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, it must be moved with the drive wheels off the ground.
- If the front and rear wheels cannot turn.
- If the vehicle battery is dead (because the electronic steering column lock engages and cannot be released). If the electronic parking brake was engaged when the battery died, it cannot be released.
- If you have to tow an automatic transmission vehicle more than 30 miles (50 km).
- If the steering or the wheel clearance might be impaired, for example, after an accident.

## Towing other vehicles

- Obey all legal requirements.
- Read and heed all towing information in the owner's manual for the other vehicle.



A vehicle can be towed only if the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock are released. In case of a power loss or malfunctions of the electrical system, the engine may have to be jump-started ⇒ *Jump-starting* in order to release the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock.

## Installing the front towing eye

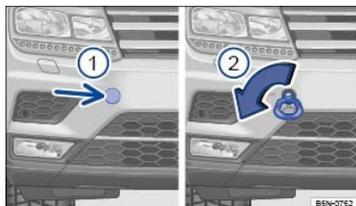


Fig. 206 In the front bumper on the right side: Installing the towing eye.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

There is a threaded hole for the towing eye in the right front bumper behind a cover ⇒ *Fig. 206*.

Always keep the towing eye in the vehicle and stow it securely.

Read and follow the notes about towing ⇒ *Tips on towing*.

## Installing the front towing eye

- Take the towing eye and the lug wrench out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Push on the left side of the cover ⇒ *Fig. 206* (arrow) so that it pops out.
- Remove the cover and let it hang from the bumper.
- Screw the towing eye **counterclockwise** into the threaded hole as far as it will go (arrow) ⇒ *Fig. 206* ⇒ . Use the lug wrench to turn and tighten the towing eye.
- When towing is complete, unscrew the towing eye **clockwise** to remove it.
- Position the left side of the cover in the opening in the bumper and carefully push the right side into the opening until the cover locks into place.

### NOTE

Always make sure the towing eye is screwed all the way into threaded hole so that it is secure. If not, it could be pulled out while your vehicle is being towed.

## Driving tips while towing

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  **Introduction to the subject**

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers must be familiar with the techniques required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not try to tow a vehicle or to drive a vehicle that is being towed.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle, and avoid jerking the tow rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the attachment points.

If your vehicle is being towed, it can still signal turns even if the emergency flashers are activated, as long as the ignition is switched on. Use the turn signal in the normal way. The emergency flashers go off as long as the turn signal is blinking. As soon as the turn signal lever returns to its neutral position, the emergency flashers are automatically activated again.

### As the driver of the vehicle being towed:

- If your vehicle is the one being towed, the ignition must be switched on to keep the steering wheel from locking. Also make sure that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers, and windshield washers work properly.
- Since power steering does not work when the engine is switched off, more effort is needed to steer the vehicle.
- Since the brake booster also does not work when the engine is stopped, you will need to press harder on the brake pedal to slow down or stop. Do not hit the towing vehicle.
- Read and heed the information and WARNINGS in the towing vehicle's owner's manual.

### As the driver of the towing vehicle:

- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently. Avoid sudden driving maneuvers.
- Brake earlier and more gently than usual and with light pedal pressure.
- Read and heed the information and WARNINGS in the owner's manual of the vehicle being towed.

## Checking and refilling

### In the engine compartment

#### **Introduction to the subject**

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Preparing to work in the engine compartment*

⇒ *Opening or closing the engine compartment*

⇒ *Display*

Always position the vehicle on a firm and level surface before doing any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a hazardous area. Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you

- know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools and supplies, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒ .

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

#### **WARNING**

Unintended vehicle movement during maintenance work can cause serious personal injuries.

- Never work under the vehicle unless you have safely secured the vehicle from moving. If you must work under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure that the vehicle is on level ground, that all 4 wheels are chocked to keep them from moving, and that the key is not in the ignition.
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not strong enough for this purpose and can collapse causing serious personal injury.
- The Start-stop system must be deactivated.

#### **WARNING**

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- We strongly recommend that you always have HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights and H7 bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- Never open or close the engine hood if steam or coolant is escaping. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the hood.
- Hot parts of the engine and the exhaust system will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the hood:
  - Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to Park **(P)**.
  - Take the vehicle key out of the ignition.
  - On vehicles with Keyless Access, make sure that the remote control vehicle key is out of range of the vehicle and that the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the starter button ⇒ *Starter button*.
  - Always keep children and others away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- The engine coolant system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. Hot coolant can spray out and cause severe burns and other serious injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counterclockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  - Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Never spill fluids on the engine or exhaust system when refilling. Spilling fluids onto hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can cause a fire.

#### WARNING

High voltage systems in the engine compartment can cause electrical shocks or even electrocution, severe burns, other serious injuries, and even death!

- Never short-circuit the electrical system. Be especially careful when using jumper cables. The vehicle's battery could explode!
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch ignition cables. Never touch other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
  - Never touch the wiring of the HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights.
- Read and heed the important information and warnings on cleaning the engine compartment ⇒ *Cleaning the engine compartment*.

#### WARNING

Moving parts in the engine compartment can cause serious personal injury on contact.

- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can cause serious personal injury. Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can come on suddenly even when the engine has been switched off for a while and the key has been removed from the ignition.
- If you have to perform a check or repair when the engine is running, there are more risks from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always use extreme care.
  - Always make sure that jewelry, loose clothing and long hair do not get caught in rotating engine parts. Before starting any work remove your jewelry, take off your necktie, tie back and cover your hair, and do not wear clothing that can hang down and get caught in moving engine parts.
  - Always use extreme caution if the accelerator pedal has to be depressed to perform a check. The vehicle will start to move if the transmission is in gear, even if the parking brake is on.
- Never leave any objects in the engine compartment, for example cleaning rags and tools. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions, engine damage, and even fires.

#### WARNING

Additional materials in the engine compartment such as blankets can interfere with the operation of the engine and can cause fires, which can lead to serious

injuries.

- Never cover the engine with blankets or other materials.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment can catch fire easily, causing burns and other serious personal injuries!

- Never smoke near the engine compartment.
- Never work next to open flames or sparks.
- Never pour or spill operating fluids or other flammable liquids on the engine. These fluids can ignite on hot engine parts and cause injuries.
- Before working on the vehicle's fuel system or 12 Volt electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the 12 Volt vehicle battery. Note that if the vehicle is locked when the 12 Volt vehicle battery is disconnected, the anti-theft alarm system will sound ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*.
  - Never work near a furnace, water heater, or other open flame.
- Always have a functional, approved fire extinguisher nearby.

### **! NOTE**

When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage.

- ✿ Fluid leaks and spills are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle for this reason. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Dispose of leaked operating fluids properly.

## Preparing to work in the engine compartment

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ **⚠ Introduction to the subject**

### Checklist

**Before any work in the engine compartment, carry out the following steps in the order in which they are listed ⇒ ⚠ :**

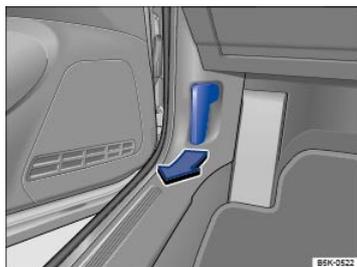
- ✓ Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- ✓ Hold the brake pedal down until the engine is switched off.
- ✓ Switch off the engine. Shift the transmission to Park (P) Automatic transmission selector lever.
- ✓ Set the electronic parking brake Electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Let the engine cool down sufficiently.
- ✓ Keep children and others away from the vehicle.
- ✓ Make sure the vehicle cannot move unexpectedly.

### **⚠ WARNING**

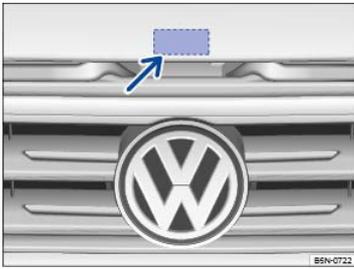
Disregarding the safety-related checklist may result in serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

## Opening or closing the engine compartment



**Fig. 207** In the footwell on the driver side: Inside engine hood release lever.



**Fig. 208** Above the radiator grille: Outside engine hood release.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

### Opening the engine hood

- Before you open the hood, make sure that the windshield wiper arms are resting on the windshield ⇒ ①.
- Open the driver door and pull the inside hood release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 207. The engine hood is released from its latch by a spring ⇒ ⚠.
- Push the outside hood release lever ⇒ Fig. 208 (arrow) and lift the hood all the way up. A gas-pressure strut will hold the hood up.

### Closing the engine hood

- Pull the hood down to overcome the resistance of the gas-pressure strut ⇒ ⚠.
- Lower the engine hood by hand until it is about 8 in. (20 cm) above its latch and then let it drop into place to latch it. *Do not* push down on it afterwards!

If the hood does not close completely, open it again and close it properly.

When the hood is properly closed, you can see that it fits flush with the other body parts. The display in the instrument cluster no longer indicates that the engine hood is open ⇒ *Displays*.

### ⚠ WARNING

If the hood is not closed properly, it could fly up and block your view while you are driving. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- After closing the engine hood, check that the hood release lever is properly latched into the hood latch. The engine hood must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- If you ever notice that the hood latch is not properly secured when the vehicle is moving, stop at once and close it.
- Never let anyone get in the way of the hood when closing it.

### ① NOTE

- Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off and the windshield wiper arms are resting on the windshield before you open the hood. Otherwise, the windshield wipers and the hood may be damaged.
- Always put the windshield wiper arms down against the windshield before driving the vehicle.

### ① NOTE

Before opening or closing the engine hood, make sure there is enough room to do so, for example when the vehicle is in a garage.

## Display



**Fig. 209** In the instrument cluster display: Engine hood open or not properly closed.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If the engine hood is not closed properly, the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the engine hood is open ⇒ Fig. 209. **Stop!** Open and close the engine hood again.

The icon may still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off as long as the key has not been removed. The instrument cluster display goes out a short time after the vehicle has been locked.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## Operating fluids and equipment

**Operating fluids and parts that wear out with use** (such as timing belts, tires, engine coolants, engine oils, spark plugs, and vehicle batteries) are constantly being improved. For this reason, it is important to have operating fluids changed and wearing parts replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of operating fluids and equipment can cause accidents, serious personal injuries, burns and/or poisoning.

- Always store vehicle care products in a safe place in original containers that are securely closed.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package before using vehicle care products.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions!

### **ⓘ NOTE**

- Only refill with suitable operating fluids. When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding incorrect fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage! Under no circumstances should you mix up operating fluids. Otherwise serious malfunctions and engine damage can occur!
- Accessories and other things installed in front of the cooling air intakes impair the efficiency of the engine coolant. The engine can overheat under high outside temperatures or under high engine loads!

✿ Leaking operating fluids can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids in suitable containers and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Windshield washer fluid



**Fig. 210** In the engine compartment: Cap of the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Check the windshield washer fluid level regularly and refill as necessary.

There is a filter screen in the filler neck of the windshield washer fluid reservoir. The screen helps to keep large particles and debris from getting into and clogging the windshield washer nozzles when adding windshield washer fluid. Take the screen out only to clean it. If the screen is damaged or missing, have it replaced immediately, otherwise the system may become clogged and not work properly.

- Open the engine hood **⚠** ⇒ *Preparing to work in the engine compartment*.
- The windshield washer fluid reservoir can be identified by the  symbol on its cap ⇒ *Fig. 210*.
- Check if there is still enough windshield washer fluid in the reservoir.
- Refill with clear water (not distilled water) and an appropriate windshield washer fluid that is recommended by Volkswagen ⇒ **ⓘ**. Follow the directions on the container.

- In cold weather, always use a special windshield washer antifreeze solution that will help keep the water from freezing ⇒ ⚠.

### Recommended cleaners

- For the warmer months, Windscreen Clear Summer- G 052 184 A2 - or equivalent. Mixing ratio 1:100 (1 part concentrate to 100 parts water) in the windshield washer reservoir.
- All-season Windscreen Clear- G 052 164 M2 - or equivalent. Mixing ratio in winter to 0 °F (-18 °C) about 1:2 (1 part concentrate to 2 parts water), otherwise, mixing ratio 1:4 in the windshield washer reservoir.

### Filling capacity

Depending on vehicle equipment, the windshield washer fluid reservoir holds between 3.1–5.2 quarts (3–5 liters).

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never mix antifreeze or similar additives into the windshield washer reservoir. This could produce an oily film on the windshield, which would considerably reduce visibility.

- Use clear water (not distilled water) with a cleaning solution recommended by Volkswagen.
- If necessary, blend with a suitable windshield washer fluid antifreeze agent.

#### ! NOTE

- Never mix cleaning solutions recommended by Volkswagen with other cleaning agents. If you do, this could cause sediments or other by-products that can clog the windshield washer nozzles.
- When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage.

## Engine oil

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Engine oil specifications*

⇒ *Changing engine oil*

⇒ *Engine oil consumption*

⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and adding oil*

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper handling of engine oil can cause severe burns and other serious injuries.

- Always wear eye protection.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Store engine oil only in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until disposal.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never drain the oil into empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can cause severe burns. Always let the engine cool down to the touch.

🌿 Like all other operating fluids, engine oil can pollute the environment. Collect leaked or spilled operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Warning and indicator lights

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up

Possible cause and response

Engine oil level too low.

Lights up	Possible cause and response
-----------	-----------------------------



**Stop!**

Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇒ [Checking the engine oil level and adding oil](#) .

If the engine oil level is too high, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance ⇒ .

Flashes	Possible cause and response
---------	-----------------------------



Engine oil pressure too low.

**Stop!**

Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇒ [Checking the engine oil level and adding oil](#) .

If the warning light flashes although the oil level is normal, *do not* continue driving or let the engine idle. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged.

Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil system malfunction.



Have the engine oil sensor checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

Depending on equipment, the engine oil temperature may be displayed in the Volkswagen Information System **Driving data** menu ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#).

**WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

**NOTE**

Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is in range ⇒ [Fig. 211A](#). Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the catalytic converter and engine can be damaged!

## Engine oil specifications

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality multi-grade oil which car

usually be used throughout the entire year.

Engine oils are constantly being improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that you have the engine oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil quality is based not only on requirements for engines and exhaust treatment systems, but also on fuel quality. Engine oil comes into contact with fuel and fuel residue in all internal combustion engines, causing engine oil to age and its lubricating qualities to deteriorate.

Always use an approved oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard that applies to your vehicle's engine.

### Approved engine oil

Engines	Engine oil specification
Gasoline engines	VW 508 00

At the time this Manual was printed, the engine oils available in the U.S. that meet these Volkswagen standards are "synthetic" oils. This does not mean, however, that any "synthetic" engine oil will meet Volkswagen standards. Always use an approved oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard that applies to your vehicle's engine.

### General recommendations:

If engine oil that meets the applicable Volkswagen engine oil specification with viscosity grade SAE 0W-20 is not available in your area, be sure to use a viscosity grade suitable for the climate, season, and operating conditions that exist where the vehicle is used. Make sure the oil meets the engine oil specification listed in the table above. If none is available that meets this engine oil specification, see the information in [⇒ ⓘ](#).

Engine oils are constantly being improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that you have the engine oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Engine oil capacities

Engines	Engine oil capacity (with filter)
184 hp (137 kW), 2.0 L gasoline engines	About 6 quarts (5.7 liters)

### ! NOTE

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Volkswagen oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add **a total of no more than 1/2 quart (0.5 liter)** of an engine oil that meets ACEA A3/B4 and API SN specifications and has a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-20.

- OR: if there is no oil available that has a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-20, you may add a total of no more than 1/2 quart (0.5 liter) of an engine oil that meets the oil quality standard VW 502 00 or VW 504 00 and has a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30, or SAE 5W-40.
  - Using oil with a viscosity grade other than SAE 0W-20 may cause vehicle emissions and fuel consumption to increase slightly. **Only use other oils in case of emergency!**
- Use only an engine oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage! Damage caused by these kinds of additives are not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

## Changing engine oil

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your [⇒ Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#).

Changing oil at regular intervals is very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when to have the oil changed, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Sometimes, engine oil should be changed more often than specified for normal use. Change oil more frequently if you often drive short distances, in dusty areas or in stop-and-go traffic, or if you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing for long periods.

Volkswagen recommends that you have your oil and oil filter changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ [▲](#). They have the required expertise and special tools and will dispose of the old oil properly.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running a short time. This is normal and no reason to change engine oil more often.

## WARNING

If you must change the engine oil yourself, be sure to take the following precautions:

- Always wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down completely before beginning.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never drain the oil into empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always use an oil that has been specifically approved for your vehicle ⇒ *Engine oil specifications*.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

✿ Before changing the oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.

✿ Dispose of the old oil in an environmentally-responsible manner. Never dump the old oil on garden soil, in wooded areas, in the street, into streams, rivers, or bodies of water, or down sewage drains.

✿ Recycle used oil by taking it to a collection facility for used engine oil in your area, or contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

✿ Volkswagen recommends that you always have your oil and oil filter changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They have the required expertise and special tools and will dispose of the old oil properly.

## Engine oil consumption

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

To provide effective lubrication and cooling for internal engine parts, all internal combustion engines use some oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change over the life of the engine. Engines tend to use more oil during the break-in period than they do afterward, when oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on oil quality as well as viscosity, engine speed (rpm), outside temperature, road conditions, the amount of oil dilution caused by condensed water or fuel residue, and oxidation of the oil. Oil consumption may increase with engine wear over time, until replacement of worn engine parts may become necessary.

Volkswagen recommends that you to check the engine oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time you fill the fuel tank, and always before a long trip. Your vehicle may consume engine oil depending on several variables. A maximum of 1 quart per 1200 miles (1 liter per 2000 km) would be considered normal. New vehicles may consume more oil over the first 3000 miles (5000 km).

**The oil pressure warning light is not an indicator of low engine oil level. If the warning light stays on or flashes while driving (above 1500 rpm), a chime will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine in a safe place immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal, but the light continues to flash, do not keep driving or let the engine idle, as damage may occur.**

If you believe your engine uses too much oil, we recommend that you consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility so that the cause of your concern can be properly diagnosed. Please keep in mind that accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility have instructions for how to measure oil consumption accurately.



Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to 1 quart per 1200 miles (1 liter per 2000 km). Consumption may be higher for new vehicles during the first 3000 miles (5000 km).

## Checking the engine oil level and adding oil

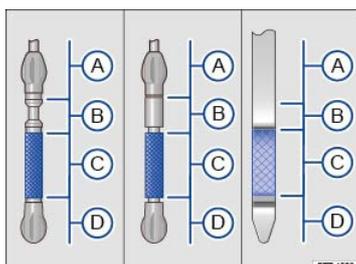
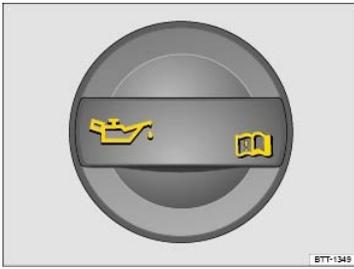


Fig. 211 Engine oil dipstick with oil level marks.



**Fig. 212** In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (cap design may vary depending on vehicle equipment).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

Key to ⇒ Fig. 211 :

- A** Engine oil level too high. **Do not start the engine** ⇒ **ⓘ**. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
- B** **Do not** refill oil ⇒ **ⓘ**.
- C** **You may** add oil, as long as the oil level does not go above the **B** range.
- D** Engine oil level too low. **You must** add oil (about 1 quart / 1.0 liter). After adding oil, make sure that the oil level is about in the middle of the **C** range.

## Checklist

**Perform the steps in the order listed** ⇒ :

- ✓ With the engine at operating temperature, park the vehicle on a level surface to help prevent an incorrect oil level reading.
- ✓ Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil pan.
- ✓ Open the engine hood. Preparing to work in the engine compartment.
- ✓ Find the oil filler opening and the dipstick. You can identify these by the symbol on the engine oil filler cap and the colored handle on the dipstick. If you are not sure where the cap and the dipstick are located, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
- ✓ Remove the dipstick from the guide tube and wipe the dipstick off using a clean cloth.
- ✓ Reinsert the dipstick into the guide tube and push it all the way in. If there is an alignment tab on the top of the engine oil dipstick, make sure it lines up with the notch in the guide tube, and that the dipstick goes all the way in.

Remove the dipstick again and read the oil level on the dipstick as described below: **A**: Do not start the engine. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. **B**: Do not add any oil. Continue with step 15. **C**: Oil may be added, depending on the oil level.

Continue with step 8 or step 15. **D**: You must add oil (about 1 quart / 1.0 liter). Continue with step 8.

- ✓ After reading the oil level, reinsert the dipstick back into the guide tube and push it all the way in.
- ✓ Remove the cap on the engine oil filler opening.
- ✓ Only add engine oil that Volkswagen has approved for that engine. Engine oil specifications. Add the oil gradually in small quantities (no more than 1 pint / 0.5 liter).
- ✓ To help prevent overfilling, you must wait about 1 minute each time you add oil so that the oil can flow into the oil pan up to the marking on the dipstick.
- ✓ Read the oil level on the dipstick again before adding another small amount, if necessary. Never add too much oil.
- ✓ After adding oil, the level must at least be in the center of the **C** range and can enter range **B**, but should never enter range **A**.
- ✓ After adding oil, securely install the cap on the engine oil filler opening. Otherwise, oil could leak out while the engine is running.
- ✓ Insert the oil dipstick back in the guide tube and push it all the way in.
- ✓ Close the hood.

## WARNING

Engine oil can ignite when it touches hot engine parts. This can cause fires, burns, and other severe injuries.

- Never spill oil on the engine. Oil spilled on a cold engine can also cause a fire when the engine warms up.
- Always make certain that you screw the cap of the engine oil filler opening back on tightly after adding oil and that the dipstick has been pushed all the way back into the in the guide tube. This helps prevent engine oil from leaking onto the hot engine when the engine is running.

## NOTE

- Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is in range ⇒ Fig. 211 **A**. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the catalytic converter and engine can be damaged!
- When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage.

 The engine oil level should never be in range ⇒ Fig. 211(A). Otherwise oil can be drawn in by the crankcase ventilation system and enter the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

## Engine coolant

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge*

⇒ *Engine coolant specifications*

⇒ *Checking engine coolant level and topping off*

Never do any work on the coolant system unless you

- know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools, supplies, and operating fluids, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒ !

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

### WARNING

Engine coolant is poisonous!

- Always keep the coolant in its original container stored in a safe place.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never store engine coolant in empty food or beverage containers or in any other containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep engine coolant out of reach of children.
- Always make sure there is enough of the correct coolant additive to provide proper antifreeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.
- At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work, and vehicle occupants could be without protection at subfreezing temperatures.

 Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

For more information, please see ⇒ *Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge* .

## Engine coolant specifications

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially conditioned water and at least 40 percent of Volkswagen engine coolant additive **G 13** (TL-VW 774 J). This engine coolant additive is pink.

This mixture provides antifreeze protection down to -13 °F (-25 °C). It also helps to protect the light alloy parts in the engine cooling system against corrosion. In addition, the mixture helps prevent calcium deposits and increases the boiling point of the engine coolant.

To protect the engine, the mixture must *always contain at least 40% coolant additive* even in warm weather or climates where antifreeze protection is not needed.

If more antifreeze protection is needed for climate conditions, the percentage of coolant additive can be increased. However, the coolant additive percentage must never be more than 60%; otherwise, antifreeze protection is reduced and the ability of the mixture to cool the engine is also reduced.

When adding engine coolant, use a mixture of **distilled** water and at least 40% coolant additive - G 13 - or - G 12 plus-plus - (TL-VW 774 G) for optimum corrosion protection ⇒ .

Do not mix - G 13 - with - G 12 plus - or - G 11 -. Mixing these coolant additives together significantly reduces corrosion protection ⇒  and can lead to engine damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

## ⚠ WARNING

Too little antifreeze protection in the engine cooling system can cause engine failure and severe injuries.

- Always make sure there is enough of the correct coolant additive to provide proper antifreeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.
- At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work, and vehicle occupants could be without protection at subfreezing temperatures.

## ❗ NOTE

Never mix original Volkswagen engine coolant additives with other additives not approved by Volkswagen. Mixing Volkswagen coolant additives with coolant additives made by other manufacturers can seriously damage the engine and the engine cooling system.

- If the fluid in the engine coolant reservoir is **any color but pink**, then - G 13 - was mixed with a different engine coolant. If this is the case, the engine coolant must be replaced immediately. Otherwise serious malfunctions or engine damage can occur!

🌿 Engine coolant and engine coolant additives can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Checking engine coolant level and topping off



Fig. 213 Coolant expansion tank in the engine compartment.



Fig. 214 Coolant expansion tank cap in the engine compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

If the coolant level drops too low, the engine coolant level/temperature warning light comes on.

### Preparations

- Park the vehicle on level ground.
- Always let the engine cool down ⇒ ⚠.
- Open the engine hood ⚠ ⇒ *Preparing to work in the engine compartment*.
- There is a ⚠ symbol on the cap of the engine coolant expansion tank ⇒ Fig. 214.

### Checking engine coolant level

- When the engine is cold, check the engine coolant level relative to the marking on the side of the expansion tank ⇒ Fig. 213.
- If the coolant level in the tank is below the minimum mark (min), add coolant. When the engine is warm, the engine coolant level may be slightly above the upper edge of the marked range.

### Adding engine coolant

- Always protect face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ ⚠.
- Add only **new** engine coolant according to Volkswagen specifications (⇒ *Engine coolant specifications*) ⇒ ⓘ.
- Only refill coolant if there is coolant in the expansion tank. If there is no coolant visible in the expansion tank, the engine could be damaged. If you cannot see any coolant in the expansion tank, **do not drive the vehicle**. Seek professional assistance.
- If you can see coolant in the expansion tank, refill coolant until the level remains stable.
- The engine coolant level must be inside the marks on the side of the expansion tank ⇒ Fig. 213. **Do not fill above the top edge of the filling range!** ⇒ ⓘ

- Screw the lid tightly.
- Even in an emergency, **do not** use any other kind of coolant additive if engine coolant that meets Volkswagen specifications ( → [Engine coolant specifications](#)) is not available! Instead, add **distilled water only** ⇒ ⓘ. As soon as possible, have the correct coolant ratio restored using engine coolant that meets Volkswagen specifications ⇒ [Engine coolant specifications](#).

## ⚠ WARNING

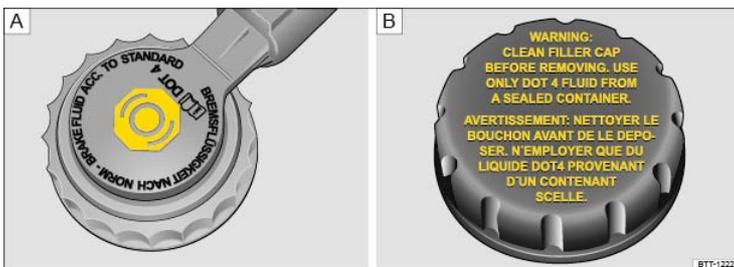
Hot steam and hot engine coolant can cause serious burns.

- Never open the hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the hood:
  - Firmly apply the parking brake and shift the transmission to Park **(P)** (automatic).
  - Take the vehicle key out of the ignition.
  - On vehicles with Keyless Access, make sure that the remote control vehicle key is out of range of the vehicle and that the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the starter button ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#).
  - Always keep children and others away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- The engine coolant system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. Hot coolant can spray out and cause severe burns and other serious injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counterclockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  - Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Never spill fluids on the engine or exhaust system when refilling. Spilling fluids onto hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can cause a fire. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

## ⓘ NOTE

- Use distilled water only when adding coolant! All other types of water contain chemical compounds that can cause extensive corrosion damage to the engine. This can even lead to engine failure. If you have added non-distilled water, take the vehicle immediately to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the coolant system drained, flushed, and refilled completely with the proper coolant.
- Refill engine coolant only up to the top edge of the marked fill range ⇒ [Fig. 213](#). Excess engine coolant may be forced out of the engine cooling system when it gets hot and cause damage.
- In the case of significant engine coolant loss, refill engine coolant only when the engine is *completely cooled down*. Significant engine coolant loss is a sign of leaks in the cooling system. Have the engine cooling system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the engine may be damaged!
- Do not refill engine coolant if there is no coolant in the expansion tank. Air could enter the cooling system. Do not drive the vehicle! Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- When changing or topping off operating fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Serious malfunctions and engine damage can result if you pour operating fluids into the wrong reservoir.

## Brake fluid



**Fig. 215 In the engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir cap (cap design may vary depending on vehicle equipment).**

Brake fluid absorbs water from the air over time. Too much water in the brake fluid will damage the brake system. Water also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. Too much water in the brake fluid can cause vapor lock during heavy brake use or hard braking. Vapor lock reduces braking performance, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure. Your safety and the safety of others depends on brakes that are working properly at all times ⇒ ⚠.

### Brake fluid specifications

Volkswagen has developed a special brake fluid that is optimized for the brake system in your Volkswagen. Volkswagen recommends that you use brake fluid that

expressly conforms to quality standard **VW Standard 501 14** for optimum performance of the brake system. Check the information on the container for the brake fluid you want to use to make sure it meets the requirements for your vehicle.

Brake fluid that complies with **VW Standard 501 14** can be purchased from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If this special brake fluid is not available you may – under these circumstances – use another high quality brake fluid that complies with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4 ⇒ ▲.

Please note, however, that not all brake fluids that comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids can contain chemicals that could, over time, degrade or damage internal parts of the vehicle's brake system.

Volkswagen therefore recommends that you use brake fluid that expressly complies with **VW Standard 501 14** for optimum brake system performance over the long term.

### Brake fluid level

The fluid level in the transparent brake fluid reservoir must always be between the MIN and MAX marking ⇒ ▲.

On some vehicles, engine components may partially block the view of the brake fluid reservoir and make it impossible to see the brake fluid level. If you cannot clearly see the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

### Changing brake fluid

Brake fluid must be changed according to the service schedule in your ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*. Have the brake fluid checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Refill only with new brake fluid that meets the standards listed above.

#### WARNING

Brake failure and reduced brake performance can be caused by not having enough brake fluid in the reservoir or by old or incorrect brake fluid.

- Check the brake system and brake fluid level regularly.
- Always change the brake fluid according to the service schedule in your ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Hard braking with old brake fluid may cause vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking performance, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.
- Always make sure that only the correct brake fluid is used. Only use brake fluid that expressly conforms to VW Standard 501 14 or, if it is not available, only use a high-quality brake fluid that conforms to U.S. Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 requirements.
- Using another brake fluid, or one that is not of high quality, can impair the function of the brake system and reduce its effectiveness. If the container does not say that the brake fluid complies with VW Standard 501 14, or U.S. Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4, do not use it.
- The brake fluid must be new.

#### WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous.

- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use food, beverage or other non-original containers to store brake fluid. Someone might be misled by the original label on the container, or by the shape of the container, and drink the brake fluid. This could occur even if you relabel the container as brake fluid.
- Only store brake fluid in the closed, original container and keep it out of the reach of children.

#### NOTE

Brake fluid will damage vehicle paint, plastic parts, and tires. Wipe any brake fluid off vehicle paint and other vehicle parts immediately.

 Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Brake fluid that has leaked out must be collected and disposed of properly, following all applicable environmental regulations.

## Vehicle battery

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light*

⇒ *Checking the vehicle battery electrolyte level*

⇒ *Charging, replacing, disconnecting, and connecting the vehicle battery*

The standard 12 Volt vehicle battery is part of the vehicle electrical system.

Never do any work on the vehicle electrical system unless you

- know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒ ⚠!

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

### Location of the vehicle battery

The 12 Volt vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment.

### Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

- 👁 Always wear eye protection!
- ⚠ Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
- 🚫 Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are prohibited!
- ⚠ When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is highly explosive!
- 👶 Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries!
- 📖 Always read and follow the information and WARNINGS in this Owner's Manual!

### ⚠ WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, explosions, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system.

- Before working on the electrical system, always switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative (-) cable from the standard 12 Volt battery.
- When you change a light bulb, always switch off the light first.
- Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries in general.
- Always wear eye protection. Never let battery acid or lead particles come into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothing.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive. It can burn unprotected skin and cause blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries, as this could spill acid through the vents and burn you.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and then get immediate medical attention. If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.
- When disconnecting the batteries from the vehicle electrical system, always disconnect the negative cable (-) first and then the positive cable (+).
- Always switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting 12 Volt batteries. Reconnect the plus cable (+) first and then the negative cable (-). Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause a fire.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Do not smoke and avoid fires, sparks, and open flames when working. Never create sparks or electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short circuit the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- Never use or attempt to charge a damaged or frozen battery, or a battery that was frozen but has thawed. Charging a frozen or thawed battery could cause explosions and chemical burns! Replace damaged or frozen vehicle batteries immediately. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- If the battery has a vent line or tube, make sure that it is properly connected to the battery.

### ⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash your hands after handling.

### ! NOTE

- Do not expose the vehicle battery to direct sunlight for an extended period of time as ultraviolet rays may damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in the cold for a long time, protect the vehicle battery from freezing. A battery will be permanently damaged by freezing.



Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, driver personalization, and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

## Warning light

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Proper response
	Alternator malfunction.
	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have the electrical system checked.
	Switch off unnecessary electrical loads. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator as you drive.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Checking the vehicle battery electrolyte level

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Check the electrolyte level of the battery regularly if the vehicle has high mileage (km), in places with a warm climate, and if the vehicle has an old battery. Otherwise the vehicle battery does not require maintenance.

### Preparations

- Prepare the vehicle for work in the engine compartment ⇒ [Preparing to work in the engine compartment](#).
- Open the engine hood ⇒ .

### Checking the vehicle battery acid level

- If the lighting conditions are poor, use a flashlight so that you can clearly see the battery acid level indicator and tell what color it is. Never use an open flame or an unprotected light source.
- The round battery window (acid level indicator) on the top of the battery changes color, depending on the battery's electrolyte level.

Color	Action
<i>Light yellow or colorless</i>	Battery electrolyte level is too low. The vehicle battery may need to be replaced. Have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
<i>Black</i>	Battery electrolyte level is satisfactory.

### WARNING

Working on the batteries can cause serious acid burns, explosion, or electrical shock.

- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive. It can burn unprotected skin and cause blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
- Never tilt the vehicle battery. Acid could spill out of the battery vents and burn you.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and then get immediate medical attention.

- If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.

## Charging, replacing, disconnecting, and connecting the vehicle battery

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

### Charging the vehicle battery

Vehicle batteries should be charged by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility because the factory-installed battery requires a charger with overload protection ⇒ [▲](#).

### Replacing the vehicle battery

The battery in your vehicle is specially developed for its location, with special dimensions and safety features. Before buying a new battery, ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility what batteries are suitable with regard to electro-magnetic compatibility, dimensions, required maintenance, performance, and safety specifications.

Only use maintenance-free vehicle batteries meeting standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must date from October 2014 or later.

Particularly in vehicles with a special vehicle battery, for example, vehicles with the Start-stop system, always replace the vehicle battery with a battery with the same specifications.

Have the battery replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the battery must be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system, note the following:

- Switch off all electrical systems and devices and the ignition.
- Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery; otherwise the alarm system will go off.
- First disconnect the negative cable (-) and then the positive cable (+) ⇒ [▲](#).

### Connecting the vehicle battery

- Prior to reconnecting the battery, switch off all electrical systems and devices and the ignition.
- Connect the positive cable (+) first and then the negative cable (-) ⇒ [▲](#).

After the battery is connected and the ignition is switched on, different indicator lights may light up. They should go out after you drive a short distance at 10–12 mph (15–20 km/h). If the indicator lights do not go out, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the vehicle checked.

If the battery was disconnected for a long time, the next scheduled service may not be correctly calculated and displayed ⇒ [Instrument cluster](#). The maximum permissible service and maintenance intervals are shown in the ⇒ [Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#).

### Vehicles with Keyless Access

If the ignition will not start after reconnecting the vehicle battery, lock the vehicle from the outside and unlock it again ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access](#). Then try to start the ignition again. If the ignition cannot be switched on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop for assistance.

### Automatic electrical load deactivation

If the vehicle battery drain is high, the intelligent onboard electrical system management automatically takes steps to help prevent battery drain.

- The idle speed is increased so that the alternator provides more power.
- The power to devices that consume a lot of electricity is cut back or switched off completely.
- When the engine is started, the power supply to the 12 Volt sockets is temporarily interrupted.

The onboard electrical system management cannot always keep the battery from being drained. For example, the battery will drain if the engine is not running, but the ignition is switched on or the parking lights are left on for a long time when parked.

### What drains the vehicle battery?

- Long periods when the engine is not running, especially when the ignition is on.
- Using electrical systems or devices when the engine is switched off.
- Leaving the vehicle unlocked for several days when not in use.
- Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park (P) when the ignition is switched off ⇒ [Automatic transmission selector lever](#).

Failure to use the proper battery with proper mounting and connections may cause short circuits, fires, and serious personal injuries.

- Always use only maintenance-free or cycle-free, leak-proof batteries with the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.

## WARNING

When the vehicle battery is charged, it produces highly explosive hydrogen gas.

- Charge vehicle batteries only in well-ventilated areas.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed battery. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- You must replace the vehicle battery if it was frozen.
- Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short-circuit. First connect the positive cable (+) and then the negative cable (-).

## NOTE

- Never disconnect the vehicle battery or connect 2 vehicle batteries to each other when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Doing this may damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Never use a vehicle battery that does not meet the specifications for the vehicle battery for your vehicle. Using the wrong battery can damage the electrical system or electronic components and cause electrical malfunctions.
- Never connect power generating equipment, such as a solar panel or battery charger, to the 12 Volt socket in order to charge the vehicle battery. This can damage the vehicle's electrical system.

 Dispose of the vehicle battery according to regulations. Vehicle batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulfuric acid and lead.

 Battery acid can pollute the environment. Catch leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly.

## Tires and wheels

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator light \(telltale\)](#)

⇒ [Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#)

Your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) uses the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) sensors to indirectly check the tire pressure of all 4 tires while you are driving. The sensors monitor the tread circumference (rolling circumference) and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. TPMS warns if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires while the vehicle is moving. Pressure loss is signaled by the indicator light  (described below) as well as by acoustic warnings and text warnings in the instrument cluster display if your vehicle has this display Infotainment system or the Multi-Function Display (MFD).

The original benchmark pressure is the recommended maximum load cold tire inflation pressure for the tires that come with your vehicle. This pressure is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver door jamb ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#). After adjusting the tire pressures in all 4 tires, you must confirm and store the new cold inflation pressures through the Infotainment system, which changes the benchmark pressure to match the current pressure of the tires on your vehicle ⇒ [Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

Recalibrating the TPMS to reset the benchmark cold tire inflation pressure is explained on ⇒ [Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

## WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury or even death.

- When the warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.
- Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure values are listed on a sticker inside the driver door ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#).
- The TPMS can only work correctly when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct cold tire inflation pressure.
- Using incorrect tire pressure values can cause accidents or other damage. Always inflate the tires to the correct specified cold tire pressure values for the tires installed on the vehicle.
- Always maintain correct cold tire inflation pressure so that TPMS can do its job.
- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.

- Driving with underinflated tires causes them to flex (bend) more, letting them get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive carefully and at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS regarding [⇒ Tires and wheels](#).
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change [⇒ Tire inflation pressure](#).

## WARNING

Improper recalibration can cause the TPMS to give false warnings or to give no warning despite dangerously low tire pressure [⇒ Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

 Underinflation increases fuel consumption and tire wear.



Do not rely solely on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. Check your tires regularly to make sure they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tire tread but have not penetrated into the body of tire itself.



When you take delivery of the vehicle, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is calibrated for the factory-recommended cold tire inflation pressure for the tires on your vehicle, as shown on the label inside the driver door [⇒ Tire inflation pressure](#).

- The system must be recalibrated through the Infotainment system whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change [⇒ Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).
- If you have to adjust the tire pressure on a warm tire, fill the tire with 2.0 - 4.35 psi (20 - 30 kPa) more than the pressure specified on the tire pressure label inside the driver door [⇒ Tire inflation pressure](#).
- At the next opportunity, check and adjust the tire pressure on all 4 tires when they are cold. Cold tires are tires that have not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours. Then be sure to recalibrate the TPMS.
- If the TPMS determines that the air pressure in at least one tire is too low, carefully check the pressure in all 4 tires with an accurate tire pressure gauge. Low tire pressure usually cannot be determined by looking at the tire. This is especially true of low-profile tires.



If you have work done on your wheels or tires, inform the workshop that the vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).



New tires may expand slightly the first time they are driven at high speeds, which can trigger a tire pressure warning. Remember that tire pressure can only be properly measured when the tire is cold [⇒ Tire inflation pressure](#).



Only replace old tires with tires that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.

## Indicator light (telltale)

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first [⇒ Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning <a href="#">⇒</a> 	Proper response
	Lights up and a chime may also sound.	 <b>Stop safely as soon as possible!</b>
	The inflation pressure of one or more tires is significantly lower than the benchmark pressure set by the driver or a tire has structural damage. Depending on vehicle equipment, a message may also appear in the instrument cluster display.	Reduce speed immediately! Avoid fast cornering and hard braking!  Check the condition and inflation pressure of all tires. Have damaged tires replaced.

Flashes	Possible cause or meaning → ⚠	Proper response
<p>Flashes for about a minute and then stays on:</p> <p>(L)</p> <p>System malfunction.</p>		<p>Check and, if necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure in all four tires. If the tire pressure is correct, switch the ignition off and back on. If the indicator light flashes again and then stays on or does not go out after checking and adjusting the air pressure in all four tires and recalibrating, take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have the system checked.</p>

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury, or even death.

- When the warning symbol (L) appears in the instrument cluster, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and inspect all tires.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and its stopping ability.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure values are listed on a sticker inside the driver door → [Tire inflation pressure](#).
- The TPMS can only work correctly when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct cold tire inflation pressure. Always maintain the correct cold tire inflation pressure so that TPMS can do its job.
- Using incorrect tire pressure values can cause accidents or other damage. Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure.
- Always inflate the tires to the correct specified cold tire pressure values for the tires installed on the vehicle; see the tire inflation pressure label on the driver door jamb → [Tires and wheels](#).
- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.
- Driving with underinflated tires causes them to flex (bend) more, letting them get too hot, which can result in tread separation, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change the tire or wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS, always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS in the section → [Tires and wheels](#).
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change → [Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper recalibration can cause the TPMS to give false warnings or to give no warning despite dangerously low tire pressure → [Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### ! NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



If the ignition is switched on, an acoustic warning sounds when low tire pressure is detected. An acoustic warning also sounds if a system malfunction is

detected.



Driving for a longer period of time on rough roads or with a dynamic and sporty style can make the TPMS system temporarily unavailable. The indicator light will come on, signaling a malfunction, but will go out again once the road condition or driving style changes.

## Recalibrating the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indirectly checks the tire pressure of all 4 tires while you are driving by using the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) sensors to monitor the tread circumference (rolling circumference) and vibration characteristics of the individual tires.

The tread circumference of a tire can change:

- If a tire's inflation pressure is too low.
- If the tire's tread is damaged or the tire is structurally damaged.
- If one side of the vehicle is more heavily loaded than the other.
- If there is more weight on one axle than the other (such as when towing a trailer).
- If a compact spare wheel has been mounted.
- If a wheel was replaced on each axle.
- If a tire was changed.
- If the tire pressure was changed, or wheels were rotated or replaced.
- If there are snow chains on the tires. Using snow chains can cause the system to give false warnings because snow chains increase tire circumference.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) may not react at first or may not react at all when you are driving in a sporty manner, or on snow-covered or unpaved roads, when you are driving with snow chains, or in certain other situations. A change in the tread circumference of a tire is signaled by the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator in the instrument cluster (telltale).

The tire pressure recommended for the tires originally installed on the vehicle is on a sticker on the driver door jamb ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### Resetting and recalibrating the benchmark tire pressure

Resetting the tire pressures in the Infotainment system resets the benchmark tire pressure used by the TPMS to the current tire pressure in the tires based on the circumference of the tires.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **MENU** Infotainment button ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).
- Tap the Vehicle and function keys to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
- Tap the Tires function key.
- Tap the SET function key in the **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** menu.
- If all 4 wheels are set to the correct values, touch the Confirm function key to store the tire pressures.

- Touching the Cancel button will prevent the current tire pressures from being stored and the system will not be recalibrated.

The recalibration must be performed each time the tire pressure in one or more tires has been adjusted or after one or more tires has been changed, exchanged, or repaired. The new tire pressures are stored in the system only after at least 20 minutes of normal driving.

If you have reset the benchmark tire pressure when your tires do not have the correct tire pressure, this will prevent the TPMS from working properly. It may then give false warnings or may not give any warning even if the tire pressure is too low.

**For this reason, it is vital to make certain that all 4 tires are inflated to the correct pressure when they are cold before calibrating the system.** Cold tires are tires that have not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours.

During normal vehicle operation, the system calibrates itself to the tires installed and the changed tire pressures. The calibrated values are stored and monitored after a long journey at various speeds.

If the wheels are loaded more heavily than normal, for example, if the vehicle is carrying heavy load, the tire pressure must be raised to the recommended full-load tire pressure before recalibration ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

#### Recalibrate the system to reset the benchmark TPMS pressure in the following situations:

- After installing tires on your vehicle that have recommended cold tire inflation pressures that are different from the tires that were taken off.
- After any tire on your vehicle is removed and then remounted, even if the same tire and wheel rim that were taken off are reinstalled (for instance, after repair).
- After any tire on your vehicle is changed and replaced by another tire, even if the replacement tire is the same type and is inflated to the same pressure as the tire it replaced.
- After adjusting the tire pressure of any tire on the vehicle to its correct cold tire inflation pressure, either by putting air in one or more tires or by letting air out. Do this even though air was only added (or let out) to bring the tire to the inflation pressure it should have had all along.
- After rotating the front and rear wheels ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).
- After mounting the compact spare wheel.

#### WARNING

Incorrect recalibration can cause the TPMS to give false warnings or to give no warning despite dangerously low tire pressure. Make certain the tire inflation pressure of all tires is correct before recalibrating the system.

#### WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can cause sudden tire failure, loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Always check and correct air pressure in all 4 tires, particularly after changing, exchanging, or repairing tires.
- After that, always make sure that all 4 tires are inflated to the correct tire pressure for the tires installed on the vehicle. Then recalibrate the system so that it can properly monitor the pressure in the tire.
- See the tire pressure label ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#) and the Owner's Literature for recommended cold tire inflation pressure and other important information.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims, always read and heed all of the information and WARNINGS ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).
- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change.



The Tire Pressure Monitoring System stops working if there is an ESC/ABS malfunction ⇒ [Braking assistance systems](#).



After a low tire pressure warning, the vehicle must stand and must not be driven for at least 1 minute before the new benchmark tire pressures can be stored.

## Important information on tires and wheels

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Tire and wheel handling](#)

⇒ [Wheel rims](#)

⇒ [New and replacement tires](#)

⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#)

⇒ [Tire inflation pressure in cold tires](#)

⇒ *Tread depth and tread wear indicators*

⇒ *Tire wear and damage*

⇒ *Compact spare wheel*

⇒ *Tire labeling*

⇒ *Winter tires*

⇒ *Snow chains*

⇒ *Glossary of tire and loading terminology*

⇒ *Tires and vehicle load limits*

⇒ *Determining the correct load limit*

⇒ *UTQG classification*

Volkswagen recommends that all work on tires and wheels be done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They are familiar with the technical requirements and recommended procedures, have the necessary special tools and spare parts, and can properly dispose of old tires.

#### **WARNING**

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking performance.

- Improper care and handling of tires and wheels can reduce driving safety and cause accidents and severe injuries.
- Install only radial tires of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.
- New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.
- Check tire inflation pressure regularly when the tires are cold and always maintain the prescribed tire pressure. Low tire pressure can cause tires to get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden loss of pressure, and blowouts. Tires with excessively low pressure flex (bend) more, which can cause the tire to overheat and fail suddenly without warning.
- Check tires regularly for wear and damage.
- Never drive with worn or damaged tires (for example, tires with punctures, cuts, cracks, blisters, or bumps). Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of vehicle control, sudden tire failure including blowouts and sudden deflation, crashes, and serious personal injuries.
- Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.
- Never exceed the maximum speed rating or the maximum load rating of the tires on your vehicle.
- The effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and the braking support systems depends on the tire traction.
- If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage.
- To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes, and serious personal injuries, never loosen the bolts on wheels with bolted rim rings.
- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their past use. Old, used tires and wheels may have damage that cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds, causing loss of vehicle control, accidents, and severe personal injuries. Tires that are more than 6 years old can be used only in an emergency and even then only with special care and at low speed.

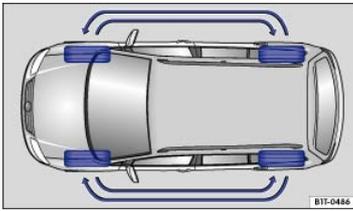
#### **WARNING**

Improperly tightened or missing wheel bolts can come loose while driving, causing loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injuries.

- Never drive with missing or loose wheel bolts.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed for your vehicle and for the wheel being installed.
- Always tighten the wheel bolts to the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the wheel bolts with a lug wrench and have the torque checked as soon as possible by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



For technical reasons it is usually not possible to use wheel rims from other vehicles. Even wheel rims from the same model may not fit properly. Check with an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if necessary.



**Fig. 216 Tire rotation diagram.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are very important, since their small patches of rubber are the only contact between your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, and regularly inspecting tires for damage (such as cuts, slashes, irregular wear, and overall condition) are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure, including tread separation and blowout.

The tires and wheels are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and wheels approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle for good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated.

### Avoiding tire damage

- If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive very slowly and as much as possible at a right angle to the curb with the tire tread of both front wheels contacting the curb at the same time.
- Regularly check tires for damage, such as punctures, cuts, tears and blisters.
- Remove embedded material in the tread profile that **has not yet penetrated the inside of the tire** ⇒ *Tire wear and damage*.
- Heed all warning messages from the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.
- Replace worn or damaged tires immediately ⇒ *Tire wear and damage*.
- Damage to tires and wheels is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires is damaged. The tires must be checked immediately for **hidden damage** by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. See also ⇒ *Tire wear and damage*.
- Never exceed the load and permissible maximum speed rating of the tires ⇒ *Tire labeling*.
- Always keep aggressive chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires, including the compact spare wheel ⇒ .
- Replace missing valve caps immediately.

### Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation ⇒ *Tire labeling*. Unidirectional tires must always be mounted according to the specified direction of rotation in order to deliver their best grip, braking performance, low road noise, and good wear as well as good hydroplaning resistance.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

### Rotating tires

To help ensure even wear on all tires, regular tire rotation according to the diagram ⇒ *Fig. 216* is recommended. In this way all tires can have about the same service life.

Volkswagen recommends that you have your tires rotated by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Tires more than 6 years old

Tires age even if they are not being used. Physical and chemical processes reduce tire strength and performance and cause them to harden and become brittle. Old tires can fail suddenly and without warning.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tires that are 6 years and older. This also applies to tires that look new (including the tire on the compact spare wheel) or that seem to still be usable with tread depth that has not yet reached the legal minimum depth ⇒ .

The age of each tire can be determined with the manufacturing date that is part of the U.S. DOT tire identification number ( **TIN**) ⇒ *Tire labeling*.

### Tire storage

Mark tires before removing them to help make sure that the previous location (left, right, front, rear) and rolling direction can be maintained when remounting them. Store tires in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Do **not** store tires mounted on wheels standing up.

Tires not mounted on wheels should be covered to help protect them from dirt and stored vertically (sitting on the tread).

## Lower profile tires (low aspect ratio tires)

Lower profile tires have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter, and lower sidewalls than conventional wheel/tire combinations ⇒ ⓘ. Lower profile tires can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may, however, result in a less comfortable ride, for example, on uneven road surfaces.

### ⚠ WARNING

Aggressive fluids and materials can cause visible and invisible tire damage that can cause tire blowouts.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, grease, fuels, braking fluids and other aggressive substances away from tires.

### ⚠ WARNING

Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds, causing loss of vehicle control, accidents, and severe personal injuries.

- Tires that are more than 6 years old can be used only in an emergency and even then only with special care and at low speed.

### ⓘ NOTE

Tires and rims, especially lower profile tires and their rims, can be severely damaged and even destroyed by driving through potholes or over curbs and other obstacles.

♻ Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements.

## Wheel rims

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different wheels are installed, wheel bolts with the right length and bolt head shape must be used. This helps to ensure that wheels can be mounted securely and that the brakes will work correctly ⇒ *Changing a wheel*.

In most cases, you cannot use wheel bolts from a different vehicle. Even wheel rims from the same model may not fit properly.

Tires and wheel rims approved by Volkswagen have been matched precisely to your vehicle model and contribute considerably to good handling and safe vehicle performance.

The wheel bolt tightening torque must be checked regularly with an accurate torque wrench.

### Tightening torque

Wheel bolts must always be installed with the correct tightening torque ⇒ *Changing a wheel*. The required tightening torque for your vehicle's wheel bolts is **103 f lbs (140 Nm)**. After changing a wheel, the bolt torque must be checked as soon as possible with an accurate torque wrench. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Wheel rims with bolted rim rings

Wheel rims with bolted rim rings have several parts. The parts are bolted together with special screws in a special process. This helps to ensure that they will work properly, prevent leaks, run true and safely. Damaged wheel rims must be replaced, and you must never take them apart or try to repair them yourself. Have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility repair them for you ⇒ ⚠.

### Wheel rims with bolted decorative covers

Light-alloy wheels may have interchangeable decorative covers attached to the rim with self-locking screws. If you want to replace damaged wheel covers, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ ⚠.

### ⚠ WARNING

Using improper or damaged wheel rims can affect driving safety, cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Use only wheel rims approved for the vehicle.
- Regularly check wheel rims for damage and replace them if necessary.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper loosening and tightening of the bolts on wheel rims with bolted rim rings can cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Never loosen bolted connections on wheel rims with bolted rim rings.
- Have all work on wheel rims with bolted rim rings performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## New and replacement tires

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

## New tires

- Drive a vehicle with new tires especially carefully for the first 350 miles (560 km) because the tires must first be *broken in*. Tires that are not broken in have reduced traction and braking performance ⇒ .
- Install only radial tires of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.
- The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and manufacturers because of different design features and tread design.

## Replacing tires

- Tires should be replaced in pairs and not individually (both front tires or both rear tires at the same time) ⇒ .
- Replace tires only with tires that have the same specifications, including width and diameter, load and top speed rating as the tires approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model.
- Never use tires that are larger or wider than the dimensions of the tires approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model. Larger tires could scrape and rub on the vehicle body or other parts of the vehicle.

**Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) considerations:** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

### WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in.

- Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.

### WARNING

Tires must have the required clearance. Tires that do not have enough clearance can rub against parts of the vehicle body, suspension, and brake system, causing brake system failure, tread delamination, and sudden blowouts.

- Always make sure that new tires are not larger than the tires approved for your vehicle and that the new tires do not rub against parts of the vehicle.

### NOTE

- When switching to different tires, make certain the valves are not damaged.
- Never drive without valve stem caps. The valves could be damaged.

Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements.



If the replacement wheel is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle — for example, winter tires, wider, low-profile tires, or a compact spare — only use the replacement wheel for a short time and drive cautiously.

- Replace it with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.



Although tire size specifications can be the same, the actual dimensions may differ from those nominal values for different tire makes, or the tire contours may be significantly different.

## Tire inflation pressure



Fig. 217 On the driver door jamb: Location of the tire inflation pressure label.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The correct tire inflation pressure for the factory-installed tires is listed on a label. The factory-installed tires may be summer, winter, or all-season tires. The label ⇒ Fig. 217 is on the driver door jamb.

Under- or over-inflation significantly shortens the service life of your tires and affects the handling of the vehicle ⇒ . The correct tire pressure is very important, particularly when the vehicle is driven at **higher speeds**. Incorrect tire pressure causes increased wear and even sudden tire failure and blowouts.

Therefore, tire pressure should be checked at least once a month and always before long trips.

The specified tire inflation pressure applies to a **cold tire**. When tires are warm, the pressure will be higher than when the tires are cold.

Do not reduce the tire pressure on warm tires to match the required cold tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure would then be too low and could cause sudden tire failure and blowout.

### Checking tire inflation pressure

Always check the tire pressure only on cold tires when the vehicle has not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours

- Check tire inflation pressure regularly and on cold tires. Check all the tires, including the compact spare, if any. In colder climates tire pressure should be checked more often, but only when the tires are cold. Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge.
- After adjusting the tire inflation pressures, make sure to screw the valve caps back on; replace missing valve caps immediately. Please read and heed the information on resetting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), if necessary → [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).
- Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle. Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Inflate a **spare wheel** to the pressure specified for the vehicle's road wheels on the tire pressure label; inflate a **compact spare wheel** to the pressure specified for the compact spare on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one.

### ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can cause a sudden tire failure or blowout, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct cold tire pressure before driving off.
- Low tire pressure can cause tires to get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden loss of pressure, and blowouts. Tires with excessively low pressure flex (bend) more, which can cause the tire to overheat and fail suddenly without warning.
- Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Regularly check tire inflation pressure, at least once a month, and also especially before a long trip.
- Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure.

### ! NOTE

- Make sure not to jam the tire pressure gauge into the valve stem. Otherwise, you can damage the tire valves.
- Driving without valve caps, with the wrong valve caps, or with valve caps that are not properly screwed on can damage the tire valves. To help prevent damage, always use valve stem caps like those originally installed at the factory. The caps must be screwed on tightly. Do not use metal valve caps or comfort valve stem caps.

🌸 Underinflation increases fuel consumption.



When the TPMS warns that the pressure in at least one tire is too low, check the tire pressure in all 4 tires with an accurate tire pressure gauge. Low tire pressure usually cannot be spotted by looking at the tire. This is especially true for low-profile tires. When checking the tire pressures, refer to → [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

## Tire inflation pressure in cold tires

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

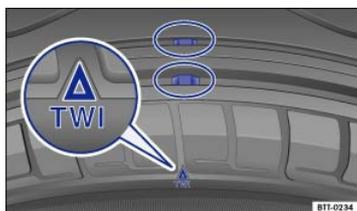
Engine	Tire size	Standard tire pressure (full load)		
		psi	kPa	bar
	215/65 R17 99H	38	260	2.6
	235/55 R18 100H	36	250	2.5
	235/50 R19 99H	38	260	2.6
	235/45 R20 96/100H	42	290	2.9

Front-wheel drive

Engine	Tire size	Standard tire pressure (full load)		
		psi	kPa	bar
	255/45 R19 100H	36	250	2.5
	255/40 R20 101H	42	290	2.9
	215/65 R17 99H	41	280	2.8
	235/55 R18 100H	38	260	2.6
<b>All-wheel drive</b>	235/50 R19 99H	41	280	2.8
<b>(4MOTION)</b>	235/45 R20 96/100H	45	310	3.1
	255/45 R19 100H	39	270	2.7
	255/40 R20 101H	44	300	3.0
<b>Compact spare wheel</b>	T145/85 R18	60	420	4.2

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is configured at the factory with the correct tire inflation pressure applicable for the vehicle model, engine and factory installed tires. The tire inflation pressure is listed on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver door jamb ⇒ *Fig. 217*. The tire inflation pressures for the road tires are listed on this label. The inflation pressure for the compact spare is as specified on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one. In the event of a discrepancy between the above figures and the tire pressures listed on the tire inflation pressure label, the pressures listed on the label are the ones you should use. The listed pressure applies to all road tires. The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be recalibrated whenever you change or adjust the cold tire inflation pressures or remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

## Tread depth and tread wear indicators



**Fig. 218 Tread pattern: Wear indicator.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### Tread depth

Most driving situations require as much tread depth as possible and similar tread depth for the tires on the front and rear wheels. This is especially true when driving in winter weather, at low temperatures and under wet conditions ⇒ .

In most countries the legally permissible minimum tread depth is 1/16 in. (1.6 mm), as measured in tread grooves next to the wear indicators. Please be sure to observe country-specific legal requirements.

**Winter tires** are no longer suitable for winter operation once the tread pattern is worn down to a depth of 3/16 in. (4.8 mm).

The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and manufacturers because of the different design features and tread patterns.

Make sure to use snow chains when required and to install them only on the approved tire and rim combinations ⇒ *Snow chains*.

### Tread wear indicator (TWI) in the tire

The 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) high wear indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves of the original tires running across the treads ⇒ *Fig. 218*. Several wear indicators are evenly spaced around the tire. Markings on the sides of the tires (for example TWI or symbols) show the position of the wear indicators.

Wear indicators show when the tires are worn down. The tires must be replaced no later than when the tread pattern is worn down to the wear indicators.

## ⚠ WARNING

Worn tires are dangerous and can cause loss of vehicle control including serious personal injuries.

- Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators, replace them sooner.
- Worn tires do not grip the road properly, especially on wet roads, increasing your risk of hydroplaning and loss of control.
- Worn tires reduce the ability of your vehicle to handle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distances and the risk of skidding.

## Tire wear and damage

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Wheel rim and tire damage is often difficult to see. Unusual **vibrations** or **pulling to one-side** can be an indication of tire damage ⇒ ⚠.

- If you suspect tire damage, immediately reduce speed!
- Check tires and wheel rims for damage.
- If a tire is damaged, do not drive any farther. Change the damaged wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel*. If necessary, get expert assistance.
- If no external damage is visible, slowly and carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

### Objects embedded in the tire

- If embedded objects have penetrated to the inside of the tire, do not remove them! If objects are stuck in the tread grooves of the tire, they can be removed.
- If necessary, change the damaged wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel*. If necessary, get professional assistance to change the wheel.
- Check tire pressure and adjust if necessary.

### Tire wear

Tire wear depends on several factors, including:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Wheel alignment.

*Driving style* – Fast cornering, hard acceleration and braking increase tire wear. If you experience increased tire wear under normal driving conditions, have the vehicle suspension checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

*Unbalanced wheels* – The wheels on a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, various conditions can cause a wheel to become unbalanced. Unbalanced wheels can cause wear to the steering and suspension systems. Have all wheels rebalanced. A wheel must always be rebalanced if a new tire has been mounted.

*Wheel alignment* – Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive and uneven tire wear, impairing vehicle safety. If you notice excessive or uneven tire wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## ⚠ WARNING

Unusual vibrations or pulling to one side can indicate tire damage.

- Reduce speed immediately and stop when it is safe to do so.
- Check tires and wheel rims for damage.
- Never drive with a damaged tire or rim. Get expert assistance instead.
- If no external damage is visible, slowly and carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

## Compact spare wheel



Fig. 219 In the luggage compartment for vehicles with seven seats: Pull straps to lift third row bench and access the compact spare wheel.



**Fig. 220 In the luggage compartment: Handwheel holding the compact spare wheel in place.**

**Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒ **Introduction to the subject**

#### **Removing the compact spare wheel (vehicles with five seats)**

- Open the trunk lid, lift up the entire luggage compartment floor, and hook the strap in place to keep it raised ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
- Pull the securing clip ⇒ *Fig. 220①* (if equipped) out and up.
- Completely unscrew the threaded retainer in the center of the compact spare wheel ⇒ *Fig. 220②* counterclockwise.
- If applicable: Remove the subwoofer ⇒ *Removing the subwoofer*.
- Remove the compact spare wheel.

#### **Removing the compact spare wheel (vehicles with seven seats)**

- Open the trunk lid and remove the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
- Fold the third row backrests forward, if necessary ⇒ *Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place*.
- Pull the guide panel located behind the third row seat backrests up and remove it to access the pull straps (arrows).
- Pull both straps at the same time toward you (arrows) and lift the third row of seats up slightly. A gas-pressure strut lifts the third row bench up as far as it will go and holds it in the raised position so you can access the spare wheel well.
- Pull the securing clip ⇒ *Fig. 220①* (if equipped) out and up.
- Completely unscrew the threaded retainer in the center of the compact spare wheel ⇒ *Fig. 220②* counterclockwise.
- If applicable: Remove the subwoofer ⇒ *Removing the subwoofer*.
- Remove the compact spare wheel.

#### **Stowing the replaced wheel (vehicles with five seats)**

- Open the trunk lid, lift up the entire luggage compartment floor, and hook the strap in place to keep it raised ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
- If the wheel you took off the vehicle fits in the spare wheel well, position it so that the center hole of the rim is aligned with the threaded pin in the center of the well.
- Turn the handwheel clockwise until the wheel is securely in place.
- Insert the securing clip ① (if equipped) in the stud slot so that the handwheel can no longer be turned.
- If necessary, return the vehicle tool kit to its location in the luggage compartment.
- Reinstall the luggage compartment floor.
- Close the trunk lid.

If the replaced wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, stow it securely in the luggage compartment on top of the floor covering.

#### **Stowing the replaced wheel (vehicles with seven seats)**

- Open the trunk lid and remove the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment floor*.
- Fold the third row backrests forward, if necessary ⇒ *Folding the third row of seats forward and back into place*.
- Pull the guide panel located behind the third row seat backrests up and remove it to access the pull straps (arrows).
- Pull both straps at the same time toward you (arrows) and lift the third row of seats up slightly. A gas-pressure strut lifts the third row bench up as far as it will go and holds it in the raised position so you can access the spare wheel well.
- If the wheel you took off the vehicle fits in the spare wheel well, position it so that the center hole of the rim is aligned with the threaded pin in the center of the well.
- Press the third row seat backrests down until they are securely latched in place.
- Turn the handwheel clockwise until the wheel is securely in place.
- Insert the securing clip ① (if equipped) in the stud slot so that the handwheel can no longer be turned.
- If necessary, return the vehicle tool kit to its location in the luggage compartment.
- Push the third row bench back into place with your hand until it is securely locked and latched.

- Reinstall the luggage compartment floor.
- Close the trunk lid.

If the replaced wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, stow it securely in the luggage compartment on top of the floor covering.

### Differences between the road tires and the compact spare

The compact spare is different in design from the road tires and must be used only in the event of a flat tire, only for a brief time, and only when driving with extra caution ⇒ .

Replace it with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

#### Please heed the following:

- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h)!
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration, hard braking, and fast cornering!
- Do not use snow chains on the compact spare wheel ⇒ [Snow chains](#).
- After installing the compact spare wheel, check the tire pressure as soon as possible ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#).

Check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare whenever you check the tire pressure of the road wheels, at least once a month. Inflate a **compact spare wheel** to the cold tire pressure specified for the compact spare on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one.

### WARNING

Improper use of a compact spare wheel can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, and serious personal injury.

- Never use a compact spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- In some vehicles, the compact spare wheel is smaller than the original tire. A smaller compact spare wheel is identified with a sticker and the words 50 mph or 80 km/h. This is the maximum permissible speed when driving with this tire.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare wheel. Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering!
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) if a compact spare wheel is installed.
- Replace the compact spare with a normal wheel and tire as soon as possible. Compact spare wheels are designed for brief use only.
- Regularly check the U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) to determine the age of the compact spare wheel ⇒ [Tire labeling](#). Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at higher speeds.
- Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.
- The compact spare wheel must always be secured with the wheel bolts provided by the factory.
- Never drive using more than one compact spare wheel.
- After installing the compact spare wheel, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#).
- Snow chains cannot be used on the compact spare wheel. If you must use snow chains and have a compact spare wheel mounted, move the compact spare wheel to the rear axle if a front tire has to be replaced. The tire taken off the rear axle can then be used to replace the flat front tire. Be sure you do not change the tire's direction of rotation. Install the snow chains on the full-sized road tire.

### NOTE

When the spare wheel or compact spare is being used, the TPMS indicator light can start flashing after about 10 minutes ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

-  If possible, attach the compact spare wheel or the wheel you took off the vehicle securely in the luggage compartment.

## Tire labeling

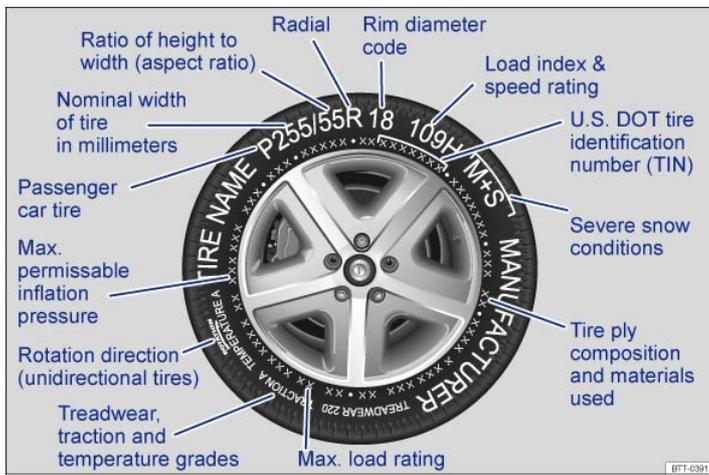


Fig. 221 International tire labeling.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ Introduction to the subject

Knowing about tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct replacement tires. Radial tires have specifications marked on the sidewall.

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning	
Brand, Logo	Manufacturer	
Tire name	Individual tire designation of the manufacturer.	
P255 / 55 R 18	Dimensions:	
	P	Tire application: Passenger car
	255	Nominal sidewall-to-sidewall width of tire in millimeters.
	55	Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
	R	Tire belt design letter code for radial.
18	Rim diameter (in inches)	
109 H	Load rating code ⇒ <i>Load rating code</i> and speed rating code ⇒ <i>Speed rating code letter</i> .	
XL	Indicates reinforced tire (heavy-duty)	
M+S or M/S	Indicates Mud and Snow capability (also M/S) ⇒ <i>Winter tires</i> .	
RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tire.	
E4 ...	Labeling according to international regulations (E) including number of the approving country. The multi-digit approval number is listed next.	
DOT BT RA TY5 1709	Tire identification number ( <b>TIN</b> ) <sup>a)</sup> – In some cases the manufacturing date is only on one side of the tire:	
	DOT	The tire complies with the requirements of the United States Department of Transportation, responsible for issuing safety standards.
	BT	Identification letter of the manufacturing site.

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning	
	RA	Manufacturer information regarding tire dimensions.
	TY5	Tire characteristics provided by the manufacturer.
	1709	Manufacturing date: 17th week in 2009.
TWI	Marks the position of the treadwear indicator ⇒ <i>Tread depth and tread wear indicators</i> .	
Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.	
MAX LOAD 615 KG (1356 LBS)	United States maximum load rating per wheel.	
MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)	United States maximum permissible inflation pressure.	
ROTATION	Rotation direction (unidirectional tires)	
SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Tire ply composition and materials used:  1 layer of rayon.	
TREAD 4 PLIES  1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Tire tread composition and materials used:  In this example there are 4 layers under the tread: 1 layer of rayon, 2 layers of steel belt and 1 layer of nylon.	
<b>Consumer information regarding comparison to specified base tires (standardized test procedure) ⇒ ▲ ⇒ UTQG classification :</b>		
TREADWEAR 220	Relative service life expectancy of the tire referenced to a U.S.-specific standard test.	
TRACTION A	Traction rating under wet conditions (AA, A, B or C).	
TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tire at increased test bench speeds (A, B or C).	
<b>Additional numbers found on the tire could either be tire manufacturer internal labels or country-specific labels (such as for Brazil and China).</b>		

### Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation. Make sure you mount the tire so that it rotates in the proper direction. The tire's performance with regard to hydroplaning, traction, noise, and wear is worse if it is not mounted in the proper direction of rotation.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

### Load rating code

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load per individual tire in pounds (kilograms).

<b>91</b>	1356 lbs (615 kg)
<b>92</b>	1388 lbs (630 kg)
<b>93</b>	1433 lbs (650 kg)
<b>95</b>	1521 lbs (690 kg)
<b>97</b>	1609 lbs (730 kg)
<b>98</b>	1653 lbs (750 kg)

<b>99</b>	1709 lbs (775 kg)
<b>100</b>	1763 lbs (800 kg)
<b>101</b>	1819 lbs (825 kg)
<b>102</b>	1874 lbs (850 kg)
<b>103</b>	1929 lbs (875 kg)
<b>104</b>	1984 lbs (900 kg)
<b>110</b>	2337 lbs (1060 kg)

### Speed rating code letter

The speed rating code letter indicates the maximum permissible road speed of the tires.

<b>P</b>	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
<b>Q</b>	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
<b>R</b>	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
<b>S</b>	up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
<b>T</b>	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
<b>U</b>	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
<b>H</b>	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
<b>V</b>	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)
<b>Z</b>	over 149 mph (240 km/h)
<b>W</b>	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)
<b>Y</b>	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)

Some tire manufacturers label tires with a maximum permissible road speed above 149 mph (240 km/h) with the letter combination ZR.

### WARNING

Using incorrect or unmatched tires and/or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.

- Always use tires, wheels and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of the original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, the same size (tread circumference), and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.
- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.
- Overloading tires can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over- or underinflated.

<sup>a)</sup> TIN represents the serial number of the tire.

## Winter tires

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Winter tires improve the handling characteristics of your vehicle significantly when driving under wintry road conditions. Summer tires have less traction on snow and ice because of their design (width, rubber composition, tread design). Volkswagen strongly recommends that you always have winter tires or all-season tires installed on all 4 wheels on your vehicle, especially when winter road conditions are expected. Winter tires also improve the vehicle's braking performance and help reduce stopping distances during winter weather. Volkswagen recommends installing winter tires once temperatures are below +45 °F (+7 °C).

Winter tires are no longer suitable for winter driving once the **tread pattern** is worn down to a depth of 3/16 in (4.8 mm). In addition, winter tire performance decreases with **age** – independent of the tread profile depth.

### When using winter tires:

- Obey state and country-specific legal requirements.
- Install winter tires on all 4 wheels.
- Use winter tires only under wintry road conditions.
- Only use winter tires with dimensions approved for the vehicle.
- Use only winter tires of the same tire belt design, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and the same tread design.
- Follow speed restrictions according to the winter tire's speed rating code letter ⇒ .

## Speed restrictions

Winter tires are certified up to a top speed identified by speed rating code letters on the sidewall ⇒ [Tire labeling](#).

In appropriately equipped vehicles, the speed warning can be set and changed in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the **Vehicle**,  and **Tires** function keys ⇒ [Infotainment system operation and displays](#).

Top speed rating and tire inflation pressure for **V winter tires** depend on the engine installed in your vehicle. Be sure to ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the maximum permissible speed and the required tire inflation pressure for the winter tires that you plan to use.

## All-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with all-wheel drive and standard road wheels have good forward motion and traction even under wintry road conditions. However, Volkswagen recommends installing winter tires or all season tires on *all 4* wheels to improve handling as well as *braking performance*.

If you use **snow chains**, please read and heed information and directions ⇒ [Snow chains](#).

### WARNING

Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were designed can cause sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious personal injuries.

- Winter tires have a maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.
- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.
- Never exceed the maximum load rating for the winter tires installed on your vehicle.

 Install summer tires promptly in the spring. Summer tires offer better handling characteristics for temperatures above +45 °F (+7 °C). They are quieter, do not wear as quickly, and reduce fuel consumption.

 The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated whenever you remove and remount or change any wheel or tire on the vehicle, even if the reinstalled or replacement wheels and tires are identical to those that were removed and even if the tire pressure does not change ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

 If necessary, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about permissible winter tire dimensions.

## Snow chains

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Obey local regulations as well as the applicable speed limits when driving with snow chains.

Snow chains improve forward motion, traction and braking characteristics under wintry conditions.

Snow chains may only be used on tire and wheel combinations that have been approved by Volkswagen. This applies even to **all-wheel drive vehicles** (4MOTION). **Snow chains may only be used on the front wheels and only on the following tire and wheel combinations:**

Tire size	Rim
215/65 R17	7 J x 17 ET40

Please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about appropriate wheel, tire and snow chain dimensions.

If possible, use only chains with low profile links that are not thicker than 19/32 in. (13.5 mm) including the tensioner.

Remove center hubcaps and decorative rim rings before installing snow chains ⇒ . However, for safety reasons, caps must be installed on the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

## Compact spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains cannot be used on the compact spare wheel ⇒ [Compact spare wheel](#).

If you must use snow chains and have a compact spare wheel mounted, move the compact spare wheel to the rear axle if a front tire has to be replaced. The tire taken off the rear axle can then be used to replace the flat front tire. Be sure to install the unidirectional tires so that they will run in the proper direction. Volkswagen recommends installing the snow chains before mounting the wheel to the vehicle.

### WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains or installing snow chains improperly can cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always use the proper snow chains.
- Follow the installation instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the permissible speed limit when driving with snow chains.

#### NOTE

- Remove snow chains when roads are free of snow. Otherwise, the chains can damage the tires, impair vehicle handling and can be quickly worn down.
- Snow chains can scratch or damage wheel rims if they have direct contact with the rims. Volkswagen recommends using coated snow chains.

## Glossary of tire and loading terminology

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Accessory weight

The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, electro-mechanical power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### Aspect ratio

The ratio of sidewall height to tire width, expressed as a percentage. A number of 50 (0.5:1 or 50%) means that the cross-sectional height is 50% of the tread width. A shorter sidewall can improve steering response and provide better overall handling, for example, on dry pavement.

### Bead

The part of a tire made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords, with the shape and structure to ensure proper fit to the wheel rim.

### Bead separation

A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

### Carcass

The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load.

### Chunking

The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall.

### Cord

The strands of material forming the plies in the tire.

### Cord separation

The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds.

### Cracking

Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or inner liner of the tire extending to cord material.

### Cold tire inflation pressure

The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

### Curb weight

The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioner, and additional weight of optional equipment.

### Extra load tire

A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

### Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured where the tire contacts the ground.

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum loaded weight of the vehicle.

### Groove

The space between 2 adjacent tread ribs.

### **Load rating (code)**

The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### **Maximum load rating**

The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

### **Maximum loaded vehicle weight**

The total of:

- Curb weight.
- Accessory weight.
- Vehicle capacity weight.
- Production options weight.

### **Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure**

The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called maximum inflation pressure.

### **Normal occupant weight**

Means 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

### **Occupant distribution**

The placement of passengers in a vehicle.

### **Outer diameter**

The diameter of a new, properly inflated tire.

### **Overall width**

Total width measured at the exterior sidewalls of an inflated tire, including the additional width of labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

### **Passenger car tire**

A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 pounds or less.

### **Ply**

A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

### **Ply separation**

A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies.

### **Pneumatic tire**

A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric, and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contain the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

### **Production options weight**

The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) more than the standard items they replace, and not previously considered as curb weight or accessory weight. These include, for example, heavy-duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy-duty battery, and special trim.

### **Radial ply tires**

A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

### **Recommended inflation pressure**

The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

### **Reinforced tire**

A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

### **Rim**

The outer edge of a wheel upon which the tire beads are seated.

### **Rim diameter**

The nominal diameter of the wheel's tire bead seating surface. If you change your wheel size, to wheels of a different diameter, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheels.

### **Rim size**

Designation means rim diameter and width.

### **Rim type designation**

The industry or manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code.

### **Rim width**

The nominal distance between wheel rim flanges.

### **Section width**

The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling decoration, or protective bands.

### **Sidewall**

The portion of a tire between the bead and the tread.

### **Sidewall separation**

The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall.

### **Speed rating (letter code)**

A standardized letter code indicating the maximum speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) P to 186 mph (300 km/h) Y.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall ⇒ [Tire labeling](#). You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### **Tire Pressure Monitoring System**

A system that detects when at least one of a vehicle's tires is underinflated and illuminates a low tire-pressure warning light.

### **Tread**

The portion of a tire that normally touches the road.

### **Tread rib**

A tread section running circumferentially around a tire.

### **Tread separation**

Tire failure caused by the tread pulling away from the tire carcass.

### **Tread wear indicators (TWI)**

Raised areas within the main tread grooves that show, visually, when tires are worn and near the end of their useful life ⇒ [Tread depth and tread wear indicators](#)

### **Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG)**

A tire information system developed by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers compare tires. UTQG is not a safety rating, nor is it a guarantee that a tire will last for a certain number of miles or perform a certain way. It gives tire buyers more information to compare with factors such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in 3 areas: tread wear, traction and temperature resistance. UTQG information is molded into the tire sidewalls.

### **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

A tire's serial number. It begins with the letters DOT (Department of Transportation) and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next 2 numbers or letters indicate the plant where the tire was manufactured. The last 4 numbers represent the week and year of manufacture.

For example, the numbers 1709 mean that the tire was produced in the 17th week of 2009. Any other numbers are marketing codes used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to help identify affected consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### **Vehicle capacity weight**

The total rated cargo, luggage and passenger load. Passenger load is 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity (as listed on the label inside the driver door).

### **Vehicle maximum load on the tire**

The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight (GAWR) and dividing by 2.

### **Vehicle normal load on the tire**

The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed according to the table below) and dividing by 2.

### Wheel size designation

Wheel rim diameter and width.

### Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2, 3, or 4	2	2 in front
5 or 7	3	2 in front, 1 in back

## Tires and vehicle load limits

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There are limits to the load any vehicle or any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can damage important parts of the vehicle. Overloading can also lead to blowout, sudden loss of pressure or other tire failure that can cause loss of control.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**.

The GVWR includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory-installed and other accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry (seating capacity) with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle weight. At altitudes above 3000 ft (1000 m), combined towing weight (vehicle plus trailer) must be reduced by 10% for every 3000 ft (1000 m).

**The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** is the maximum load that can be carried at each of the vehicle's 2 axles (by the front or rear tires). GVWR and GAWR are listed on the safety compliance label on the driver door jamb. Your vehicle has either 7 total seating positions (2 in the front, 3 in the second row) or 7 total seating positions (2 in the front, 3 in the second row, and 2 in the third row). Each seating position has a safety belt. Because there is an upper limit to your vehicle's total weight (GVWR), the weight of whatever is being carried (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is also limited. More passengers, or passengers who are heavier than the assumed 150 lbs (68 kg), mean that less weight can be carried as luggage or other cargo. The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry.

### WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle in a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

## Determining the correct load limit

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Never overload tires. The following example illustrates how to determine the combined weight of all vehicle occupants and luggage or other vehicle payloads. Never overload the vehicle!

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit:	
1.	Locate the statement THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇒ <i>Tire inflation pressure</i> .
2.	Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3.	Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

4.	<p>The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.</p> <p>For example, if the XXX amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)</p>
5.	Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6.	If your vehicle is capable of towing a trailer: The load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.
	Check the tire sidewall to determine the load index specified for the tire.

## UTQG classification

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. Example:

- Treadwear (number)
- Traction: AA, A, B or C
- Temperature: A, B or C

For example: Treadwear 200, Traction AA, Temperature A.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 (Treadwear-value 150) would wear one-and-one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇒ .

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat, and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law ⇒ .

## WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

## WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wheel trim

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Wheel covers*

⇒ *Wheel bolt caps*

#### WARNING

Unsuitable wheel covers and improper installation of wheel covers can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Improperly installed wheel covers can come loose while driving and endanger other motorists and cyclists.
- Do not use damaged wheel covers.
- Always make sure that the flow of air for brake system cooling is not blocked or reduced before installing wheel covers. This applies to both factory-installed wheel covers and aftermarket wheel covers. Insufficient air supply may significantly increase stopping distance.

#### NOTE

To help prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing wheel covers and be sure to install them properly.

## Wheel covers

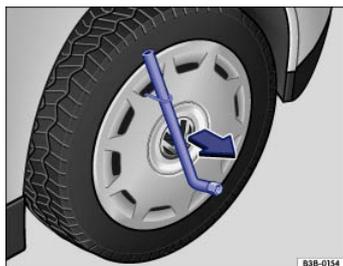


Fig. 222 Pulling the wheel cover off.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Pulling off the wheel cover

- Take the lug wrench and wire clip out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Place the wire clip hook in one of the openings of the wheel cover.
- Slide the lug wrench through the clip ⇒ Fig. 222 and pull the wheel cover off in the direction of the arrow.

### Installing the wheel cover

- Screw the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) into position ⇒ Fig. 225② or ③ in relation to the position of the tire valve. Otherwise, the wheel cover cannot be installed.
- Align the valve cutout with the valve ⇒ Fig. 225①, and press the wheel cover onto the wheel rim.

## Wheel bolt caps



Fig. 223 Pulling cover caps off wheel bolts.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

- Take the wire clip out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Insert the wire clip through the opening of the cover cap ⇒ *Fig. 223* and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps are designed to protect the wheel bolts and should be installed again after the wheel change.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** (if equipped) has a separate cap. This only fits the anti-theft wheel bolt, but not the standard wheel bolts.

## Changing a wheel

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Preparations for changing a wheel*

⇒ *Wheel bolts*

⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack*

⇒ *Changing a wheel*

⇒ *After changing a wheel*

Change a wheel by yourself only if the vehicle is parked in a safe location, you are familiar with safety procedures and the technical steps, and you have proper tools available. Otherwise, get expert assistance.

The vehicle jack can only be safely used to change the wheel on a vehicle that has **only one** flat or damaged tire. If the vehicle does not have the support it needs from 3 fully inflated tires, the vehicle can fall off the jack. If more than 1 tire on the vehicle is flat or damaged, do not lift the vehicle with the vehicle jack. Instead, get expert assistance.

### WARNING

Changing a wheel, especially on the side of the road, can be dangerous. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to change the wheel.
- Always make sure that all passengers, especially children, are in a safe place outside the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic (such as behind a guard rail).
- Turn on the emergency flashers and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Change a wheel by yourself only if you are familiar with the necessary steps. Otherwise, get expert assistance.
- Always make sure that the ground is level and firm. If necessary, place the jack on a large and sturdy board or on a similar ground support.
- Always use proper and undamaged tools when changing a wheel.
- Never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings.
- After changing a wheel, have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with an accurate torque wrench.
- Always use a jack that has been approved by the manufacturer for your vehicle. Never use other jacks, even if they have been approved for use on other Volkswagen models.
- After changing a wheel or tire, reset the Tire Pressure Monitoring System ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

### WARNING

Sudden vehicle movement when changing a tire can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injury. Only placing the transmission in Park (P) will not prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly when one wheel is off the ground. Before raising the vehicle:

- Always shift the transmission to Park (P), firmly apply the parking brake, stop the engine, and remove the key from the vehicle.
- Always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with chocks or other similar things.

## Preparations for changing a wheel

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Checklist

Getting ready to change a wheel. Follow these steps in the order listed here ⇒  :

- ✓ If you have a flat tire, move as far away from traffic as possible. Park the vehicle on a flat and level surface where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- ✓ Switch on the emergency flashers to warn oncoming traffic in an emergency. Observe all legal requirements.

- ✓ Set the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving Electronic parking brake.
- ✓ Shift the transmission to Park (P) Automatic transmission selector lever.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Have all passengers exit and go to a safe place, such as behind a guard rail.
- ✓ Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
- ✓ If towing a trailer: Unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park the trailer properly.
- ✓ If the luggage compartment is loaded: Remove the luggage.
- ✓ Raise and secure the luggage compartment floor.
- ✓ If applicable: Remove the subwoofer Removing the subwoofer.
- ✓ Unscrew the fastening screw with washer counterclockwise and remove.
- ✓ Take the spare or compact spare wheel and the vehicle tool kit out of the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Take off the wheel covers Wheel trim.

## ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

## Wheel bolts



Fig. 224 Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts.

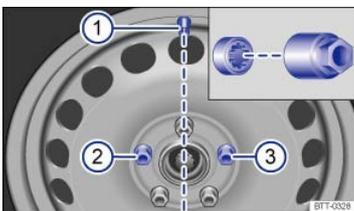


Fig. 225 Changing a wheel: Tire valve ① and installation points for the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) ② or ③.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Loosen the wheel bolts only with the lug wrench that was supplied with the vehicle.

Loosen the wheel bolts only about 1 turn before lifting the vehicle with the jack.

If a wheel bolt does not come loose, carefully push the end of the lug wrench with your foot. Make sure you are standing firmly on the ground and hold on to the vehicle for support.

### Loosening the wheel bolts

- Push the lug wrench over the wheel bolt all the way ⇒ Fig. 224.
- Holding the lug wrench at the end, loosen the wheel bolt by turning it counterclockwise about 1 complete turn (360°) ⇒ ⚠.

### Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped)

- Take the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt out of the vehicle tool kit.
- Push the adapter all the way over the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Slide the lug wrench onto the adapter until it stops.
- Holding the lug wrench at the end, loosen the wheel bolt by turning it counterclockwise about 1 complete turn (360°) ⇒ ⚠.

### Important information regarding wheel bolts

The design of rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different wheels are installed, wheel bolts with the right length and bolt head shape must be used. The attachment of the wheels and function of the brake system depend on this.

It may not be possible to use wheel bolts from different vehicles of the same model.

On a wheel with a wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) must be installed at points  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 225② or ③ in relation to the position of the tire valve ①. Otherwise, the wheel cover cannot be installed.

### Wheel bolt tightening torque

Correctly tightened bolts for steel and alloy wheel rims should have a torque of **103 ft-lbs (140 Nm)**. After changing a wheel, have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked right away with an accurate torque wrench.

**Before you check** the tightening torque, replace corroded and difficult-to-turn wheel bolts and clean the threads in the wheel hub.

Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. The bolts can come loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the required torque.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened wheel bolts can come loose while driving and cause you to lose control over the vehicle, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Only use wheel bolts that belong your vehicle and to the wheel being installed.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- Wheel bolts and wheel hub threads must always be clean, easy-to-turn and free of oil and grease.
- Only use the lug wrench that is supplied with the vehicle to loosen the wheel bolts.
- Loosen the wheel bolts only about 1 turn before lifting the vehicle with the jack.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. The bolts can come loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the required torque.
- Never loosen bolted connections on wheel rims with bolted rim rings.
- If the wheel bolts are not tightened to the proper torque, the wheel can come off the vehicle when it is moving. Extremely high torque can damage the wheel bolts and/or their threads.
- Check the wheel bolt tightening torque regularly with an accurate torque wrench.

### Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack

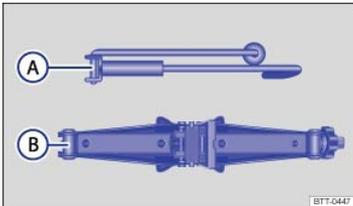


Fig. 226 Components of the vehicle jack..

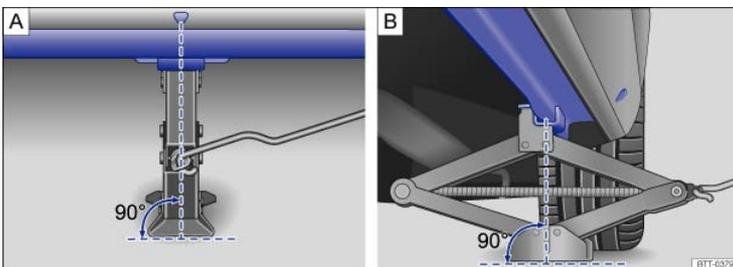


Fig. 227 Jack in position at the left rear lift point.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first  $\Rightarrow$  *Introduction to the subject*

The jack must be positioned at one of the 4 lift points located behind the markings on the vehicle body (2 on each side as shown in  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 227②). You must use the lift point closest to the wheel being changed  $\Rightarrow$  .

The vehicle may only be lifted by a jack positioned at one of the 4 jack lift points  $\Rightarrow$  *Side view*.

### Checklist

For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed  $\Rightarrow$  :

- ✓ Find a level spot on firm ground for lifting the vehicle.
- ✓ Straighten the steering wheel so that the front wheels point straight forward.
- ✓ Switch off the engine. Shift the transmission to Park (P) Automatic transmission selector lever.
- ✓ Set the electronic parking brake Electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button and remove the key from the vehicle Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ If towing a trailer: Unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park the trailer properly.
- ✓ Straighten the steering wheel so that the front wheels point straight forward.
- ✓ Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
- ✓ Loosen the wheel bolts of the wheel to be changed Wheel bolts.
- ✓ Find the jack lift point on the vehicle frame that is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- ✓ Insert the crank (A) into the opening on the vehicle jack (B).
- ✓ Crank up the jack so that it still just fits underneath the lift point.
- ✓ Position the jack so that its base is directly underneath the lift point , making sure that the entire base of the jack rests securely on the ground.
- ✓ Align the jack and wind up the jack claw at the same time, until the claw cradles the vertical rib underneath the vehicle (arrow).
- ✓ Continue cranking up the jack until the wheel is just a little off the ground.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Use only jacks approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other jacks might slip, even those approved for other Volkswagen models, but not for your vehicle.
- Always set up the jack on firm and level ground. The vehicle may slip off the jack if the jack is resting on soft or sloping ground. If necessary, place a sturdy board under the jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as a tiled floor), use an anti-skid rubber mat or something similar to help prevent the jack from slipping.
- Position the jack only at the described vehicle lift points. Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grips the vertical rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 227.
- Never have any part of your body (such as your arm or leg) under the vehicle when it is supported by the jack. Never let other persons have any part of their body under the vehicle, either!
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is tilted or inclined to one side or the engine is running.
- Never lift the vehicle when more than 1 tire is flat or damaged.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by a jack. Engine vibrations may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

### ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

## Changing a wheel



Fig. 228 Changing a wheel: Remove previously loosened wheel bolts using the screwdriver handle.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject

### Removing the wheel

- Review the checklist ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack* .
- Loosen the wheel bolts ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.

- Lift the vehicle ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack* .
- Completely unscrew and remove the previously loosened wheel bolts using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle ⇒ *Fig. 228*. Place the wheel bolts on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

### Mounting a spare or compact spare wheel

If the tire is a unidirectional tire, be sure to install it in the proper rolling direction ⇒ *Tire labeling* .

- Place the spare wheel or compact spare wheel on the axle.
- Place the anti-theft wheel bolt (if equipped) in position ⇒ *Fig. 225* ② or ③ in relation to the position of the tire valve ①. Hand tighten it using the adapter by turning clockwise.
- Screw in the wheel bolts clockwise and tighten them *slightly* using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the lug wrench to firmly tighten all wheel bolts (turn clockwise) ⇒  . Do not tighten them in sequence! Tighten any wheel bolt to begin, then tighten the wheel bolt diagonally opposite the first bolt, and so forth.
- Install the wheel bolt caps, center wheel hubcap, or wheel cover, if any ⇒ *Wheel trim* .

#### WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or installed improperly can come loose, causing loss of vehicle control, a crash, and serious personal injury.

- Always keep wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hub clean and free of oil and grease. The wheel bolts must turn easily and must be tightened with the right torque.
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle only to turn the wheel bolts when they are loose, never to loosen them or tighten them firmly.

#### WARNING

Improper use of a compact spare wheel can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, and serious personal injury.

- Never use a compact spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare wheel. Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering!
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) if a compact spare wheel is installed.
- Replace the compact spare with a normal wheel and tire as soon as possible. Compact spare tires are designed for brief use only.

## After changing a wheel

 **Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first** ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

- Clean the tools in the vehicle tool kit if necessary and stow them in the foam insert in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit* .
- Securely store the spare wheel, compact spare wheel, or the wheel you took off the vehicle in the luggage compartment.
- Have the wheel bolt tightening torque immediately checked with a torque wrench ⇒ *Wheel bolts* .
- Have the damaged wheel replaced as soon as possible.



The Tire Pressure Monitoring System must be recalibrated after each tire change ⇒ .

## Parts, accessories, repairs, and modifications

### Parts and accessories

Volkswagen recommends that you consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before purchasing accessories, spare parts or other equipment. Always do so if you want to install additional accessories or replace parts. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide information about legal requirements and factory-recommended accessories, spare parts, and other equipment.

#### WARNING

Improper vehicle modifications and repairs affect the performance of the airbag system and cause malfunctions and severe personal injuries.

- Never store, mount, or attach objects, such as cup holders or phone cradles, on or next to the airbag module covers or within the airbag deployment zones.
- Objects on or near the surface where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury if the airbag deploys.

## WARNING

Inappropriate spare parts and accessories as well as improperly performed work, modifications and repairs can cause vehicle damage, accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Volkswagen strongly recommends to only use accessories approved by Volkswagen and Genuine Volkswagen Parts<sup>®</sup>. These parts and accessories have been evaluated by Volkswagen for their suitability, reliability and safety.
- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information, and trained personnel to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Only install parts on the vehicle that are consistent with factory-installed parts with respect to design and characteristics.
- Only use wheel rim/tire combinations approved by Volkswagen for the respective vehicle type.

## Repairs and technical modifications

**Volkswagen guidelines for repairs and technical modifications must be followed** ⇒ 

Changes to electronic components and related software can cause malfunctions. These malfunctions can also affect other systems that are related to the component or software that was modified. The vehicle's operational safety can be seriously jeopardized, increased vehicle component wear can occur, and the vehicle may no longer meet applicable emissions requirements.

Volkswagen recommends having all repairs and technical modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility using **Genuine Volkswagen Parts<sup>®</sup>**.

Damage that is caused by improper repairs or unapproved technical modifications will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

## WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause vehicle damage and malfunctions, and can impair the efficiency of driver assistance systems. This can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Have repairs and vehicle modifications done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## NOTE

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause increased component wear and result in vehicle emissions that no longer meet applicable requirements.

## Repairs and other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Repairs and modifications of front bumpers, doors, front seats, headliners and the chassis can affect proper airbag performance and should be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. These vehicle areas can contain important parts of the airbag system.

Components of the airbag system can be damaged during removal, assembly and repair activities on the airbag system itself or related components. Damage to airbag parts can prevent the system from working properly in a collision.

Observe all regulations so that the effectiveness of the airbag is not affected and to prevent disassembled parts from causing injuries and pollution. Authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and other qualified workshops are familiar with these regulations.

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the airbag system works in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle that originally had cloth upholstery. Never install cloth upholstery on a vehicle that originally had leather upholstery. The capacitive passenger detection system for the Advanced Airbag system will not work properly if different upholstery is installed on the passenger seat than the upholstery originally installed on the vehicle when it was originally manufactured.

## WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.

## WARNING

Leaving the optional safety belt extender attached to the safety belt buckle on the front passenger seat when the safety belt is not being used will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly and can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a collision.

- Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal to the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will
  - cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily in collisions and
  - cause the front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions in which the front airbag would otherwise be triggered earlier to help protect an unrestrained front seat passenger.
- Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely.
- Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.

#### WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause safety belt buckle to send the wrong information to the airbag control unit and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.

#### WARNING

Improper care and servicing, and improper modification and repair work, can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the airbag system, steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, mobile telephones and CB radios, etc.) should be performed by authorized Volkswagen dealers or authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities. They have the necessary manuals, training, and special equipment.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen. Have them installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

 Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. **NOTE:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Volkswagen will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others - unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees, or;

- upon the official request by the police;
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or

- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.

Volkswagen may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle may be equipped with VW Car-Net. Please see ⇒ [VW Car-Net: Connecting you and your vehicle](#) and the VW Car-Net Terms of Service and Privacy Policy at (<http://www.vw.com/carnet>) for details regarding how Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits, uses and shares information obtained through the VW Car-Net equipment and service.

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

## Using a mobile phone in a motor vehicle when it is not connected to a vehicle telephone antenna: Some important things to know

Mobile or cellular telephones send and receive radio waves, sometimes called radiofrequency energy (RF energy), both when they are being used and when they are in standby mode. Current scientific literature indicates that radio waves that exceed a certain level can have effects on the human body. Limits and guidelines have been established by governmental authorities and international committees in an effort to keep the electromagnetic radiation from mobile phones at levels that will not cause health problems. However, there is no scientifically based proof that wireless phones are absolutely safe.

Therefore, some experts recommend a precautionary approach regarding the use of mobile phones by taking measures that lower the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields. When using a mobile telephone inside a motor vehicle without a proper connection to an integrated vehicle telephone antenna, the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields will be higher than when using the mobile telephone while properly connected to an integrated or other outside vehicle telephone antenna.

Your vehicle may be equipped with an optional hands-free system that will permit many of the features of compatible Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> enabled mobile telephones to be used for greater convenience and is consistent with the laws of an increasing number of states and localities that prohibit the use of mobile telephones without some kind of hands-free device.

The hands-free system in your vehicle can be used with certain mobile phones that are connected by wire and hardware connector or via compatible Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> enabled phones with a cradle that is designed to fit your mobile telephone. The special cradle offers several advantages: The phone cradle must be safely secured to the base plate. Your phone is firmly attached to the instrument panel and is within reach at all times. Placing the phone in its cradle permits it to be charged, but more importantly connects the mobile phone to the vehicle's outside antenna. A mobile telephone that is properly connected to the integrated or other outside vehicle telephone antenna will lower the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields. You should also experience a better quality of service. Although a mobile telephone can be used inside your vehicle without a cradle, the phone will not be securely attached to the vehicle, will not be charged through the cradle wiring, and more importantly will not be connected to the vehicle's integrated telephone antenna. The mobile phone will also not be recharged. You might also experience more dropped calls and an overall impaired quality of the connection.

Therefore we strongly recommend that you use your mobile telephone in your vehicle only when it is properly attached to an appropriate cradle mounted on a base plate on the instrument panel.

Because of the large number and variety of mobile telephones on the market and the frequency with which new models are introduced, Volkswagen does not offer cradles for mobile telephones. Please check with the manufacturer of the mobile telephone that you plan to use.

Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> SIG, Inc.

### WARNING

A mobile phone on the seat, instrument panel or in other places can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle during a sudden braking maneuver, a crash or other accident and injure vehicle occupants.

- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel, backrests or between these areas and the occupant. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.

### WARNING

Using a mobile phone or CB radio inside the vehicle without a properly installed and separate outside antenna can be dangerous to your health and that of your passengers because the electromagnetic radiation energy that mobile phones and CB radios emit may be above established limits. This also applies if the outside antenna is not installed properly.

- Always keep the mobile phone antenna at least 8 in. (20 cm) away from pacemakers. Heart specialists advise that mobile phones can adversely affect the way pacemakers work.
- Never carry a mobile phone that is switched on in the breast pocket directly over a pacemaker.
- If you suspect there may be interference with a pacemaker or other medical device, switch the mobile phone off immediately.

## Consumer information

### Important vehicle labels

Factory-installed safety certificates, stickers, and signs containing important information regarding vehicle operation can be found in the engine compartment and on certain vehicle components, such as inside the fuel filler flap, on the passenger sun visor, in the driver door jamb, or on the luggage compartment floor.

- Do not remove, alter, or render unusable or illegible any safety certificates, stickers, and labels.
- If vehicle components bearing safety certificates, stickers, or labels are replaced, make certain that the firm doing the work attaches new conforming certificates, stickers, or labels to the same part of the new components.

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

A safety certificate affixed to the door jamb in the driver door confirms that at time of production all necessary safety standards and requirements of the traffic safety agency of the respective country were met. The month and year of production as well as the vehicle identification number may be listed as well.

#### Radiator fan and high voltage warning sticker

A warning sticker about the radiator fan and the high voltage of the electrical system is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The vehicle ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

#### Tire inflation pressure label

A tire inflation pressure label is on the driver door jamb → *Tires and wheels*.

#### Fuel grade sticker

An information sticker listing the correct fuel grade for your vehicle → *Refueling*.

#### WARNING

Disregarding or exceeding stated values for weights, loads, dimensions and maximum speed may result in accidents and serious personal injuries.

#### WARNING

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS.

#### NOTE

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Perform service according to the specifications in the ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS.

### Air conditioning system operating fluids

#### Refrigerant

A label in your engine compartment identifies the type and amount of refrigerant included in your vehicle's air conditioning system. The label is at the front of the engine compartment, near the refrigerant cap.

-  Warning: System should only be serviced by trained technicians.
-  Refrigerant type.
-  Lubricant type.
-  See service information (available at authorized Volkswagen dealers or Volkswagen Service Facilities).
-  Only trained technicians may service the air conditioning system.
-  Flammable refrigerant.
-  Properly dispose of all components and never permit salvaged or recycled components to be installed in your vehicle.

#### Air conditioning system lubricant

The compressor of your air conditioning system contains up to about 7 oz. (210 ml) of lubricant. The specific type and amount of lubricant used in your vehicle's compressor can be found in:

<https://erwin.vw.com>

## WARNING

The air conditioning system should only be serviced by a trained technician to help ensure proper and safe operation.

## NOTE

- Never permit the air conditioning evaporator to be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.
- New replacement MAC evaporators must be certified and labeled as meeting SAE Standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744.

## Driving your vehicle outside of the United States and Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you want to drive the car in another country for a short time, please see the information in the checklist ⇒ [General information](#).

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

- Fuel with the appropriate rating for your vehicle's engine requirements may not be readily available.
- Service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools, or testing equipment.
- Replacement parts may not be readily available.
- DVD navigation systems for vehicles built for the United States and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of the United States and Canada.

## NOTE

Volkswagen is not responsible for mechanical damage that may result from substandard fuel or service or the unavailability of Genuine Volkswagen parts.

- Volkswagen is not responsible if the vehicle does not meet the respective legal requirements in other countries and continents.

## Radio antenna and reception

If the Infotainment system was installed at the factory, the radio antenna may be installed in different locations in the vehicle:

- On the inside of the rear window with the rear window defroster,
- On the inside of the rear side windows,
- On the inside of the windshield,
- On the vehicle roof.

Antennas on the insides of windows are thin wires.

## NOTE

Antennas installed on the insides of windows can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals. Do not place any stickers on the windshield-integrated antenna and never clean the antenna with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals.

## NOTE

If retrofitting a radio or a navigation system, make sure that the vehicle's standard integrated antenna amplifier is compatible with the radio or navigation system. If not, use an additional antenna adapter. Otherwise, the antenna amplifier could be overloaded and damaged.



Operating electrical devices near the integrated windshield antenna may interfere with AM radio reception.

## Component protection

Some electronic components and control units in the vehicle may be equipped with a component protection feature, for example, the Infotainment system.

Component protection is a protective feature that helps to:

- Prevent any factory-installed parts from functioning fully if they are installed into other vehicles (for example, after theft),
- Prevent full function of components outside of the vehicle,
- Allow legitimate installation or exchange of parts and control units by a professional should they require service.

If a component protection-related message appears in the instrument cluster display or the Infotainment system display, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## Volkswagen service information

Volkswagen service information is published as soon as possible after model introduction.

To order service information contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

www.vw.techliterature.com

### WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause vehicle damage and malfunctions, and can impair the efficiency of driver assistance systems and the airbag system. This can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### NOTE

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Perform service according to the specifications in the ⇒Booklet *Warranty and Maintenance*..
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS.

## Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

### Radio-based equipment

- Mobile Phone Package
- Electronic immobilizer
- Remote control vehicle key
- Keyless Access with push-button start
- Car-Net (US only)
- Park Distance Control (PDC) system
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system
- Forward Collision Warning (Front Assist) system
- Blind Spot Monitor
- Rear Traffic Alert

### These devices comply with:

#### FCC Part 15.19

These devices comply with **Part 15 of the FCC Rules**. Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

These devices comply with **RSS-210 of Industry Canada**.

Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

## Reporting Safety Defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volkswagen of America, Inc. 3800 Hamlin Road, Auburn Hills, MI 48326.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153);

go to <http://www.nhtsa.gov>;

or write to:

Administrator

NHTSA

1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE.

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## Technical data

### Vehicle identification label

①	0000	45-7-5545	NU			
	WUWJL9 AN 0 AP001880					
②	3C25LD					
	PASSAT Lim. NAR TREND					
	147kW D6F					
③	CBFA		KPZ			
	LA7W		QQ			
④	80A	C16	60K	HD8	JON	D91
	1AT	162	22B	5R0	55L	TQ3
	352	8TC	060	8AV	86U	
	8RH	1ZH	L02	0YD	007	7H6

BTT-0216

Fig. 229 Vehicle identification label: Shown in the example with engine identification code CBFA ③.

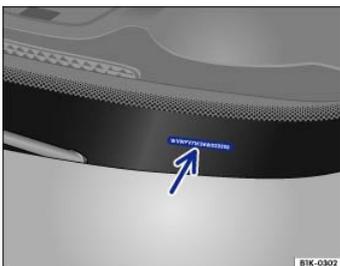


Fig. 230 Vehicle identification number (VIN).

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is on a plate on top of the instrument panel on the driver side, and is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇒ Fig. 230 (arrow). The view window is on the side at the bottom of the windshield. The vehicle identification number is also stamped into the top of the right drip channel in the engine compartment. The drip channel is between the spring strut tower and the right fender. Open the engine hood to read the vehicle identification number ⚠  
⇒ *Preparing to work in the engine compartment.*

The vehicle identification number can be displayed in the Infotainment system by pressing the **MENU** button followed by the Vehicle, 🚗, and Service function keys ⇒ *Infotainment system operation and displays.*

### Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇒ Fig. 229 is affixed to the area of the spare wheel well underneath the luggage compartment floor panel and contains the following information:

- ① Vehicle identification number (VIN)

② Vehicle type, engine output, and transmission

③ Engine and transmission identification codes, paint number, and interior type. In the example, the engine identification code is CBFA ⇒ Fig. 229.

④ Optional equipment and part numbers

## Dimensions

Length	185 inches (4701 mm)
Width	72.4 inches (1839 mm)
Height (unloaded) <sup>a)b)</sup>	65.6-66.3 inches (1665-1685 mm)
Wheelbase (unloaded)	109.8 inches (2790 mm)
Minimum turning circle diameter (wall to wall) <sup>b)</sup>	39.04 feet (11.9 meters)
Track <sup>b)</sup> , front	62.24 inches (1581 mm)
Track <sup>b)</sup> , rear	61.81 inches (1570 mm)
Ground clearance (unloaded) <sup>b)</sup>	7.87 inches (200 mm)

4MOTION all-wheel drive vehicles only (off-road)

Max. approach angle 26.2°

Max. departure angle 23.3°

Breakover angle 19°

### NOTE

- Please be careful when parking your vehicle in areas with parking barriers or curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems).

<sup>a)</sup> Height measurement includes factory-installed roof rails.

<sup>b)</sup> Slight differences to these figures are possible, depending on wheel and tire size fitted, tire inflation pressure, equipment level, driving situation, and other factors

## Fuel capacities

### Fuel tank capacity

15.85 gallons (60 liters)

All-wheel drive (4MOTION)

of which about 1.85 gallons (7.0 liters) are reserve.

15.32 gallons (58 liters)

Front-wheel drive

of which about 1.85 gallons (7.0 liters) are reserve.

## Engine data

## 2.0 I, 4 Cylinder TSI® (184 hp)

Maximum power output <sup>a)</sup>	184 hp at 4360-6000 rpm (137 kW at 4360-6000 rpm)
Injection technology	TSI®
Engine ID code	DGUA
Maximum torque <sup>a)</sup>	221 lb-ft at (300 Nm at 1600-4360 rpm)
No. of cylinders	4 cylinders
Displacement	121 CID (1984 ccm)

### Fuel recommendations for gasoline engines

Using gasoline that does not meet minimum octane requirements can cause loss of engine performance, while the use of poor quality gasoline or octane levels below 87 can also cause engine damage. If Regular gasoline is recommended for your engine, you may be able to enhance engine performance by using Premium gasoline.

<sup>a)</sup> Engine performance data using Regular grade gasoline ⇒ [Fuel and emission control system](#)

## Abbreviations used

Abbreviation	Meaning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
AFS	Adaptive Front Lighting System
AKI	Anti-Knock Index
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASL	Automatic Shift Lock
ASR	Anti-Slip Regulation
ATA	Anti-Theft Alarm system
BAS	Brake Assist System
ccm	Cubic centimeter – metric unit of measure for engine displacement
CID	Cubic inch displacement – unit of measure for engine displacement
cm	Centimeter – metric unit of measure for length
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon dioxide
DIN	Deutsches Institut für Normung (German Institute for Standardization)
DRL	Daytime Running Lights
EDL	Electronic Differential Lock
EDR	Event Data Recorder
EN	European Norm
EPC	Engine control (Electronic Power Control)
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
g/mi (g/km)	Generated carbon monoxide amount in grams per mile (kilometer) driven
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Rating
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
HID	High Intensity Discharge headlights (Xenon)
hp	Horsepower – unit of measure for engine power

Abbreviation	Meaning
kg	Kilogram – metric unit of measure for weight
kN	Kilonewton – unit of measure for force
kPa	Kilopascal – unit of measure for tire pressure
kp	Kilopond – unit of measure for force
kW	Kilowatt – engine rating
LED	Light Emitting Diode
m	Meter – metric unit of measure for length
MFD	Multi-function Display
MIL	Malfunction Indicator Light (engine)
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
Nm	Newton meter – unit of measure for engine torque
PDC	Park Distance Control
RON	Research Octane Number – measurement of anti-knock resistance of gasoline
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute (engine speed)
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
TSI®	Turbocharged gasoline engine with direct fuel injection
XDL	Extension of the Electronic Differential Lock system
6S auto	6-speed automatic transmission